C-E

王殿明
杨绮华 编译

汉英文物考古词汇

A CHINESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY OF CULTURAL RELICS AND ARCHAEOLOGY

紫禁城出版社

责任编辑 冯印淙
封扉设计 郑志标



紫禁城出版社



ISBN 978-7-80047-510-8
9 787800 475108 >
定价：66.00元

汉英文物考古词汇

A CHINESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY OF CULTURAL RELICS AND ARCHAEOLOGY

王殿明　杨绮华　编译

紫 禁 城 出 版 社

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

汉英文物考古词汇／王殿明，杨绮华编译．－北京：紫禁城出版社，2005.10（2008.5 重印）

ISBN 978－7－80047－510－8

Ⅰ．汉…　Ⅱ．①王…②杨…　Ⅲ．文物－考古－词汇－汉、英　Ⅳ．K85－61

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2005）第 055529 号

汉英文物考古词汇

王殿明　杨绮华　编译

紫禁城出版社出版

（北京景山前街故宫博物院内）

中国农业出版社印刷厂

开本 1/16　字数 280 千　印张 33

2008 年 5 月第一版第二次印刷　印数 2001－3500 册

ISBN 978－7－80047－510－8

定价：66.00 元

编译者的话

随着对外文化交流活动日益开展，来华旅游参观者日益增多，编译一本汉英对照的文物博物馆考古专业词汇，是翻译工作者、研究人员和广大中外旅游参观者的需要。为满足这方面的要求，我们将30余年来在翻译工作实践中收集、积累、钻研和使用并得到社会认可的有关文物博物馆考古专业词汇分类编译成册，以期有助于弘扬祖国的悠久文化，有助于中外同行之间的学术交流，有助于提高中外广大读者对我国文物考古的兴趣。

本书内容的个别部分曾于1982年前后在故宫博物院研究室编译的《文博参考资料》（内刊，已停）上陆续刊登，也曾于1983年提供给外文出版社出版的《中国考古词汇》（张星联编）选用，均曾收到良好的效果。在资料收集过程中，我们阅读和参考了多种中外出版的书刊和图录（主要参考书目附后），并从中摘选了不少有关的专业用语和词汇，谨此对这些书刊的编著者致以诚挚的谢意。在编译过程中，曾得到故宫博物院领导和各有关专家的支持、鼓励和帮助以及院内有关部门和同志们的协助，在此一并致以衷心的感谢。

脱稿后，承蒙文化部副部长、故宫博物院院长郑欣淼先生慨然应允，在百忙中抽出时间，热情洋溢地为本书撰写序言，我们深受感动和鼓舞，特此致以深切的谢意。

由于我们水平有限，本书缺点和错误在所难免，敬希读者予以批评指正。

2005年1月

序　言

文化部副部长
故宫博物院院长　郑欣淼

在故宫的西北隅，坐落着建于清雍正初年的城隍庙，奉紫禁城城隍之神，有正殿，有配殿，亦有山门。远远望去，这组错落有致的建筑物与秀丽高耸的角楼浑为一体，别有风味。城隍庙多年来已是故宫博物院研究室的所在地。研究室的老先生多，他们在这宁静的环境中从事着学术研究工作。王殿明、杨绮华就是其中的两位。《汉英文物考古词汇》一书也是在这里诞生的。

《汉英文物考古词汇》是一本汉英对照的文博专业工具书，共收各类有关专业常用词汇万余条，约 20 万字，分 26 个部分。从内容上看，搜罗极广，既有关于文物、考古、博物馆的一般常用词汇，又有青铜器、陶瓷、玉器、书法、古代碑刻、绘画、织绣、漆器、古代家具、古建筑、古陵墓等具有鲜明中国特色的文物的专业词汇；而宫殿园林、明清宫廷、明清职官、六部公用语、宫廷器物等部分，更可使人对以故宫为载体的中国传统文化有多方面的大致了解；最后的全国重点文物保护单位选、世界遗产在中国以及中国历史年表等部分的词汇，相信对读者也有裨益。

本书凝结着编译者几十年的心血。王殿明、杨绮华两位先生解放初期毕业于大学的英文系，在我国对外文化交流部门工作近 20 年，1972 年到故宫博物院从事文博专业的英文笔译工作，至今已 30 多年。30 余年来，通过出国文物展览、院内专馆陈列、各类特展和书刊出版等文字翻译工作的实践，接触并熟悉了故宫博物院及故宫古建筑的专业门类，又通过不断的学习和钻研，收集并掌握了各类文物专业的英文词汇，使故宫博物院汉英文物专业翻译出现了新的局面。他们合作翻译出版的图书和图录有数十种，如《八十年代的博物馆——世界博物馆趋势综览》（紫禁城出版社出版）、《紫禁城的黄昏》（庄士

敦著，紫禁城出版社出版）、大型图录《故宫博物院》（分别由意大利琼蒂出版社、美国纽约哈利·艾布拉姆斯出版社出版）、《故宫文物大典》（故宫和福建、浙江、江西有关出版社联合出版）、《明代吴门绘画》（香港商务印书馆出版）等，在对外宣传中华文化方面收到了较好的效果。在这个坚实的基础上编译的《汉英文物考古词汇》，是一部精雕细磨的作品，是他们长期勤奋努力的结晶。

这本书的出版是十分必要的。随着我国对外文化交流的日益广泛、深入，文化遗产保护领域的合作不断加强，出国与来华的文物展览的日渐增多，编译一本汉英对照的文博考古词汇，是翻译工作者、专业研究人员、大专院校有关专业师生的愿望，更是广大中外旅游参观者的需要。据了解，目前见诸于世的这类书不多，有《汉英考古分类词汇》（黑龙江科技出版社出版）、《汉英商业文物词汇》（北京旅游出版社出版）和《中国考古词汇》（汉英对照，北京外文出版社出版，其中部分资料为王殿明、杨绮华提供）。这些书的词汇各有侧重，如“考古”或“商业”等。这本词汇则文物与考古兼而有之，与上述各书有所不同，且以皇家园林和宫廷文物为其特色，有关部分还附以必要的线图，读者可以一目了然。词典是工具，是桥梁。这本书的出版，将有益于弘扬祖国的文化遗产，有利于中外同行之间的学术交流，也有助于提高广大读者对我国文物考古工作的兴趣和关心。

我到故宫博物院工作不久，曾去城隍庙内的研究室看望过王殿明先生。他提出要加强故宫笔译人才培养的建议我一直记在心里。他感到几十年了，虽然每天忙忙碌碌，但似乎没有做过什么值得述说的事。这使我深受感动。在故宫，有不少像王殿明、杨绮华这样的老先生，把毕生献给了故宫，勤勤恳恳，不计名利，乐在其中，甚至默默无闻。他们是真正的“故宫人”。在他们的作品即将问世时，要我写个序言，我觉得不能推辞，便写了以上的话，表示我的祝贺。也相信在广大读者的关心下，这部书能够精益求精，不断完善。

2004 年 12 月 12 日
于故宫博物院

目　　录
CONTENTS

一　文物考古
ARCHAEOLOGY AND CULTURAL RELICS

人类社会发展阶段
STAGES OF SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

石器时代　the Stone Age

旧石器时代　the Old Stone Age; the Paleolithic Age; the Early Stone Age

中石器时代　the Mesolithic Age; the Middle Stone Age

新石器时代　the New Stone Age; the Neolithic Age; the Late Stone Age

铜石并用时代（红铜时代）　the Chalcolithic Age; the Copper Age

青铜时代　the Bronze Age

铁器时代　the Iron Age

史前时期　prehistoric times

原始无阶级公社社会　the classless primitive communal society (or primitive society)

原始氏族时期　the primitive clan period

母系社会　the Matrilineal Society

父系社会　the Patrilineal Society

奴隶社会　the Slave Society

封建社会　the Feudal Society

资本主义社会　the Capitalist Society

社会主义社会　the Socialist Society

古人类学
PALEOANTHROPOLOGY

人类学　anthropology

人类学家　anthropologist

突出的头（猿）　jutting head (ape)

古猿　paleopithecus

巨猿　gigantopithecus

类人猿　anthropoid; ape

古人　Homo sapiens

智人　Homo sapient sapiens

能人　Homo abilis

直立人（猿人）　Homo erectus (ape man)

新人　Neoanthropus (lived about 40,000 years ago onward, i. e., from the time of the late Paleolithic Age)

中国猿人（北京猿人，北京人）　Sinanthropus; Pekinensis; Peking ape-man; Peking man (lived some 500,000 - 400,000 years ago, whose fossils were found in 1933 in the deposits of a cave on Dragon Bone Hill near Zhoukoudian, southwest of Beijing)

山顶洞人　Upper Cave Man (lived 20,000 - 10,000 years ago, whose fossils were found in 1933 in the upper cave on top of the Dragon Bone Hill at Zhoukoudian near Beijing)

元谋人　Yuanmou Man (lived about 1.7 million years ago, whose traces were found in 1965 in Yuanmou, Yunnan Province)

蓝田人　Lantian Man (lived about 650,000 years ago, whose fossils were found in 1963 - 1964 in Lantian, Shaanxi Province)

大荔人　Dali Man (lived about 400,000 - 300,000 years ago, whose fossils were found in 1978 in Dali, Shaanxi Province)

丁村人　Dingcun Man (lived in the Paleolithic Age, whose fossils were found in 1954 at Dingcun Village, Xiangfen County, Shanxi Province)

马坝人　Maba Man (lived in the Paleolithic Age, whose fossils were found in 1958 at Maba Township, Shaoguan, Guangdong Province)

长阳人　Changyang Man (lived in the Paleolithic Age, whose fos-

sils were found in 1956 in Changyang, Hubei Province)

资阳人 Ziyang Man (lived about 7,000 years ago, whose fossils were found in 1951 in Ziyang County, Sichuan Province)

柳江人 Liujiang Man (lived in the late Paleolithic Age, whose fossils were found in 1958, in Liujiang, Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region)

河套人(鄂尔多斯人) Hetao Man, Ordos Man (a piece of his thigh bone was found in 1956 in Inner Mongolia; estimated to have lived in the late Pleistocene Period 更新世)

形态区别 morphological differences

体质特点 physical features

头骨 skull

脑量 cranial capacity

颅 cranium

颅顶部 skull cap

眉脊 supraorbital ridge; brow ridge

上颚骨 upper jaw

下颚骨 lower jaw

枕骨 occiptal bone

肢骨 limb bones

坐骨 hip bone

牙床 jaw bone

齿冠 tooth crown

牙槽 alveolus

牙尖 cusp; peak

长牙 tusks

犬齿 canine tooth

门齿 incisors; biting teeth

臼齿 molar

考古学文化
ARCHAEOLOGICAL CULTURES

旧石器文化 Paleolithic culture

新石器文化 Neolithic culture

中石器文化　Mesolithic culture

细石器文化　Microlithic culture

仰韶文化（彩陶文化）　Yangshao culture (painted pottery culture, a Neolithic culture, discovered in 1921 at Yangshao Village, in Mianchi, Henan Province)

马家窑文化　Majiayao culture (late Neolithic culture, discovered in 1923 at Majiayao Site, in Lintao, Gansu Province)

河套文化　Hetao culture (late Paleolithic culture, discovered in 1922 – 1923 at Hetao Area)

辛店文化　Xindian culture (Bronze culture of late primitive society, discovered in 1923 – 1924 at Xindian of Lintao, Gansu Province)

寺洼文化　Siwa culture (possibly a primitive culture of the Di and Qing tribes, discovered in 1924 at Siwashan in Lintao, Gansu Province)

齐家文化　Qijia culture (a Chalcolithic culture, discovered in 1924 at Qijiaping in Guanghe, Gansu Province)

龙山文化（黑陶文化）　Longshan culture (black pottery culture, a late Neolithic culture, discovered in 1928 at Longshan Town in Zhangqiu, Shandong Province)

红山文化　Hongshan culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1935 at Hongshan in Chifeng, Liaoning Province)

良渚文化　Liangzhu culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1936 at Liangzhu Town in Yuhang, Zhejiang Province)

丁村文化　Dingcun culture (Paleolithic culture, discovered in 1954 at Dingcun, Xiangfen, Shanxi Province)

青莲岗文化　Qingliangang culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1951 at Qingliangang in Huai'an, Jiangsu Province)

二里岗文化　Erligang culture (c. 16th – 11th century B. C., discovered in 1952 at Zhengzhou, Henan Province)

屈家岭文化　Qujialing culture (late Neolithic culture, discovered in 1954 at Qujialing in Jingshan, Hubei Province)

庙底沟文化　Miaodigou culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1957 at Miaodigou in Sanmenxia, Henan Province; included two periods of Yangshao culture and Longshan culture)

马家浜文化　Majiabang culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1959 at Majiabang in Jiaxing, Zhejiang Province)

二里头文化　Erlitou culture (Bronze culture, discovered in 1959 at Erlitou in Yanshi, Henan Province)

大汶口文化　Dawenkou culture (predecessor of Longshan culture, discovered in 1959 and 1974 at Dawenkou in Tai'an, Shandong Province)

大溪文化　Daxi culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1959 at Daxi in Wushan, Sichuan Province)

磁山—裴李岗文化　Cishan-Peiligang culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1973 at Cishan in Wu'an, Hebei Province, and also in 1977 at Peiligang in Xinzheng, Henan Province)

河姆渡文化　Hemudu culture (early Neolithic culture, discovered in 1973 at Hemudu Village in Yuyao, Zhejiang Province)

考古发掘
ARCHAEOLOGY AND EXCAVATION

考古学　archaeology

考古学家　archaeologist

考古工作者　archaeological worker

考古队　archaeological team

田野考古　field archaeology

水文考古　hydrological archaeology

考古勘探　archaeological reconnaissance

地理位置　location

文物线索　clues to cultural relics

化石线索　clues to the location of fossils

发现　to discover; to find; to uncover; finding; discovery

遗址　site (e. g. historical site); ruins (e. g. the Shang ruins); remains (e. g. remains of houses)

遗迹　traces; vestiges; historical remains

殷墟　Yinxu (site where the remains of the ancient capital of the Yin-Shang dynasty are located); Yin Ruins at Anyang, Henan Province, 14th-11th century B. C.

居住遗址　dwelling site
灶坑　stove pit
窖穴　storage pit
贝丘冢　kitchen-midden；shell-mound
遗骨　skeletal remains
人类化石　human fossil
猿人化石　ape-man fossil
头骨化石　fossilized skull
顶骨化石　parietal bone fossil
化石骨骼　fossil skeleton
化石层　fossil bed
堆积层　stratified deposit
探沟　exploration ditch
探方　a square or rectangular unit of an exploration ditch
探针　probe
地坑探测　earth resistance test
试掘　trial diggings
发掘　to excavate；to unearth；excavation
二次发掘　second season for excavation
科学地发掘与清理　to be unearthed and dealt with scientifically
出土文物　excavations；unearthed objects (antiquities or relics)
整理化石　to dress fossils
严重破损　badly damaged
严重残破　in a state of advanced decay
完整无损　to remain intact
保存完整　in a good state or condition of preservation；well-preserved
现已失传　to become extinct
修整　to retouch；to prepare；to dress
复原　to be restored as they were originally；restoration
真标本　original specimens
实物　real objects
文字资料　literal data
极为罕见的遗物　extremely rare relics
珍贵的历史文物　precious historical relics
光亮如新　showing its original luster

表现出相当高的工艺水平　revealing a fairly high artistic and technological level

具有重要的科学价值　to be of great scientific value

试释译　tentative interpretation

释文　transcription; decipherment

物化鉴定　physical and chemical experimentation; authentication through physical and chemical tests

放射性碳－14 测定　radiocarbon dating（C^{14} tests）

碳－14 断代（根据 5430 ± 40 半衰期）　C^{14} dates are based on 5730 ± 40 half-life

钾氩法　potassium argon method

花粉分析　pollen analysis

光谱分析　spectrographic analysis

相对年代　relative dates

绝对年代　absolute dates

距今　B. P.（Before Present）

公元前　B. C.（Before Christ）

公元　A. D.（L. Anno Domini）in the year of our Lord

大约（用在年代前）　c.（L. circa）; about

范围（用在朝代前）　r.（range）

左右（用在年代前）　a.（around）

史前发现物
PREHISTORIC FINDS

人工制品　artifacts

石器　stone implements (or tools)

旧石器　paleolith; paleolithic implements

新石器　neolith; neolithic implements

细石器　microlith; tiny blade tools

尖状器　pointed implements

刮削器　scrapers

打制石器　chipped stone vessels

砍砸器　choppers; blades

磨制石器　polished stone vessels

石核石器　stone-core tools

砾石石器　pebble tools
石片石器　stone-flake tools
投掷石器　sling stone
烧石　burnt stone
燧石　flint
石锄　stone hoe
石锤　stone hammer
石斧　stone axe
石錾　stone chisel
石锛　stone adze
石铲　stone spade
锤头　mace-head
矛头　spear-head
箭头　arrow-head
石磨棒　stone roller
石磨盘　stone saddle-quern
凸（凹）刀　stone tool with convex (concave) blade
角器　horn tools
骨器　bone tools
骨料　tubular bone
烧骨　burnt bone
（钻、凿）灼痕　scorched cavities
骨针　bone needle
骨笄　bone hairpin
骨梳　bone comb
鱼杈头　harpoon head
甲骨　oracle bone
甲骨文　（参见 P177）
龟甲　tortoise shells
龟兆　cracks on the tortoise shell
蚌刀　knives made of shells
牛胛骨　ox shoulder blade
羊卜骨　sheep scapula crackle

出土文物选
SELECTED EXCAVATIONS

殷墟甲骨文　Oracle bone inscriptions of the Yin Ruins, Shang Dynasty

铁刃铜钺　Bronze battle-axe with iron blade, Shang Dynasty

铜永盂（内有 124 字铭文）　Bronze Yong Yu (jar) inscribed with 124 characters on the inside, Western Zhou Dynasty

淳化大鼎　Largest bronze Ding found at Chunhua, Shaanxi Province (overall height 122 cm, mouth diameter 83 cm, depth of belly 54 cm, height of ears 28.6cm, weight 226 kg), Western Zhou Dynasty

虎噬鹿铜座　Bronze pedestal in the shape of a tiger devouring a fawn, Warring States Period

十五盏猴子铜连灯　Bronze oil lamp with 15 wicks decorated with monkeys, Warring States Period

铜双翼神兽　Bronze two-winged legendary beast, Warring States Period

郢爰（楚国）　Ying Yuan, gold coins, of the State of Chu (China's earliest gold coin, with the characters "Ying Yuan" engraved on a square gold cake)

曾侯乙编钟　Bian Zhong (a chime of bells) of Marquis Yi of the State of Zeng, Warring States Period

越王句践剑　Sword of Gou Jian, Prince of Yue, Warring States Period

长信宫灯　Bronze gilt figure holding an "Eternal Fidelity" palace lamp, Western Han Dynasty

羊形铜灯　Bronze lamp in the form of a ram, Western Han Dynasty

金缕玉衣　Jade clothes sewn with gold thread (one 1.88 m and the other 1.72 m in length, made of more than 2,000 small pieces of jade with tiny holes at the four corners sewn together with fine gold thread), Western Han Dynasty

铜错金博山炉　Bronze Boshan incense burner inlaid with gold, Western Han Dynasty

银雀山竹简　Bamboo strips at Yinqueshan, Linyi, Shandong Province, Western Han Dynasty

彩绘乐舞杂技陶俑　Painted pottery figurines of musicians, dan-

cers and acrobats, Western Han Dynasty

马踏飞燕　Galloping horse (with head raising, tail flying, three hoofs off the ground, right hind hoof on a swallow), Eastern Han Dynasty

铜车马　Bronze chariots, horses and warriors, Eastern Han Dynasty

绿釉陶堡垒（模型）　Fortress in green glazed pottery, Han Dynasty (a model of fine structure for military defense; five stories high, with towers on each of the four corners, connected by a suspension bridge)

鞍囊式舞马衔杯银酒壶　Silver wine pot in the shape of a saddle bag with the design of a dancing horse clenching a cup in its teeth, Tang Dynasty

三彩啸马和黄釉俯首马　A three-colored pottery roaring horse and a yellow-glazed pottery horse bowing its head, Tang Dynasty

莲瓣纹金碗　Gold bowl with embossed lotus-petal design, Tang Dynasty

嵌金牛首玛瑙杯　Agate cup inlaid with gold in the shape of an ox head, Tang Dynasty

秦始皇陵兵马俑　Terracotta figures of warriors and horses from Qinshihuang's mausoleum (the tomb of the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty)

文物管理
ADMINISTRATION OF CULTURAL RELICS

国家文物局　State Bureau of Cultural Relics

国家文物委员会　National Committee of Cultural Relics

国家文物鉴定委员会　National Commission for Identification of Cultural Relics

中国文物学会　Chinese Society of Cultural Relics

中国文物保护技术协会　China Association for Preservation Technology of Cultural Relics

中国文物交流服务中心　China Service Center for Exchange of Cultural Relics

中国文物流通协调中心　China Coordination Center for Circulation of Cultural Relics

文物保护单位管理　Administration of the State Protected Monuments

私人收藏文物管理　Administration of Private Collections of Cultural Relics

考古发掘管理　Administration of Archaeological Excavation

文物出境管理　Administration of Cultural Relics Exportation

历史文化名城保护规划　Plan of Preservation of Historic Cities

文物保护管理暂行条例　Temporary Rules of the Preservation and Administration of Cultural Relics

禁止珍贵文物图书出口暂行办法　Temporary Rules on Prohibition against the Exportation of Precious Cultural Relics and Books (1950)

中国文物法规　Chinese Cultural Relics Legal

中华人民共和国文物保护法　Law on the Preservation of Cultural Relics of the People's Republic of China

关于禁止和防止非法进出口文化财和非法转让其所有权的方法和公约　Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property (November 1970, Paris)

关于考古发掘的国际原则建议　Recommendation on International Principle Applicable to Archaeological Excavations (December 1956, New Delhi)

保护世界文化和自然遗产公约　Convention for the Protection of World Cultural and Natural Heritage (November 1972, carried by the 17th Plenary Session of UNESCO, Paris)

国际保护中心　International Center for Conservation (ICC, originally set up as ICSPRCP)

国际文物保护与修复研究中心　International Center for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property (ICSPRCP)

国际历史艺术品保护协会　International Institute for Conservation of Historic and Artistic Works (IICHAW)

世界遗产委员会　Committee for World Heritage (1976)

二　古墓葬
ANCIENT TOMBS

一般用语
TERMINOLOGY

坟墓　grave; tomb

陵墓　mausoleum

墓地　cemetery; graveyard; burial ground

墓石　sepulchral stone; tombstone; gravestone; grave stele

墓志　epitaph

墓道　tomb tunnel; tomb passage; path leading to a grave

隧道券　arched passage

墓道天井　shaft of a tomb gallery

台石　ledgers

墓穴　coffin pit; open grave; coffin crypt

墓前室　crypt antechamber

墓室　coffin chamber

前（中、后）室　front (central, rear) chamber

配（耳）室　side chamber; symmetrical side chamber

墓的形制　structure of a tomb

石墓　rock tomb

砖石墓　brick-chambered tomb

木椁墓　wooden-chambered tomb

画像石墓　stone relief tomb

土坑墓　shaft tomb

石棺　stone sarcophagus

金棺银椁　silver outer coffin with gold inner coffin

瓮棺　funerary urn (used as a coffin); ossuary

棺床　platform for a coffin

棺挡板　end panel for a coffin
棺侧板　side panel for a coffin
葬俗　burial rites; sepulchral customs
火葬　cremation burial
土葬　inhumation burial
水葬　burial at sea; burial in the sea
墓主人　occupant of a tomb
合葬　joint burial; buried together
陪葬　satellite tomb; "attendant" tomb
人殉　human sacrifices
奴隶殉葬墓　tomb with immolated slaves
奴隶祭祀坑　sacrificial pits of slaves
车马坑　chariot pit
窖藏　hoard
仰卧屈肢葬　flexed burial
仰卧伸肢葬　extended burial
殉葬品　sacrificial objects
随葬品　funeral objects (articles); burial accessories
明器　funerary objects; objects made for burial with the dead
镇墓（辟邪）　to ward off evil
哀册　funerary eulogium; funeral records
墓俑　tomb figurine (figure)
木（泥、陶）俑　wooden (earthen, pottery) figurine
釉陶俑　glazed pottery figurine
陶武士俑　pottery figurine of warrior
骑兵俑　figures of cavalrymen
兵马俑　figures of warriors and horses
古坟、塚　tumulus
方塚　square barrow
圆塚　round barrow
瓢（长）塚　long barrow
坟堆（宝顶）　grave mound
围墓沟　ditches around a grave
五花土　mottled earth
生土　local earth
红土地层　red loam

白膏泥　white clay

夯土　rammed earth

墓坑夯土层　layer filled with rammed earth in a tomb pit

陵墓建筑
BUILDINGS OF THE MAUSOLEUMS AND TOMBS

宝城　ramparts

方城　wall containing tumulus (same height as rampart)

扶壁（扶垛）　buttress

明楼　soul tower

神道　spirit road (or avenue) leading to a grave

神道碑　tortoise stele; spirit road stele

碑亭　（参见 P184）

石人　stone carvings of human figures

石兽　stone carvings of animals

神畜　mythical creatures

望天吼　Wang Tian Hou (a mythical animal)

麒麟（独角兽）　Qilin; Kylin; unicorn

獬豸　Xiezhi, a mythical animal

祾恩门　Gate of Heavenly Favors

祾恩殿　Hall of Heavenly Favors; Sacrificial Hall

三台石栏杆　triple terraces with marble balustrades

三台阶石雕　triple staircase with carved marble slab

石台五供　altar with five precious objects (two flower vases, two candlesticks and tripod incense burner)

焚帛炉　oven for burning paper and silk offerings; oven for the burning of sacrificial offerings

棂星门　Linteled Star Gate

陵寝门（三座门）　Triple Doorway; Triple Entrance Gate

大红门　Great Red Gate

龙凤门　Dragon and Phoenix Gate

琉璃影壁　ceramic screen

望柱（指路灯）　beacons

华表　ornamental stone pillar

擎天柱　columns supporting the sky

地宫　underground chamber (or crypt)

历代帝王陵墓
IMPERIAL MAUSOLEUMS AND TOMBS THROUGH THE AGES

黄帝陵　Memorial Mausoleum of legendary emperor Huangdi, northwest of Huangling Xian, Shaanxi Province

秦始皇陵和秦陵兵马俑　Qinshihuang's Mausoleum and its terra-cotta warriors and horses, at Lintong, Shaanxi Province

长陵（汉高祖刘邦与其妻吕雉合葬墓）　Changling Mausoleum at the north bank of the Wei River near Xianyang City, Shaanxi Province, joint burial tomb of the Han emperor Gaozu named Liu Bang（刘邦）and his wife Lu Zhi（吕雉）; the former died in 195 B. C. , the latter in 180 B. C.

茂陵（汉武帝刘彻之陵）　Maoling Mausoleum at Xingping, Shaanxi Province, tomb of the Han Dynasty emperor Wudi named Liu Che（刘彻）; around it are the tombs of Huo Qubing（霍去病）and Wei Qing（卫青）

杜陵（汉宣帝刘询之陵）　Duling Mausoleum at Qujiang Town, Xi'an, Shaanxi Province, tomb of the Han emperor Xuandi named Liu Xun who died in 49 B. C.

昭陵（唐太宗李世民之陵）　Zhaoling Mausoleum at Liquan, Shaanxi Province, tomb of emperor Taizong named Li Shimin（李世民）of the Tang Dynasty

乾陵（唐高宗李治与其妻武则天合葬墓）　Qianling Mausoleum at Qianxian, Shaanxi Province, joint burial tomb of the Tang emperor Gaozong and empress Wu Zetian（武则天）

桥陵（唐睿宗李旦之陵）　Qiaoling Mausoleum, northwest of Pucheng Xian, Shaanxi Province, tomb of Tang Ruizong named Li Dan who died 716

王建墓（五代前蜀帝王建之墓）　Tomb of Wang Jian (847 – 918), the emperor of the Former Shu of the Five Dynasties called "Yong Ling" in history, northwest of San Dong

Qiao（三洞桥）, Chengdu, Sichuan Province

宋陵（北宋皇陵） Mausoleum of the Song Dynasty, at the level ground and the hilly land between the northern foot of the Song Mountains and the Luo River; the area of the mausoleums is about 30km^2; seven emperors of the Northern Song and Zhao Hongyin (father of Zhao Kuangyin), the Xuanzu (respectful title conferred on him posthumously) were buried here, popularly known as "seven emperors and eight tombs"

辽陵（祖陵和庆陵） Mausoleums of the Liao Dynasty, consisting of Zuling（祖陵）and Qingling（庆陵）; the former includes the tombs of the emperor Taizu named Yeluabaoji（耶律阿保机）, the empress dowager Zhenlie（贞烈）and empress Qitian; the latter includes the tombs of Shengzong, Xingzong and Daozong; all are at Balin Right (or Left) Banner, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region

西夏陵（西夏皇陵） Mausoleums of the Western Xia State, at the eastern foot of the Helan Mountains near Yinchuan City, Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region, consisting of 9 imperial tombs and 193 satellite tombs

成吉思汗陵（元太祖铁木真） Memorial Mausoleum of Genghis Khan, a memorial building used to offer sacrifices to Genghis Khan, to the southeast of Atangxilian Town, Yikinholuo Banner, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region; the spirit tablets of Genghis Khan and his wife are worshiped in the mausoleum

明孝陵（太祖朱元璋之陵，南京） Xiaoling Mausoleum at Nanjing, tomb of Ming Dynasty emperor Taizu named Zhu Yuanzhang（朱元璋）, died in 1398

明十三陵（北京昌平） Mingling Mausoleums in Changping near Beijing, tombs of the 13 emperors of the Ming Dynasty

长陵（明成祖文皇帝之陵） Changling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Chengzu (reign title Yongle) named Zhu Di（朱棣）, died in 1424

献陵（明仁宗昭皇帝之陵） Xianling Mausoleum, tomb of Em-

peror Renzong (reign title Hongxi) named Zhu Gaochi (朱高炽), died in 1425

景陵（明宣宗章皇帝之陵） Jingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xuanzong (reign title Xuande) named Zhu Zhanji (朱瞻基), died in 1435

裕陵（明英宗睿皇帝之陵） Yuling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Yingzong (reign title Zhengtong) named Zhu Qizhen (朱祁镇), died in 1464

茂陵（明宪宗纯皇帝之陵） Maoling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xianzong (reign title Chenghua) named Zhu Jianshen (朱见深), died in 1487

泰陵（明孝宗敬皇帝之陵） Tailing Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xiaozong (reign title Hongzhi) named Zhu Youcheng (朱祐樘), died in 1505

康陵（明武宗毅皇帝之陵） Kangling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Wuzong (reign title Zhengde) named Zhu Houzhao (朱厚照), died in 1521

永陵（明世宗肃皇帝之陵） Yongling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shizong (reign title Jiajing) named Zhu Houcong (朱厚熜), died in 1567

昭陵（明穆宗庄皇帝之陵） Zhaoling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Muzong (reign title Longqing) named Zhu Zaihou (朱载垕), died in 1572

定陵（明神宗显皇帝之陵） Dingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shenzong (reign title Wanli) named Zhu Yijun (朱翊钧), died in 1620

庆陵（明光宗贞皇帝之陵） Qingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Guangzong (reign title Taichang) named Zhu Changluo (朱常洛), died in 1620

德陵（明熹宗哲皇帝之陵） Deling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xizong (reign title Tianqi) named Zhu Youjiao (朱由校), died in 1627

思陵（明怀宗愍皇帝之陵） Siling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Huaizong (reign title Chongzhen) named Zhu Youjian (朱由检), died in 1644

清福陵（太祖努尔哈赤之陵） Fuling Mausoleum, tomb of the

Qing emperor Taizu Aixinjueluo Nurhachi and his wife Yehenala, eastern suburbs of Shenyang, Liaoning Province

清昭陵（太宗皇太极之陵） Zhaoling Mausoleum of the Qing Dynasty, north of Shenyang, Liaoning Province; the emperor Taizong named Aixinjueluo Huangtaiji and his wife Berjijite were buried here; also called the Northern Mausoleum

清东陵（在河北遵化） East Mausoleum of the Qing Dynasty in Zunhua County, Hebei Province; tombs of famous five emperors of the Qing Dynasty; the empress dowagers Cixi and Ci'an also buried here

孝陵（清世祖章皇帝之陵） Xiaoling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shizu (reign title Shunzhi) named Aixinjueluo Fulin (福临), buried here in 1663

景陵（清圣祖仁皇帝之陵） Jingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shengzu (reign title Kangxi) named Aixinjueluo Xuanye (玄烨), buried here in 1723

裕陵（清高宗纯皇帝之陵） Yuling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Gaozong (reign title Qianlong) named Aixinjueluo Hongli (弘历), buried here in 1799

定陵（清文宗显皇帝之陵） Dingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Wenzong (reign title Xianfeng) named Aixinjueluo Yizhu (奕诈), buried here in 1865

惠陵（清穆宗毅皇帝之陵） Huiling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Muzong (reign title Tongzhi) named Aixinjueluo Zaichun (载淳), buried here in 1879

清西陵（在河北易县） West Mausoleum of the Qing Dynasty in Yixian County, Hebei Province; tombs of four emperors of the Qing Dynasty

泰陵（清世宗宪皇帝之陵） Tailing Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shizong (reign title Yongzheng) named Aixinjueluo Yinzhen (胤禛), buried here in 1737

昌陵（清仁宗睿皇帝之陵） Changling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Renzong (reign title Jiaqing) named Aixinjueluo Yongyan (颙琰), buried here in 1821

慕陵（清宣宗成皇帝之陵） Muling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xuanzong (reign title Daoguang) named Aixinjueluo Minning（旻宁）, buried here in 1852

崇陵（清德宗景皇帝之陵） Chongling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Dezong (reign title Guangxu) named Aixinjueluo Zaitian（载湉）, buried here in 1909

皇陵管理
IMPERIAL MAUSOLEUM ADMINISTRATION

陵寝驻防 garrison of the Imperial Mausoleum

陵寝总管 supervisor-in-chief of the Imperial Mausoleum Administration

陵寝司工匠 maintenance director at the Imperial Mausoleums

陵寝管理烧造砖瓦官 director of brick-and-tile making for the Imperial Mausoleums

守护陵寝大臣 grand minister for the protection of the Imperial Mausoleums

守陵寝总兵官 regional commander for the protection of the Imperial Mausoleums

守陵太监 eunuch protector of the Imperial Mausoleums

陵寝保护与发掘 protection and excavation of the Imperial Mausoleums

重点保护陵墓 important mausoleums and tombs under state protection

三　古建筑
ANCIENT ARCHITECTURE

一般用语
TERMINOLOGY

古建筑　ancient architecture; ancient buildings

建筑师　architect

建筑工程　architectural engineering

建筑设计　architectural design

建筑艺术　the art of architecture

建筑群　architectural complex (group)

建筑风格（形式）　architectural style

民族风格（形式）　national style

整体设计和规划　overall design and planning

正（立）视图　elevation

建筑结构与装饰　architectural composition and decoration

砖石结构　masonry structure

泥砖结构　adobe structure

本制结构　timber structure; construction of wood

夯土结构　rammed structure

礼制　ritual regulations

“三朝五门”制　the system of “the three halls and five gates”

“左祖右社”制　the system of “the imperial ancestral temple at left and the altars to the gods of earth and grain at right”

堪舆风水之说　geomantric principles

“风水”　“wind and water” (Feng Shui); topographical divination

阴阳五行之说　the principles of Yin and Yang and the Five Elements — water, fire, wood, metal, and earth

天圆地方　upper round and lower square

九九制　nine and its multiples are the most "perfect" numbers of Chinese philosophy and are incorporated into the construction (e. g. number of bays in a building, stone flags paving temples, etc.) of the highest ranking of buildings

"八卦"　"The Eight Diagrams"— Qian (乾, northwest), Kan (坎, north), Gen (艮, northeast), Zhen (震, east), Xun (巽, southeast), Li (离, south), Kun (坤, southwest) and Dui (兑, west)

对称原则　principles of symmetry

前呼后应　to bring into architectural harmony and unity

遥相呼应　to be balanced in position

纵横交错　interlocking verticals and horizontals

错落有致　in picturesque disorder

疏密相间　expensive and tight

起伏错落　rising and falling elements

曲径通幽　a winding path leads to deep and quiet seclusion

空间组合　spatial composition

明三暗五　three-sided rectangle

明五暗十（五间两进）　occupying an area equal to two rows of five standard rooms

面九进五　nine bays (length) along the front by five bays (width) deep

三进九院落　divided by three courtyards and nine compounds

独特风格　unique style

各具特点　each with a character of its own

建筑宏伟　grandeur and magnificence of structure

庄严肃穆　solemnity

形体壮丽　majesty of style

布局匀称　symmetrical arrangement

金碧辉煌　magnificent; splendid

雕梁画栋　vermilion columns and decorated beams; carved beams and painted rafters

雕栏玉砌　carved railings and marble stairs (steps)

透雕细工　openwork carving

红墙绿瓦，交相映衬　the red walls and green tiles set each other

off beautifully

中国的传统建筑　traditional Chinese architecture

高水平的建筑技术　highly accomplished building technique

载入建筑史册　to be written into the annals of architectural history

古宫殿群　ancient palatial complex

保存完整　to have been preserved intact

保存到现在　to preserve to the present

现存最大的木结构群　the largest group of timber structures extant

现存最大、最宏伟、最完整的古建筑群　the largest, most magnificent and most complete extant group of ancient architecture

最高大的宫殿建筑　the tallest and largest of the palace buildings

著名的宫殿群　famous palace complex

毁建数次　to be destroyed and rebuilt several times

重修（修复）　to restore; to repair

多檐多脊角楼　corner tower with multi-eaved, multi-ridged roof

石雕柱基华表　ornamental pillar with carved stone base

建筑材料
BUILDING MATERIALS

瓦件造型　types of tiles

禽兽瓦件　tiles in the shape of birds and beasts

金瓦　metal tiles

青瓦　black (or gray) tiles

板瓦　flat (or segmental) tiles

筒瓦　barrel tiles; cylindrical tiles

重唇瓦　double-lip tiles

瓦当　tile-end

动物饰件　zoomorphic ornaments

金砖　metal bricks (like metal tiles, they resound when struck)

水磨砖　finely ground bricks

澄浆砖　settled clay bricks (the name was derived from the process of mixing untreated clay with water to form a slur-

ry and allowing the suspension to settle)

“停泥城砖” “stopping mud city wall” bricks

块料 blocks

大理石板 marble slab

汉白玉 white marble

铺路石板 flag stone

侧石（路边石） curb stone

太湖石 eroded limestone

鹅卵石 cobble stone

琉璃技术 glaze-making technology

琉璃配料 ingredients of glaze

制胎挂釉 body-making and glazing

琉璃构件 glazed members (or objects)

多种形象的琉璃饰件 different types of glazed ceramic objects

琉璃灯笼砖 green lantern-shaped bricks

琉璃砖瓦 glazed bricks and tiles

琉璃岔角 glazed tile triangular corner relief

流云双鹤盒子 glazed tile relief of clouds and twin cranes

鹭鸶卧莲盒子 glazed tile relief of a pair of egrets amongst lotuses

红土 red clay

金土 gold clay

生石灰 quick lime

熟石灰 slaked lime

石灰浆 lime white

石灰砂浆 lime mortar

夯土垫实 a rammed earth core

柱础 plinth; post base

朱漆柱 vermilion column

地墁金砖 floor paved with bricks

乾摆灌浆，磨砖对缝 after the laying of the surface bricks, the interstices were filled with mortar, giving the wall a smooth appearance

建筑物名称
NAMES OF BUILDINGS

亭台楼阁 pavilion, kiosk; terrace; tower; belvedere

塔坛堂馆　pagoda（dagoba；tower）；altar；hall
宫殿寺庙　palace；temple
皇宫　imperial palace
正（配）殿　main（side）building（hall）
厢房　wing room；flank
连檐庑房　running-eaved gallery
厅室院落　chamber and courtyard
曲廊　irregular course
柱（门）廊　colonnade
廊道　covered way
阳台　balcony；veranda
抱厦　covered corridor；portico
四出抱厦　with a covered corridor around all four sides
突檐　projecting eaves
天井（窗）　skylight
卡墙　short wall
挡土墙（拥壁）　retaining wall
花山头　gablet
山墙（三角墙）　gable
护墙　parapets
四面亮山　to present four opposing gablets
敞轩　open-sided lodge
水榭　pavilion or bower surrounded by water；water side pavilion
水阁　pavilion or tower by water
暖阁　warm chamber（i. e. heated by Kang）
阁楼　garret
隔间　partitioned bay
三开间方亭　a square pavilion with three bays
形成“凹”字形　to form a three-sided square
四合院　a typical courtyard with buildings constructed along all four walls；traditional one-story courtyard complexes
半封闭三合院　a semi-closed courtyard
街门　street entrance
影壁　screen wall
正（后）房　main（rear）hall
露天庭院　open courtyard

皇城墙　imperial city wall

角楼　（参见 P36）

阙楼　side tower

城门楼　gatehouse; gate tower

腋门　armpit doorway

瓮城　barbican entrance

城垣　ramparts

城垛（雉堞）　battlements

城池　city walls and moat

礓䃰马道　bridle path

甬道（俗称“辇道”）　the road for imperial carriage

牌楼　arch; memorial arch; monument

华表　（参见 P14）

护城河　moat (around city wall, an imperial palace or other buildings)

拱券　span of arch

净跨　space between two pillars

朱漆大门　vermilion lacquer gate

雕花大门　sculptured gate; sculptured door panels

垂花门　ornamental archway

九排八十一门钉　eighty-one gilt bronze bosses in rows of nine

钟楼　bell tower

鼓楼　drum tower

城堡　castle

烽火台　beacon tower

构　架
STRUCTURE FRAME

梁架　timber construction

系梁（额枋）　tie beam; collar beam

系杆（拉杆）　tie bar

梁架结构　roof beam structure

纵横牵连的构架　the complex interlocking structure

梁柱结构体系　pillar-and-beam structural system

直梁　straight beam

月梁　crescent beam

支梁　strut

角梁尾　corner cantilever end

楣（过梁、框缘）　lintel；architrave

枋心　heart（center）of the beam；central section of an architectural member

外檐额枋　outer eaves' boards and braces；architraves

屋檐与托座　eaves and bracketing

纵系梁　longitudinal tiebeam

横系梁　transversal tiebeam

檩（桁）　purlin

脊檩　ridge purlin

底檩　inferior purlin

平檩　intermediate purlin

上（前）平檩　front purlin

下（后）平檩　rear purlin

主椽　principal（main）rafter

飞椽　flying rafter

檐椽　eave-rafter

椽梢（头）　rafter head（end）

遮椽板　rafter hiding board

雀替（托木）　bolster

支座　support

镶板　boarding

螺栓　bolt

木螺丝　wooden screw

木钉　wooden nail

硬木楔　hardwood wedges

公母榫结合　mortise and tenon joint

横木　flat cross beam

飞昂　flying lever

要头　nosing head

双柱桁架　queen truss

上桁弦　upper chord

下桁弦　lower chord

檐口瓦槽　eaves course

檐口望板　eaves fascia

木柱　wooden column

柱头　column capital; top of column

罗曼式柱头（带枕柱头）　cushion capital

柱基　column (pillar) base; plinth

爪柱　shorter column

檐柱　peripheral column

内柱　hypostyle column

梭柱　shuttle-shaped column

角柱　corner column

柱头铺作　set on column

角柱石　corner pier

平柱　central bay column

斗拱　Dougong, a system of brackets inserted between the top of a column and a crossbeam, supporting the eaves from the columns; block-arm; brackets-and-blocks

穿斗　column and tie construction

卢斗　cap block

散斗　small block

华（花）拱　flower arms

"品"字科斗拱　brackets in the shape of the Chinese character "Pin" between crossbeam and ceiling

角科斗拱后尾　corner brackets supporting caisson

平身科斗拱后尾　brackets resting on beam at base and supporting coffered ceiling lath with tail end of long member and cantilever

"减柱造"法式　the method of construction called "without pillars"

抬梁法　column and strut-beam construction method

叠架法　post and lintel method

单翘三昂　single corbel bracket units with three cantilever arms

无梁殿　vaulted hall

屋顶与装饰
ROOF FORMS AND THEIR DECORATION (ROOF CONSTRUCTION)

屋顶式样　different types of roof shape；styles of roofs

正脊　main（top）ridge；horizontal top ridge

侧（垂）脊　sloping ridge

重（单）檐　double（single）-eave

屋脊檐头　ridges of roofs and ends of eaves

斜（尖）脊　hip（arris）

V形檐槽　arris gutter

单坡屋顶　pent roof

斜脊人字（三角）屋顶　hipped gable roof

圆屋顶（穹窿）　vault；dome structure

卷棚顶　rolled pitched roof

圆攒尖顶　conical roof

四角攒尖顶　Sijiao Cuanjian, a hipped pavilion roof（four corners gathered to a point roof）；four sloping ridges meeting at apex；a roof drawn up to a point

四坡式屋顶　hip（hipped）roof

四坡复檐屋顶　double-eaved hip roof

四坡三角屋顶　hip and gable roof

角椎体屋顶（金字塔屋顶）　pyramidal roof

鞍形屋顶　saddle roof

曲线屋顶　curved roof

勾连搭式屋顶　continuous joined roofs

庑殿顶　Wudian, a pitched roof；“veranda great hall” roof；a hipped roof with one horizontal and four sloping ridges

单檐庑殿顶　single-eaved pitched roof；single-eaved great hall roof

重檐庑殿顶　double-eaved roof with one horizontal and four sloping ridges（the highest ranking）

歇山顶　Xieshan, a saddle roof sitting on the lower half of a hip roof

单檐歇山顶　single-eaved hipped roof

重檐歇山顶　double-eaved, hipped roof with one horizontal and four sloping ridges；double-eaved roof in the hip and gablet type

歇山卷棚式　a hipped and gabled roof with single, long-pointed upturned eave corners

硬山顶　Yingshan, a saddle roof without the overhang at the ends

悬山顶　Xuanshan, a saddle roof with slight overhangs; pitched roof with overhanging eaves; overhanging mountain roof

盝顶(平顶四坡)　flat roof of four-slope style; "sea-case roof"; half-hipped, flat-topped roof

重檐盝顶殿　flat-roofed, double-eaved hall; a hall with double eaves and a flat-topped hipped roof

重檐攒尖顶阙亭　a double-eaved pavilion with roof of four equal sloping ridges

天圆地方的重檐攒尖顶多角亭　a pavilion with a conical roof above a many covered double-eaved roof over a stepped square base

三开间卷棚歇山式建筑　a three-bay building with a rolled hip and gablet roof

歇山式三间四柱九顶建筑　a building having 3 bays, 4 pillars and 9 roofs which are of a Chinese Xieshan style (i. e. one with a main ridge, 4 vertical and 4 propping ridges and 2 or 4 slopes)

别致的重檐八角攒顶式结构　a unique structure having a double-eaved roof whose 8 sides converge into a ball end

屋顶圆头（宝顶）　roof pommel at the apex

铜镀金宝顶　gilt bronze roof pommel; gilt spherical ornament at apex

琉璃宝顶　glazed ceramic roof pommel

渗金宝顶　a gilt Buddhist parasol

翼角　upturned roof-corner

飞檐　flying-eaved roof

举架　pitch and curvature of roof

吻兽　zoomorphic ornaments on palace or temple roofs; ceramic roof animals

檐角套兽　grasping dragon; hornless dragon-shaped head encasing a corner member

乘鸡仙人　immortal riding a hen

仙人走兽全景　zoomorphs in series

正（大）吻　huge gaping dragon

小兽　small creatures

龙吻　dragon snout on both ends of a roof ridge

鸱尾　the tail of a cormorant

龙　（参见 P129）

凤　（参见 P129）

狮子　lion

天马　winged or celestial horse

海马　seahorse

狻猊　（Suan Ni） scaled lion

押鱼　Ya Yu

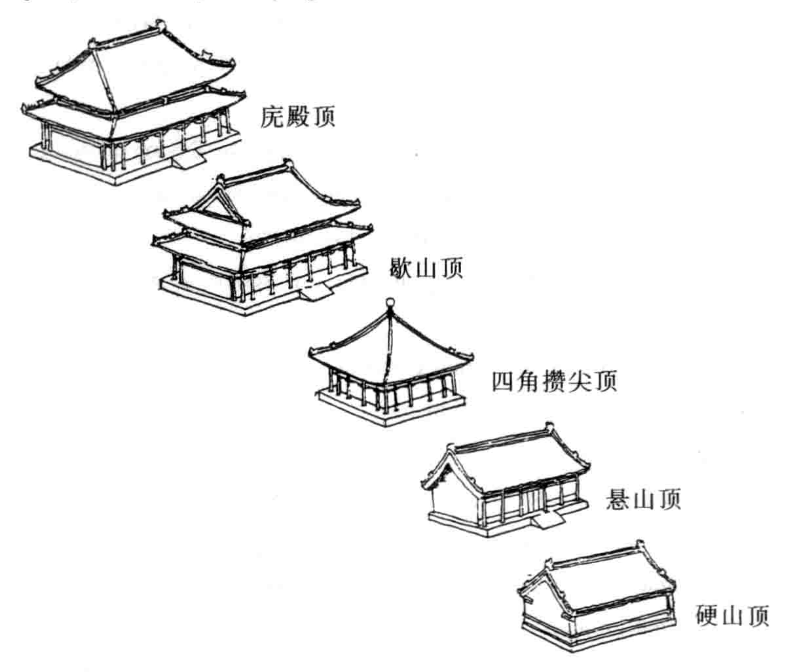
獬豸　（Xie Zhi） the fire-eating animal

斗牛　Dou Niu

行什　Hang Shi

五种主要屋顶式样

Five main styles of roofing from top: wudian, xieshan, sijiao cuanjian, xuanshan, and yingshan



内外装修
INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR FITTINGS

内外檐装饰　decorations on the inner and outer eaves

浑金（彩绘） embossed gold leaf decoration

贴金（彩绘） covered in gold leaf

藻头 girdle

箍头 encircle

旋子 whorl or curl; polychrome painted decoration

花心（旋眼） flower heart or center

彩画 decorative painting

和玺彩画 polychrome painted decoration in He Xi style (employed in the most important buildings, or served for the highest order of buildings)

旋子彩画 Xuan Zi style of decoration (employed in the secondary buildings)

苏式彩画 Suzhou style of decoration; the Suzhou-style colored painting (the 3rd order of the three main types of decoration of timber members)

龙锦彩画 the dragon-brocade design (using dragon and brocade motives)

镶嵌图案 mosaic designs

镶嵌天花（井口天花） coffered ceiling; panels of the coffered ceiling

软天花 soft ceiling

藻井、天花 caissons and ceilings

方井 square pendentive

圆井 dome

八角井 octagonal drum

龙戏珠天花板 coffered ceiling with gilded designs of dragons playing with pearls

关黄对刀 swordfight between Guan Yunchang and Huang Zhong (characters from the novel *Romance of the Three Kingdoms*)

鹤鹿同春 cranes and deer enjoying the spring time

五爪龙 the imperial five-clawed dragon; the highest order of dragons; (because of their powers connected with fire and rain, they were regarded as protectors of man's destiny)

鹿 deer (in Taoist mythology, it is the animal capable of searching out the Ling Zhi 灵芝, or fungus of immortality, and is often portrayed with a stylized version of the fungus in

its mouth; it therefore presents longevity)

龙眼宝珠　precious dragon-eye pearl

卍字饰　Swastika; Swastica (an auspicious symbol of great antiquity with its crampons usually placed to the right, it was most probably imported along with Buddhist art but may also be associated with the meandering patterns of ancient Chinese applied art)

风门　wind shelter door

屏门　screen door between inner and outer courtyards

实榻门　Shita doors (studded with nine lines of nine bosses; the chased metal plates at top and bottom, decorative escutcheons and ring handles, are also gilt)

板门　plank door

隔扇门　partition door

隔心　the upper part of a partition door, also known as "lattice window"; "trellis"

裙板　the lower part of a partition door, also known as "skirt board"; "skirting panel"

四抹球纹隔扇门　trellis circle-patterned openwork lattice doors

三交六椀菱花隔扇门及帘架　water chestnut-blossom patterned partition door and curtain rails

双（三）交四（六）椀菱花隔心　partition showing "double (triple)-crossed four (six) curved water chestnut blossom pattern"

菱形格子　rhombic lattice (the lines may cross twice or three times)

支摘窗（竖绞链窗）　casement window (often with pivoting top)

钱文漏窗（扇形窗）　coin pattern lattice fanlight

什锦窗　windows of various shapes

窗花纹　lattice patterns (including lantern frame, cracked ice, coin, the Buddhist swastika and circular patterns)

菱花钉　"waterchestnut" trellis pattern lattice work

缠枝莲纹花罩　openwork hanging curtain partition with a design of intertwined lotus

板壁　board wall

博古架　shelves for antiques

板门及毗卢罩　door surmounted by elaborately carved canopy with hanging bosses

宫门拉手与饰钉　ornamental handles and studs on a ceremonial door

铺首　decorative Pu Shou, or gilt escutcheon, in the form of an animal mask (the lower half is usually in the form of a ring hanging from the animals' jaw); archaic decorative escutcheon and ring handles, called Pu Shou or Men Pu, usually in the form of an animal mask

照明　(参见 P354)

蜡烛灯和灯笼　lamps and lanterns using candles, the single source of lighting

取暖　heating

火墙　fire wall

炕　Kang, a heatable brick bed (hollow platform bed widely used in northern China usually made of bricks and heated from below); hollow brick bed warmed by a fire below

炕火口　stoke hole of the Kang ducts

烟道出口　smoke flue outlet

炭盆　charcoal brazier

火炉　lit stove

防暑措施　measures to keep off the heat in the summer

冬暖夏凉　hot in winter and cold in summer

石　工
STONEWORK

石工（匠）　stone mason

采石　quarrying stone

石方　cubic meter of stone

青白石　green-white marble; mugwort marble

汉白玉　Han white jade (a kind of white marble)

石栏杆　marble balustrades

望柱　balusters; balustrade capitals

寻杖　railing (or rail)

三重台基栏杆　three-tiered terraces with balustrades
重台钩栏　double terraces with ornate balustrades
须弥座　the Buddhist Mount Sumeru
单层须弥座围白石栏杆　a single wide Sumeru terrace surrounded by white marble balustrades
龙头（螭首）石雕水注　marble waterspouts carved in the shape of dragon's (hornless dragon's) head
龙凤云雕石栏杆　white marble balustrade carved with dragon, phoenix and cloud designs
龙云石柱　marble column decorated with winding dragons and clouds in relief
云龙阶石　stepping stone carved with clouds and dragons
兽面柱头　animal head mounted on pillar
白石甬路　walkway paved with white stone
雕石御路　imperial way of carved stone slab; dragon pavement
奇石玉座　stones of fantastic shapes on white stone stands
丹墀、丹陛　Danchi or Danbi, vermilion steps of stone leading up to a palace hall
清式抱鼓石　undecorated terminal panel stone

给水排水
WATER SUPPLY AND DRAINAGE

桥梁、涵洞　bridges and culverts
单拱桥　single-arched bridge
平桥　flat bridge
单拱结构　single-arched structure
地下水道　underground waterways; gully drain
泄水槽　drainage gully
出（入）口　outlet (inlet)
排水干道　major artery of the drainage network
券洞（沟眼）　arched culvert
沟帮（底）　bed (bank) of culvert
滴水嘴　gargoyle
下水道　gully drain
钱眼（下水口）　coin-shaped drain

集水孔　gully hole
水落管、水槽　gullet
水滴子　water-spout

四　宫殿园林
PALACES AND GARDENS

故宫（紫禁城）
THE IMPERIAL PALACE
(THE FORBIDDEN CITY)

故宫（紫禁城）　The Imperial Palace (known as the Forbidden City; built in 1406 – 1420; covers an area of about 720,000 square meters)

护城河　moat (52 meters wide)

宫墙　palace walls (10 meters high)

角楼　corner tower; turret; watchtower

中路　The Middle Section

午门　Wu Men. Meridian Gate; Noon Gate (main entrance to the Forbidden City; built in 1420 and repaired in 1647; its archway is 8 meters high and 35 meters deep)

五凤楼（午门雁翅楼）　Wu Feng Lou. Meridian Gate showing the two wild goose wings extensions, known as the Five Phoenix Tower

金水桥　Marble bridges over the Golden River; Golden River Bridges

太和门　Tai He Men. Gate of Great Harmony (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1889; stands on a foundation of 3.44 meters high and covers 1300 square meters of floor space)

太和殿（金銮殿）　Tai He Dian. Hall of Great Harmony (popularly called "Hall of Golden Bells"; built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1695; 35 meters high with an area of 2377 square meters; the largest and most important building in

the Forbidden City)

太和殿前广场　the vast courtyard in front of the Hall of Great Harmony

中和殿　Zhong He Dian. Hall of Middle Harmony (originally named Hua Gai Dian or Hall of Splendid Canopy 华盖殿; a square building, built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1627)

保和殿　Bao He Dian. Hall of Preserving Harmony (originally called Jin Shen Dian 谨身殿, Hall of Respectful Care and Contentment, or Hall of Practicing Moral Culture; built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1625)

景运门　Jing Yun Men. Gate of Great Fortune; Gate of Prospect and Fortune

隆宗门　Long Zong Men. Gate of Great Ancestors; Gate of Glorifying Forebears

军机处　Jun Ji Chu. Office of the Grand Council of State (with the assistance of the Grand Councillors, the emperor dealt with the military and political affairs)

九卿房　Jiu Qing Fang. House for Nine Degrees of High Officials; the Main Office of the Nine Ministers

懋勤殿　Mao Qin Dian. Hall of Industrious Energy (originally used as a study by the emperor Kangxi, afterwards occupied by those members of the Hanlin Academy who had secretarial duties at court)

乾清门　Qian Qing Men. Gate of Heavenly Purity (built in 1420 and repaired in 1655; the main entrance to inner court)

上书房　Shang Shu Fang. Imperial Reading Room (study for children of the imperial family)

日精门　Ri Jing Men. Gate of Glorious Sun

月华门　Yue Hua Men. Gate of Luminous Moon

乾清宫　Qian Qing Gong. Palace of Heavenly Purity (built in 1420, rebuilt in 1669, and again rebuilt after a fire in 1798; the place where the emperor lived and handled routine affairs from the Ming to early Qing periods; the four large characters on the tablet above the throne written by the first Qing emperor, read "Zheng Da Guang Ming," means the ruler should be open and just, shin-

ing on all things like the sun; yet behind this tablet was a hiding place where the ruler would leave his secret testament designating a successor to the throne — a custom that started in the 18th century with the emperor Yongzheng)

批本处 Pi Ben Chu. Office for Receiving Cabinet Documents submitted to the emperor

御茶房 Yu Cha Fang. Imperial Tea Hall

交泰殿 Jiao Tai Dian. Hall of Union; Hall of Mutual Ease; Hall of Prosperity (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1655; used for storing 25 imperial seals — four of them in the Manchu language were used before the Qing made Beijing its capital in 1644; the rest are bilingual, Chinese and Manchu, ordered by the Qianlong emperor; also here was placed a clepsydra dating from Qianlong period)

景和门 Jing He Men. Gate of Great Pleasure

隆福门 Long Fu Men. Gate of Great Happiness

坤宁宫 Kun Ning Gong. Palace of Earthly Tranquility (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1655; used as the bedchamber of the Ming empresses; however, Qing rulers changed it into a place for offering sacrifices to gods)

坤宁门 Kun Ning Men. Gate of Earthly Tranquility

御花园 Yu Hun Yuan. Imperial Garden (built in the Ming period with an area of over 7,000 square meters)

天一门 Tian Yi Men. The First Gate of Heaven

钦安殿 Qin An Dian. Hall of Imperial Peace; a Taoist Temple for Imperial Worshipers; Hall of Imperial Tranquility (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1535; the place where the Ming and Qing emperors offered sacrifices to the Taoist God Xuan Wu 玄武)

四神祠 Si Shen Ci. Temple of Four Gods

启运门 Qi Yun Men. Gate of Initiating Good Luck

千秋亭 Qian Qiu Ting. Thousand-Autumn Pavilion

万春亭 Wan Chun Ting. Ten-Thousand-Spring Pavilion; Innumerable Spring Pavilion

浮碧亭 Fu Bi Ting. Pavilion of Green Ripples; Pavilion of

Floating Green (sitting above a pool, balanced symmetrically by the pavilion of Auspicious Clarity)

澄瑞亭 Cheng Rui Ting. Pavilion of Auspicious Clarity; Pavilion of Clarity and Excellence

绛雪轩 Jiang Xue Xuan. Pavilion of Crimson and White; Pavilion of Crimson Snow Flakes (built in 1420; used by the emperor Qianlong to compose poems with his courtiers)

摛藻堂 Chi Zao Tang. Hall of Literary Elegance (kept selections of the Four Libraries)

养性斋 Yang Xing Zhai. Study of the Cultivation of Nature (the place where Sir Reginald Johnston gave lessons to Emperor Xuantong)

延晖阁 Yan Hui Ge. Pavilion of Prolonged Sunshine; Pavilion for Welcoming Sunlight (built in the Ming Dynasty; this two-story pavilion was the place where the emperors Qianlong, Daoguang and Xianfeng of the Qing Dynasty once composed poems)

位育斋 Wei Yu Zhai. Lodge for the Proper Places and Cultivations of Things (built in the Ming Dynasty; the place for Taoist activities in the Palace)

堆秀山 Dui Xiu Shan. Rockery Hill; Artificial Hill with Fountains; Hill of Piled Excellence

仙家洞 Xian Jia Dong. The Fairies' Home Cave

御景亭 Yu Jing Ting. Imperial Pavilion for Distant Views; Imperial Prospect Pavilion; Pavilion of Imperial Views

承光门 Cheng Guang Men. Gate of Inheriting Light

顺贞门 Shun Zhen Men. Gate of Happiness and Luck; Gate of Pursuit of Truth

神武门 Shen Wu Men. Gate of Martial Spirit; Gate of Spiritual Valor; Gate of Divine Prowess (built in 1420; the north gate of the Forbidden City; the tower on this gate was called the Drum Tower in the old days)

内东路 The Inner Eastern Section

斋宫 Zhai Gong. Palace of Abstinence; Fasting Palace (built in 1731; the place where the emperor was expected to purify

himself before taking part in a solemn sacrifice)

毓庆宫　Yu Qing Gong. Palace of Cultivation of Happiness; Palace of the Bringing-Forth of Blessings (the imperial school-room and private residence of Emperor Jiaqing)

奉先殿　Feng Xian Dian. Hall of Worshiping Ancestors; Hall of Offerings to the Ancestors (built in 1654 and rebuilt in 1679; used for reserving the spirit-tablets of imperial ancestors)

景仁宫　Jing Ren Gong. Palace of Great Benevolence (or Mercy) (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1655; the residence of empresses and imperial concubines)

延禧宫　Yan Xi Gong. Palace of Prolonged Happiness

承乾宫　Cheng Qian Gong. Palace of Inheriting Heaven (built in the Ming Dynasty and reconstructed in 1655; where Emperor Shunzhi's concubine Ning Mi once lived)

永和宫　Yong He Gong. Palace of Eternal Harmony (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in the Qing Emperor Kangxi's reign; where Emperor Kangxi's Empress Xiaogong Ren and Emperor Guangxu's beloved concubine Jin Fei once lived)

钟粹宫　Zhong Cui Gong. Palace of Gathering Essence (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1655; originally the residential place of the crown prince)

景阳宫　Jing Yang Gong. Palace of Great Sunlight (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1686; used to store books)

诚肃殿　Cheng Su Dian. Sincere and Respectful Hall

梵华楼　Fan Hua Lou. The Buddhist Building (keeps many Buddhist pagodas and statues)

玄穹宝殿　Xuan Qiong Bao Dian. Hall of Treasures of the Sky

箭亭　Jian Ting. Archery Pavilion (built in 1752)

北五所　Five North Residences

东三所　Three East Residences

外东路　The Outer Eastern Section

锡庆门　Xi Qing Men. Gate of Bestowal of Congratulations

九龙壁　Jiu Long Bi. Porcelain Nine-Dragon Screen (3.5 meters

high and 29.4 meters wide; more beautiful than the screen in Beihai Park)

皇极殿 Huang Ji Dian. Hall of Imperial Supremacy; Imperial Zenith Hall (built in 1772 - 1776; the place where Emperor Qianlong intended to hold a ceremony after his abdication in favor of his son)

宁寿宫 Ning Shou Gong. Palace of Tranquility and Longevity (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1771; where Emperor Qianlong and Empress Dowager Cixi once lived)

延祺门 Yan Qi Men. Gate of Spreading Happiness

宁寿宫花园 Ning Shou Gong Garden. (popularly known as the Qianlong Garden; built in 1771 - 1776; 160 meters from north to south and 40 meters from east to west, covers 6400 square meters)

养性殿 Yang Xing Dian. Hall of the Cultivation of Character (built in 1772; intended to be the living quarters for the Emperor Qianlong when he retired)

遂初堂 Sui Chu Tang. Hall of Active Retirement; Hall of Fulfilment of Long-Cherished Wish

禊赏亭 Xi Shang Ting. Pavilion of the Ceremony for Purification; Pavilion for Enjoying the Drinking Festival; Pavilion of Ceremonial Purification (its name alludes to the famous calligrapher Wang Xizhi of the Jin Dynasty, who wrote a piece of calligraphy celebrating the ceremony of this festival in the Orchid Pavilion 兰亭)

流杯渠 Liu Bei Qu. Wine-Cup-Floating Stream; Wine Cup Watercourse (in Xi Shang Ting there is a meandering water channel, in which water floating a cup full of wine runs from south to north, along which people would take their seats; whenever the wine cup came to a stop, the person who sat there would have to compose a poem and finish the cup of wine)

三友轩 San You Xuan. Three Friends Lodge

畅音阁 Chang Yin Ge. Pavilion of Pleasant Sounds; Belvedere of Flowing Music (built in 1776; three-story theater of 20.71 meters high and covers 685.94 square meters of

floor space; used to display the objects used in theatrical performances)

阅是楼 Yue Shi Lou. Building for Seeing Opera; Building for Viewing Performances (two-story theater; where the emperor and empress watched Beijing opera or regional dramas)

乐寿堂 Le Shou Tang. Hall of Pleasure and Longevity; Hall of Pleasurable Old Age (built in 1772; originally the place where the Emperor Qianlong had a rest whenever he went sight-seeing in Ning Shou Gong Garden)

颐和轩 Yi He Xuan. Pavilion of Well-Nourished Harmony (built in 1772 – 1776; the place where Emperor Qianlong took a rest after he handed over the reins of government)

古华轩 Gu Hua Xuan. Pavilion of Old Flowers; Ancient Flowery Porch (so-called because there was an ancient Chinese catalpa tree with very beautiful flowers in front of its gate)

承露台 Cheng Lu Tai. Terrace for Embracing the Dew; Terrace of Receiving Dew (on the top of an artificial hill with a cave, in which there is a flight of stone steps leading to the top of the terrace)

景福宫 Jing Fu Gong. Palace of Great Blessings (formerly the residential palace of Empress Dowager XiaoHui, the mother of Kangxi)

景祺阁 Jing Qi Ge. Pavilion of Great Happiness

符望阁 Fu Wang Ge. Pavilion of the Anticipation of Good Fortune; Pavilion for Good Wishes

萃赏亭 Cui Shang Ting. Pavilion of Appreciating Lush Scenery

耸秀亭 Song Xiu Ting. Beautifully Towering Pavilion

碧螺亭 Bi Luo Ting. Green Pavilion

太医院 (参见 P93)

御药房 (参见 P90)

御马廄 Imperial Stable

东华门 Dong Hua Men. East Glorious Gate; Eastern Floral Gate

文华殿 Wen Hua Dian. Hall of Literary

传心殿 Chuan Xin Dian. Hall of Remitting the Mind (a memorial hall to Confucius and other philosophers)

主敬殿　Zhu Jing Dian. Hall of Taoist-Master

本仁殿　Ben Ren Dian. Hall of Tender Mercy

集义殿　Ji Yi Dian. Hall of Gathering Justice

文渊阁　Wen Yuan Ge. Pavilion of Literary Profundity; Pavilion of Library (large pavilion containing the rare books printed during the Song and Yuan dynasties)

内阁大堂　Nei Ge Da Tang. Great Hall of the Grand Secretariat; Great Hall of Cabinet

内阁大库　Nei Ge Da Ku. Great Vault of the Grand Secretariat; Imperial Cabinet Archives

红本库　Hong Ben Ku. Endorsed Memorials Archives

实录库　Shi Lu Ku. Imperial Archives

国史馆　Guo Shi Guan. Hall of National History

南书房　Nan Shu Fang. The Office of the Hanlin Secretaries (where the grand secretaries of the Hanlin Academy worked)

味余书室　The Study of Lingering Flavors

知不足斋　The Studio of Increasing Knowledge

迷宫　Labyrinth (so-called because its many twists and turns caused the visitor to become disoriented)

珍妃井　Zhen Fei Well (when the Eight-Power Allied Forces forced their way into Beijing in 1900, Zhen Fei, the favorite imperial concubine of the emperor Guangxu, was drowned upon the order of the empress dowager Cixi in this well; the concubine was only 25 years old; her body was retrieved and the well stopped up after the Empress Dowager returned to the Palace from Xi'an in 1901; consequently, it has been known as the Zhen Fei Well)

内西路　The Inner Western Section

漱芳斋　Shu Fang Zhai. Lodge of Fresh Fragrance; Study of Pure Rich Fragrance (during the last month of the lunar year, Emperor Qianlong came here to write the character "Fu," or Happiness, for greeting the new year)

风雅存　Feng Ya Cun. Preservation of Culture (or Elegance) (a small stage in Shu Fang Zhai; Emperors Qianlong,

Jiaqing and Tongzhi came here often to watch theatrical performances)

重华宫 Chong Hua Gong. Palace of Double Brilliance (Emperor Qianlong lived here while he was still a prince; after becoming emperor, it was used to entertain his courtiers and to compose verses together with them)

崇敬殿(乐善堂) Chong Jing Dian. Hall of Adoration, or Hall of Pleasure and Good Will (the three characters "Le Shan Tang" on the tablet over the throne in this hall were written by Emperor Qianlong; because of this, it was also called Le Shan Tang)

丽景轩 Li Jing Xuan. Pavilion of Brilliant Prospects; Pavilion of Beautiful Scenery (contains a small stage; Empress Dowager Cixi sat on the imperial bed opposite the stage to enjoy the performances of theatrical troupe at her leisures)

储秀宫 Chu Xiu Gong. Palace of Gathering Excellence; Palace of Empress and Imperial Concubines (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1655; the empresses and imperial concubines of the Ming and Qing courts lived here; Empress Dowager Cixi once lived here)

体和殿 Ti He Dian. Hall of State Harmony (rebuilt from Chu Xiu Men in 1802; when Empress Dowager Cixi celebrated her fiftieth birthday, a banquet was held here)

翊坤宫 Yi Kun Gong. Palace of Blessings to Mother Earth; Palace of Upholding Earth (built in 1417 and rebuilt in 1655; in the Ming and Qing periods, the empresses and imperial concubines lived here; the empress dowager Cixi had lived here before she became empress)

万安宫 Wan An Gong. Palace of Myriad Peace (original name of Yi Kun Gong)

咸福宫 Xian Fu Gong. Palace of Complete Happiness (where Emperor Jiaqing mourned over the death of his father emperor Qianlong)

永寿宫 Yong Shou Gong. Palace of Eternal Longevity; Palace of Vigorous Old Age (built in Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1658; the residence of empress and concubines of the

Ming and Qing dynasties)

养心殿 Yang Xin Dian. Hall of Mental Cultivation; Hall of the Cultivation of the Mind (built in 1537 and repaired during the Qing Emperor Yongzheng's reign; in the 200 years from the Yongzheng period to the end of the Qing rule, the emperor mostly lived and handled routine affairs here; the eastern room was where Empress Dowager Cixi took charge of state affairs "behind a screen")

三希堂 San Xi Tang. Three Rare Hall; Room of Three Rarities (a private study in which Emperor Qianlong kept three rare pieces of calligraphy— "Sunny Weather after Snow" by Wang Xizhi, "Mid Autumn" by Wang Xianzhi and "Bo Yuan" by Wang Xun, all of which from the Jin Dynasty, or 4th century)

雨花阁 Yu Hua Ge. The Rain Flower Pavilion; Pavilion of the Rain of Flowers; Building of Beautiful Rain (built in the Ming Dynasty; a three-story square building where Buddhas were worshiped)

体顺堂 Ti Shun Tang. Hall of State Satisfaction (the Provisional residence of the empress while the emperor lived in Yang Xin Dian)

倦勤斋 Juan Qin Zhai. Lodge for Retired Life; Study of Peaceful Old Age (built in 1772; a resting and recreational place; its name means that one still diligently strives in advanced years)

长春宫 Chang Chun Gong. Palace of Long-Spring-Time; Palace of Eternal Spring (built in 1420; rebuilt in 1683; the empresses and concubines of the Ming and Qing periods used this palace as their bedchamber; Empress Dawager Cixi also once lived here)

体元殿 Ti Yuan Dian. Hall of State Unity (built on the site of former rear hall of Tai Ji Dian 太极殿 in 1810; Empress Dowager Cixi once lived here)

太极殿 Tai Ji Dian. Hall of Great Supremacy; Hall of the Ultimate Principle (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1683; also where the empresses and imperial concubines of the Ming

and Qing periods lived)

启祥宫（未央宫） Qi Xing Gong, Wei Yang Gong. Palace of Initiating Auspiciousness; Palace of Blessings; Palace of Infinity (another name for Tai Ji Dian 太极殿)

外西路 The Outer Western Section

慈宁宫 Ci Ning Gong. Palace of Compassion and Tranquility (built in 1653 to celebrate the birthday of Emperor Shunzhi's mother; also the palace of the Empress Dowager Ci'an during the co-regency)

慈宁宫花园 Ci Ning Gong Garden

英华殿 Ying Hua Dian. Hall of Luxuriant Beauty; Hall of Exuberance (built in Ming Dynasty to worship Gods of Lamaist religion)

建福宫 Jian Fu Gong. Palace of Establishing Happiness

建福宫花园 Jian Fu Gong Garden

寿康宫 Shou Kang Gong. Palace of Longevity and Well-Being; Palace of Longevity and Health

寿安宫 Shou An Gong. Palace of Tranquil Old Age

图书馆 Library

大佛堂 Da Fo Tang. Hall of Worshiping the Great Buddha

宝相楼 Bao Xiang Lou. Building for Images of Buddhas; Building of Buddha's Features (two-story building, repaired in 1930; keeps a great number of Buddhas with their names inscribed on the stands)

咸若馆 Xian Ruo Guan. Hall of All Peace; Temple for Worshiping Buddha (a temple where Buddhas were worshiped and where many kinds of sutras are kept)

临溪亭 Lin Xi Ting. Pavilion over a Pond; Pavilion on the Brink of the Brook

吉云楼 Ji Yun Lou. Building of Auspicious Clouds

内务府 Nei Wu Fu. Imperial Household Department (an administrative organization responsible for serving the personal needs of the emperor, his immediate family and his intimate attendants in the private residential quarters of the imperial palace)

造办处　Zao Ban Chu.　Workshops of the Imperial Household Department

南薰殿　Nan Xun Dian.　Hall of the Southern Fragrance（kept the portraits of emperors of former dynasties）

御书处　Yu Shu Chu.　Department of Imperial Calligraphy

西华门　Xi Hua Men.　West Glorious Gate; Western Floral Gate

武英殿　Wu Ying Dian.　Hall of Military Prowess（a palace building most noted for housing the Imperial Printing Office 修书处）

浴德堂　Yu De Tang.　Hall for Cultivating Virtue

凝道殿　Ning Dao Dian.　Hall of Moral Concentration

焕章殿　Huan Zhang Dian.　Hall of Brilliant Writings

宝蕴楼　Bao Yun Lou.　Building for Accumulation of Treasures

咸安宫　Xian An Gong.　Palace of All Peace

城隍庙　Cheng Huang Miao.　Temple to the City God; Temple to the Guardian Spirit of the City

筒子河　The Tube River

断虹桥　Rainbow-Cutting Bridge

社稷江山金殿　Bronze Hall to the Gods of the Grain and the Land

其他　Others

乐寿堂西廊法帖　inscribed stone tablets mounted in the wall of the west gallery of Le Shou Tang

长春宫院内的《红楼梦》壁画　mural depicting scenes from Hong Lou Meng, or Dream of the Red Chamber, on the surrounding corridor in the courtyard of Chang Chun Gong

乾清门两侧的八字照壁　a "funnel-like" arrangement of two walls leading to Qian Qing Men

遵义门内的琉璃照壁　a huge screen wall covered with glazed tiles inside Zun Yi Men

养心殿内的"中正仁和"匾　a tablet with the inscription of four Chinese characters "Zhong Zheng Ren He"（just and benevolent）in the Hall of Cultivating Mind

交泰殿内的铜壶滴漏　clepsydra（water clock）in the Hall of Union（a time piece in ancient China made in 1745）

养心殿内的"勤政亲贤"匾　a tablet with the inscription of four

Chinese characters "Qin Zheng Qin Xian" (meaning be diligent in state affairs and close to the able worthy)

保和殿后的云龙阶石　pavement stone carved with clouds and dragons behind Bao He Dian

须弥台　sumeru dais

石子路　mosaic pavement; intricate mosaic of cobble path

下马石（碑）　dismounting stone (or stele) (means "dismount from horseback here")

合欢树　two trees whose branches interlock (or join) together

诸葛拜斗石　a stone with the image of "Zhuge Liang paying his respects to the meteorites of the Big Dipper"

奇石玉座　（参见 P34）

日晷　sun dial (time piece invented in China at very early times)

嘉量　Jia Liang (a standard measure in China's feudal society)

铜锅　bronze vat

铜贝赑　bronze tortoise (known as Bei Xi)

铜鹤　bronze crane

铜炉　bronze censer

铜狮子　bronze lion

驯象　tame elephant

焚帛炉　（参见 P14）

明清时期北京中轴线
The Central Axis (from South to North) of Beijing During the Ming and Qing Dynasties

永定门　Gate of Eternal Settlement

正阳门　Due South Gate (more commonly called Front Gate)

大明门　Great Ming Gate (called Great Qing Gate in the Qing Dynasty)

天安门　（参见 P378）

端门　Gate of Uprightness

午门　（参见 P36）

太和门　（参见 P36）

前三殿　Three Front Halls

乾清门　Gate of Heavenly Purity

后三宫　Three Rear Palaces

坤宁门　（参见 P38）

钦安殿　（参见 P38）

神武门　（参见 P39）

景山　Scenic Mountain（Hill）

鼓楼　（参见 P25）

钟楼　（参见 P25）

北京城中轴线及两侧建筑

APPENDED：Flanking the north-south axis are two huge architectural complexes at the south：the Altar of Temple of Heaven（天坛）on the east，and the Altar of Agriculture（先农坛）on the west. Two more important architectural complexes at the center are：the Imperial Ancestral Temple（太庙）on the east，and the Altar to the God of Land and Grain（社稷坛）on the west.

天坛　（参见 P360）

祈年殿　Qi Nian Dian. Hall of Praying for a Good Harvest

圜丘　Huan Qiu. Altar of Heaven

皇穹宇　Huang Qiong Yu. Imperial Vault of Heaven

丹陛桥　Dan Bi Qiao. Red Stairway Bridge

长廊　Chang Lang. The Long Walkway

宰牲亭　Zai Sheng Ting. Animal Slaughter Pavilion

双环亭　Shuang Huan Ting. Double Circle Pavilion

斋宫　（参见 P39）

回音壁　Hui Yin Bi. Echo Wall（so-called because a whispered sound made on one side of it is audible on the other）

三音石　San Yin Shi. Triple Sounding Stone（clapping while standing on the stone will cause the stone to resonate，giving back a triple echo）

先农坛　The Altar of Agriculture

太庙　（参见 P360）

享殿　Xing Dian. Hall for Worship of Ancestors

寝殿　Qin Dian. Hall for Worship of Imperial Ancestral Tablets

祧庙　Tiao Miao. Temple for Worship of Remote Imperial Ancestors' Tablets

戟门　Ji Men.　Halberd Gate

戟门桥　Ji Men Qiao.　Halberd Gate Bridges

琉璃门　Liu Li Men.　Glazed Gate

井亭　Jing Ting.　Well Pavilion

燎炉　Liao Lu.　Oven for burning sacrificial offerings

社稷坛　（参见 P360）

三　海
THE SEA PALACES

(Divided into three different sections: Nan Hai, or the South Sea, Zhong Hai, or the Middle Sea, and Bei Hai, or the North Sea)

南海　Nan Hai (The South Sea)

太液池　Tai Ye Chi.　The Pool of Great Secretion; The Great Liquid Pool

瀛台　Ying Tai.　The Ocean Terrace

迎薰亭　Ying Xun Ting.　Pavilion of Great Fragrance

翔鸾阁　Xiang Luan Ge.　Pavilion of the Soaring Phoenix

涵元门（殿）　Han Yuan Men or Dian.　Gate (Hall) of Magnanimous Origins

景星殿　Jing Xing Dian.　Hall of the Clear Star

藻韵楼　Zao Yun Lou.　House of Sweet Melodies

绮思楼　Qi Si Lou.　House of Secret Thoughts

香扆殿　Xiang Yi Dian.　Hall of the Fragrant Screen

春明楼　Chun Ming Lou.　Bright Spring House

湛虚楼　Zhan Xu Lou.　House of Placid Leisure

补桐书屋　Bu Tong Shu Wu.　Library of the Added Paint-tree

遂安室　Sui An Shi.　Chamber of Heart's Ease

待月轩　Dai Yue Xuan.　Kiosk for Awaiting the Moon

镜光亭　Jing Guang Ting.　Pavilion of Mirror of Light

牣鱼亭　Ren Yu Ting.　Pavilion for Feeding Fish

八音克谐　Ba Yin Ke Xie.　Eight Notes Compelling Harmony (a terrace commonly called)

长春书室　Chang Chun Shu Shi.　Library of the Everlasting Spring

漱芳润　Shu Fang Run.　Pure Rich Fragrance (a little chamber)

怀抱爽　Huai Bao Shuang. Pleasure Embracing Pavilion (a pavilion close to the water)

宝月楼　Bao Yue Lou. House of the Precious Moon

垂虹亭　Chui Hong Ting. The Hanging Rainbow (a pavilion)

俯清泚　Fu Qing Ci. Condescending Pure Stream (a pavilion)

云绘楼　Yun Hui Lou. Tower of Cloud Pictures

荷风薰露　He Feng Xun Lu. Lotus Breeze and Scented Dew (a pavilion)

崇雅殿　Chong Ya Dian. Cultivate Elegance Hall

静憩轩　Jing Qi Xuan. Chamber of Quiet Rest

怀远斋　Huai Yuan Zhai. Study of Reflections on Remote Matters

纯一斋　Chun Yi Zhai. Study of Singleness of Heart

春耦斋　Chun Ou Zhai. Study of the Spring Companion

听鸿楼　Ting Hong Lou. Building for Listening to the Swan

植秀轩　Zhi Xiu Xuan. Establish Culture Porch

虚白室　Xu Bai Shi. Pure Mind Chamber

爱翠楼　Ai Cui Lou. Love of Green Trees Building; Love of the Green Thicket Tower

佛亭　Fo Ting. Buddha Pavilion (popularly known as Great Round Mirror)

延庆楼　Yan Qing Lou. Inviting Good Luck Pavilion

金鳌玉蝀桥　Jin Ao Yu Dong Qiao. Bridge of the Golden Sea Monster and the Jade Rainbow Trout

中海　Zhong Hai (The Middle Sea)

紫光阁　Zi Guang Ge. Palace of Purple Glory

武成殿　Wu Cheng Dian. Hall of Military Officers

时应宫　Shi Ying Gong. Palaces of Seasonable Times

万善殿　Wan Shan Dian. Hall of Innumerable Virtues

千圣殿　Qian Sheng Dian. Hall of a Thousand Saints

水云榭　Shui Yun Xie. The Water Cloud Kiosk

太液秋风　Tai Ye Qiu Feng. The Autumn Wind over the Tai Ye Pool

北海　Bei Hai (The North Sea)

堆云积翠桥　Dui Yun Ji Cui Qiao. Bridge of Massed Clouds and

the Kingfisher Blue

白塔　Bai Ta. White Dagoba (usually so-called because of its Indian shape)

五龙亭　Wu Long Ting. The Five-Dragon Pavilion; Five-Pavilion Bridge (in the shape of an undulating dragon)

承光殿　Cheng Guang Dian. Hall of the Reception of Glory; Receiving Light Hall

白石佛　The Alabaster Buddha

永安寺　Yong An Si. Temple of Eternal Peace

普安殿　Pu An Dian. Hall of Universal Peace

善因殿　Shan Yin Dian. Hall of Beneficent Cause

悦心殿　Yue Xin Dian. Hall of Joyful Heart

静心斋　Jing Xin Zhai. Lodge of the Quiet Heart

法轮殿　Fa Lun Dian. Hall of Wheel of the Law

庆霄楼　Qing Xiao Lou. Building of Felicitous Skies

蟠青室　Pan Qing Shi. The Green Bowers

琳光殿　Lin Guang Dian. Hall of Sparkling Brightness

妙鬟云峰　Miao Quan Yun Feng. The Peak with Wonderful Cloud Wreath

甘露殿　Gan Lu Dian. Hall of Sweet Dew

阅古楼　Yue Gu Lou. Building of the Review of Antiquities; Chamber for Reading Classics

三希堂　(参见 P45)

游廊　You Lang. Floating Gallery

写妙石室　Xie Miao Shi Shi. Stone-Chamber for Writing Wonders

盘风精舍　Pan Feng Jing She. Pure House of the Winding Wind

嵌岩室　Qian Yan Shi. Lofty Cliff Room

环璧楼　Huan Bi Lou. Precious and Round Building

见春亭　Jian Chun Ting. Pavilion for Contemplating the Spring

漪晴楼　Yi Qing Lou. Building of Rippling Brightness; Tower at Edge of Clear Waters

分凉台　Fen Liang Tai. Pavilion of Diffused Coolness; Pavilion of Pleasing Coolness

远帆阁　Yuan Fan Ge. Far Sail Pavilion; Tower of Far-Off Sails; Pavilion of the Distant Sails

紫翠房　Zi Cui Fang. Purple and Green House

碧照楼　Bi Zhao Lou. Tower of Blue Reflection

承露盘　Cheng Lu Pan. Gathering Dew Dish

小西天　Xiao Xi Tian. Small Western Heaven; Small Western Paradise

大西天　Da Xi Tian. Great Western Heaven; Great Western Paradise

极乐世界　Ji Le Shi Jie. The World of Great Happiness (the hall with the mountain of the Gods was called Ji Le Shi Jie); The Temple of Pure Land

万佛楼　Wan Fo Lou. Tower of Innumerable Buddhas

枕峦廊　Zhen Luan Lang. The Gallery Resting on Stones

沁泉廊　Qin Quan Lang. The Penetrating Spring-Water Gallery

北垂亭　Bei Chui Ting. The Low North Pavilion

叠翠楼　Die Cui Lou. Building of Climbing Jungle

庵画轩　An Hua Xuan. The Porch of Rare Paintings

先蚕坛　Xian Can Tan. Altar of Silk Culture; Altar of Silkworms

亲蚕殿　Qin Can Dian. The Imperial Sericulture Hall

浴蚕池　Yu Can Chi. The Pool for Washing Silkworms

福昌殿　Fu Chang Dian. Hall of Shining Happiness

琼华岛　Qiong Hua Dao. Resplendent Jade Island

琼岛春阴碑　A stele with inscription Qiong Dao Chun Yin (Beautiful Island of the Hidden Treasures of Spring)

须弥春牌楼　Pai Lou with inscription Xu Mi Chun (The Spring of Sumeru)

华严清界　Hua Yan Qing Jie. The Pure Territory of Avatamsaka

团城　Tuan Cheng. The Round Castle (or City)

颐和园
THE SUMMER PALACE

东宫门内　Inside of Dong Gong Men

东宫门　Dong Gong Men. The East Palace Gate

仁寿殿　Ren Shou Dian. Palace (or Hall) of Benevolence and Longevity

勤政殿　Qin Zheng Dian. Palace (or Hall) of Diligence to Poli-

tics

大圆宝镜 Da Yuan Bao Jing. Great Round Precious Mirror

德和园 De He Yuan. Garden of Cordiality of Virtue; Garden of Harmony and Virtue

怡春堂 Yi Chun Tang. Hall of Delightful Spring

颐乐殿 Yi Le Dian. Palace of Centenary Happiness; Hall of Pleasant Smiles

谐趣园 Xie Qu Yuan. Garden of Harmonious Delight; Garden of Harmonizing the Pleasure

玉澜堂 Yu Lan Tang. Hall of Jade Billows; Hall of the Waters of Rippling Jade

灵芬室 Ling Fen Shi. Chamber of Spiritual Fragrance

藕香榭 Ou Xiang Xie. Pavilion of Nelumbo Perfume

静宜园 Jing Yi Yuan. Garden of Compatibility with Quiescence

宜芸馆 Yi Yun Guan. Lodge of Propriety of Weeding

夕佳楼 Xi Jia Lou. Chamber of Evening Beauty

乐寿堂 （参见 P42）

青芝岫 Qing Zhi Xiu. Cavernous Cliff with Blue Branching Boletus

水木自亲 Shui Mu Zi Qin. The Nature Intimacy of Water and Trees

邀月门 Yao Yue Men. Gate of Inviting the Moon; Inviting Moon Gate

长廊 Chang Lang. Long Gallery (or Corridor)

石丈亭 Shi Zhang Ting. Pavilion of Mr. Stone

留佳亭 Liu Jia Ting. Pavilion of Nice to Stay

对鸥舫 Dui Ou Fang. Barge for Facing the Gull

寄澜亭 Ji Lan Ting. Pavilion of Wandering Waves

秋水亭 Qiu Shui Ting. Pavilion of Autumn Water

鱼藻轩 Yu Zao Xuan. Pavilion of Fish and Aquatic Grass

清遥亭 Qing Yao Ting. Pavilion of Limpidity and Remoteness

前山坡东部 The East of the Front Hill Slope

含新亭 Han Xin Ting. Pavilion of Enclosing the New

畅春园 Chang Chun Yuan. Garden of Exhilarating Spring

翠岫 Cui Xiu. Verdant Cavernous Cliff

自在庄　Zi Zai Zhuang. Farmstead of Ease

养云轩　Yang Yun Xuan. Pavilion for Keeping the Clouds

福荫轩　Fu Yin Xuan. Pavilion of Blessed Shelter

餐秀亭　Can Xiu Ting. Pavilion for Partaking the Beautiful

燕台大观　Yan Tai Da Guan. Grand View of Yan Tai

无尽意轩　Wu Jin Yi Xuan. Pavilion of the Inexhaustibility of Ideas

圆朗斋　Yuan Lang Zhai. Study of Perfect Brightness

瞰碧台　Kan Bi Tai. Terrace for Watching the Verdure

写秋轩　Xie Qiu Xuan. Pavilion for Sketching the Autumn

寻云亭　Xun Yun Ting. Arbor for Investigating Clouds

重翠亭　Chong Cui Ting. Arbor of Piling Up Green

千峰彩翠　Qian Feng Cai Cui. The Beautiful Green of a Thousand Peaks

国花台　Guo Hua Tai. Terrace of the National Flower

介寿台　Jie Shou Tai. Hall for Cherishing Great Age

慈福楼　Ci Fu Lou. Upper Chamber of Maternal Happiness

排云门内　Inside of Pai Yun Men

排云门　Pai Yun Men. Gate of Pushing the Clouds

星拱瑶枢　Xing Gong Yao Shu. Stars Bowing the Jade Center (Imperial Court)

云辉玉宇　Yun Hui Yu Yu. Clouds Brighten the Heavenly Canopy

排云殿　Pai Yun Dian. Hall of Pushing the Clouds; Hall of Dispelling Clouds

大雄宝殿　Da Xiong Bao Dian. Precious Hall of the Great Hero

多宝殿　Duo Bao Dian. Hall of Multiple Values

佛香阁　Fo Xiang Ge. Belvedere of Buddha's Fragrance; Buddha Fragrance Pagoda

智慧海　Zhi Hui Hai. Sea of Wisdom; Temple of the Sea of Wisdom

宝云阁　Bao Yun Ge. Belvedere of the Precious Clouds

德辉殿　De Hui Dian. Hall of the Glory of Virtue

云外天香　Yun Wai Tian Xiang. Heavenly Fragrance Beyond the Clouds

导养正性　Dao Yang Zheng Xing. Guidance to the Cultivation of Proper Disposition

转轮藏　Zhuan Lun Zang. Revolving Book Shelves; Revolving Archive

铜亭　Tong Ting. Bronze Pavilion

五方阁　Wu Fang Ge. Belvedere of Five Cardinal Points

前山坡西部　The West of the Front Hill Slope

清华轩　Qing Hua Xuan. Pavilion of Limpidity and Splendour

安乐窝　An Le Wo. Retreat of Peace and Comfort

绿畦亭　Lü Qi Ting. Arbor of the Verdant Garden

云松巢　Yun Song Chao. Nest of Cloud-Touching Pines

山色湖光共一楼　Shan Se Hu Guang Gong Yi Lou. Storied Chamber Shared Between the Variegated Hill and the Bright Lake

澄辉阁　Cheng Hui Ge. Belvedere of Transparent Refulgence

听鹂馆　Ting Li Guan. Salon for Hearing the Oriole

凤翔云应　Feng Xiang Yun Ying. The Cloud Answers While the Phoenix Hovers

来云依日　Lai Yun Yi Ri. Approaching Clouds Cling to the Sun

蕴古室　Yun Gu Shi. Chamber for Collecting Antiques

画中游　Hua Zhong You. Arbor of Traveling in a Picture

湖山真意　Hu Shan Zhen Yi. True Spirits of the Hill over the Lake

清音山馆　Qing Yin Shan Guan. Salon of Harmonious Sound

清宴舫　Qing Yan Fang. Barge of Quiet Banquet

石舫　Shi Fang. Marble Boat

临河殿　Lin He Dian. Hall Overlooking the River

延清赏楼　Yan Qing Shang Lou. Upper Chamber for Extending Unsullied Rejoicing

穿堂殿　Chuan Tang Dian. Passage Hall Palace

斜门殿　Xie Men Dian. Slanting-Doored Palace

小有天　Xiao You Tian. Having a Small Heaven

澄怀阁　Cheng Huai Ge. Belvedere for Purifying the Heart

水周堂　Shui Zhou Tang. Hall of Water Environment

迎旭楼　Ying Xu Lou. Chamber for Welcoming the Rising Sun

荇桥　Xing Qiao.　Bridge of the Golden Lotus

五圣寺　Wu Sheng Si.　Shrine of Five Divines (the gods of "five grains")

德兴殿　De Xing Dian.　Hall of Successful Virtue

玉泉山　Yu Quan Shan.　Hill of the Jade Fountain

西宫门　Xi Gong Men.　West Palace Gate

后山坡沿　Along the Back Hill Slope

绮望轩　Qi Wang Xuan.　Pavilion for Observing the Silky Green

味闲斋　Wei Xian Zhai.　Study of Relishing Indolence

构虚轩　Gou Xu Xuan.　Pavilion of Reaching up to the Firmament

会芳堂　Hui Fang Tang.　Hall for the Assembly of Fragrance

嘉荫轩　Jia Yin Xuan.　Pavilion of Fine Shade

赅春园　Gai Chun Yuan.　Garden of Presenting Spring

清可轩　Qing Ke Xuan.　Pavilion of Tolerable Purity

袖岚书室　Xiu Lan Shu Shi.　Library for Pocketing Mountain Mist

云会寺　Yun Hui Si.　Monastery of the Assembly of Clouds

香海真源　Xiang Hai Zhen Yuan.　True Source of the Fragrant Sea

无量殿　Wu Liang Dian.　Hall of Unlimited Number

吉祥云　Ji Xiang Yun.　Cloud of Good Omen

众香界　Zhong Xiang Jie.　World of an Abundance of Fragrance

祇树林　Zhi Shu Lin.　"Jeta-Vana", or "Sacred Woods"

香岩宗印之阁　Xiang Yan Zong Yin Zhi Ge.　Belvedere of Scented Cliff and Buddha's Seal

须弥灵境　Xu Mi Ling Jing.　Sacred Land of Sumeru (Great Back Temple)

妙觉寺　Miao Jue Si.　Monastery of Fine Intelligence

苏州街　Su Zhou Jie.　Suzhou Street; Street of Suzhou

花承阁　Hua Cheng Ge.　Belvedere of Flower Plinth

多宝佛塔颂　Duo Bao Fo Ta Song.　Eulogy of the Very Precious Buddhistic Pagoda

善观寺　Shan Guan Si.　Temple of the Manifestation of Goodness

荟亭　Hui Ting.　Arbor of the Floating Cloud

双亭　Shuang Ting.　Double Arbor

景福阁　Jing Fu Ge.　Belvedere of Great Happiness

昙花阁　Tan Hua Ge. Belvedere of Broad-Leaved Epiphyllum
益寿堂　Yi Shou Tang. Hall of Increasing Age
如意庄　Ru Yi Zhuang. As-You-Wish Farmstead
乐农轩　Le Nong Xuan. Pavilion of Pleasure in Agriculture
永寿斋　Yong Shou Zhai. Study of Eternal Age
平安室　Ping An Shi. Chamber of Peace
澹宁堂　Dan Ning Tang. Hall of Placidness and Repose
随安室　Sui An Shi. Chamber of Ease Anywhere
延绿轩　Yan Lü Xuan. Pavilion of Beckoning to the Verdure
云会轩　Yun Hui Xuan. Pavilion of Meeting the Clouds
眺远斋　Tiao Yuan Zhai. Study of Gazing Afar

谐趣园内　Inside of Xie Qu Yuan

谐趣园　(参见 P54)
涵远堂　Han Yuan Tang. Hall of Submerging Vast Distance
墨妙轩　Mo Miao Xuan. Pavilion of Literary Skill
湛清轩　Zhan Qing Xuan. Pavilion of Serene Limpidity
知春堂　Zhi Chun Tang. Hall of Perceiving Spring
载时堂　Zai Shi Tang. Hall of Knowing the Time
瞩新楼　Zhu Xin Lou. Upper Story for Gazing at the Freshness
就云楼　Jiu Yun Lou. Upper Chamber of Approaching to the Clouds
玉琴峡　Yu Qin Xia. The Gorge of the Jade Lute
澄爽斋　Cheng Shuang Zhai. Library of Delightful Limpidity
澹碧斋　Dan Bi Zhai. Study of Green Ripples
饮绿亭　Yin Lü Ting. Arbor of Drinking in the Green
水乐亭　Shui Le Ting. Arbor of Aquatic Happiness
洗秋亭　Xi Qiu Ting. Arbor of Cleaning Autumn
知鱼桥　(参见 P60)
寻诗径　Xun Shi Jing. Path for Seeking Poetic Inspiration
霁清轩　Ji Qing Xuan. Pavilion of the Pureness of a Clearing Sky
酪膳房　Lao Shan Fang. Room of the Delicacy of Cream
赤城霞起　Chi Cheng Xia Qi. Ruddy Haze Rises from Chicheng
紫气东来　Zi Qi Dong Lai. Purple Vapor Approaches from the East

南湖区域 Places in Nan Hu

南湖 Nan Hu. Southern Part of the Lake

广润良雨寺 Guang Run Liang Yu Si. Temple of Extensive Moisture and Efficacious Rain

灵岩霞蔚 Ling Yan Xia Wei. Sudden Rise of Red Vapors from Ling Yan Mountain

泽普如春 Ze Pu Ru Chun. Spring-Like Universality of Moisture

鉴远堂 Jian Yuan Tang. Hall of Reflecting Light From Afar

德音维馨 De Yin Wei Xin. Virtuous Enunciation Alone is the Best Incense

澹会轩 Dan Hui Xuan. Pavilion of Meeting of Ripples

月波楼 Yue Bo Lou. Upper Chamber of Bright Moon-Light

云香阁 Yun Xiang Ge. Belvedere of Fragrant Clouds

涵虚堂 Han Xu Tang. Hall of Reaching to the Firmament

望蟾阁 Wang Chan Ge. Belvedere of Observing the Moon

黄鹤楼 Huang He Lou. Tower of the Yellow Crane

岚翠间 Lan Cui Jian. Amidst Green Mountain Mist

湖滨区域 Places along the Lake Shore

耶律楚材墓 Ye Lü Chu Cai Mu. Grave of Ye Lü Chu Cai

文昌阁 Wen Chang Ge. Belvedere of Wen Chang(God of Literature)

铜牛 Bronze Ox

廓如亭 Guo Ru Ting. Arbor of Unlimited Expanse

凤凰墩 Mound of Phoenix

皇甫墩 Mound of Huang Pu

草鉴堂 Cao Jian Tang. Hall of the Reflection of Aquatic Grass

畅观楼 Chang Guan Lou. Hall of Comprehensive View

治镜阁 Zhi Jing Ge. Belvedere of Fixing the Mirror

得沧州趣 Attaining the Attraction of Cangzhou

仰视俯察 To Look Up and to Gaze Down

湖滨各桥 Bridges on the Lake Shore

万字河 Wan Zi He. Swastika River

半壁桥 Ban Bi Qiao. Bridge of the Half Wall

界湖桥 Jie Hu Qiao. Bridge of Bordering on the Lake

豳风桥 Bin Feng Qiao. Bridge of the Custom of Bin

桑苎桥 Sang Zhu Qiao. Bridge of Mulberry and Mettle-hemp

玉带桥 Yu Dai Qiao. Bridge of the Jade Belt (Camel Hump)

穹桥 Qiong Qiao. Bridge of the Heavenly Canopy

绣绮桥 Xiu Qi Qiao. Bridge of Embroidered Ripples

镜桥 Jing Qiao. Bridge of Mirror

练桥 Lian Qiao. Bridge of Silk Cloth

柳桥 Liu Qiao. Willow Bridge

罗锅桥 Luo Guo Qiao. Humpbacked Bridge

长桥 Chang Qiao. Long Bridge

知鱼桥 Zhi Yu Qiao. Understanding Fish Bridge

万寿山 Wan Shou Shan. Longevity Hill

昆明湖 Kun Ming Hu. Kun Ming Lake

南湖岛 Nan Hu Dao. South Lake Island

龙王庙 Long Wang Miao. Dragon King Temple

圆明园 Old Summer Palace (The Garden of Perfect Brightness)

清漪园 Qing Yi Yuan. Garden of Limpid Ripples

畅春园 (参见 P54)

谐奇趣 Xie Qi Qu. Palace of the Delights of Harmony

蓄水楼 Xu Shui Lou. House for Collecting the Water; Water Pavilion Containing the Hydraulic Machine

海宴堂 Hai Yan Tang. Hall of the Calm Sea

远瀛观 Yuan Ying Guan. Palace of the Immense Ocean; Far Sea View

大水法 Da Shui Fa. The Great Jet D'eau; Waterworks

养雀笼 Yang Que Long. House for Feeding Birds; Aviary

方外观 Fang Wai Guan. The Square-Looking House

观水法 Guan Shi Fa. Looking at the Spring Waters

大泊湖 Da Bo Hu. Great Marshy Lake

承德避暑山庄 THE SUMMER RESORT OF CHENGDE

避暑山庄 Bi Shu Shan Zhuang. The Mountain Hamlet for the Escape from the Summer Heat

澹泊敬诚殿　Dan Bo Jing Cheng Dian.　Hall of Frugality and Calm

正宫　Zheng Gong.　The Main Palace

内午门　Nei Wu Men.　The Inner Meridian Gate

松鹤斋　Song He Zhai.　Pine and Crane Hall

热河泉　Re He Quan.　Warm River Spring

烟雨楼　Yan Yu Lou.　Hall of Mists and Rain

金山　Jin Shan.　Golden Mountain

上帝楼　Shang Di Lou.　Tower of God（Main Building of Jin Shan）

水心榭　Shui Xin Xie.　Pavilion in the Heart of the Water

环碧　Huan Bi.　Surrounded by Azure

采菱渡　Cai Ling Du.　Ford of Gathering Waternuts

外八庙　Wai Ba Miao.　Eight Outer Temples

普仁寺　Pu Ren Si.　Temple of Universal Sincerity

普陀宗乘庙　Pu Tuo Zong Cheng Miao.　Temple of the Potala

须弥福寿之庙　（参见 P364）

普宁寺　Pu Ning Si.　Temple of Universal Peace

殊贤寺　Shu Xian Si.　Temple of the Image of Manjust

普乐寺　Pu Le Si.　Temple of Universal Happiness

安远寺　An Yuan Si.　Temple of Distant Peace

旭光殿　Xu Guang Dian.　Dawn Light Hall

五　明清宫廷
THE IMPERIAL COURT OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

皇　宫
IMPERIAL PALACE

大内　the Great Within；the imperial palace

内廷　the inner court

外廷　the outer court

前朝后寝　the front for state affairs，the rear for imperial rest

金銮殿　the throne hall；the emperor's audience hall；the main hall of the imperial palace

宫禁　forbidden grounds where the emperor lived

宫闱　palace chamber

禁城　the Forbidden City

皇城　the imperial city

内城　the inner city

外城　the outer city

京城　the capital of the empire

盛京　Shengjing，the former Manchu capital（in today's Shenyang，Liaoning Province）

行宫　imperial palace for an emperor's short stays away from the capital

离宫　the imperial abode on tour；a temporary abode for an emperor on progresses

皇　室
IMPERIAL FAMILY

皇室成员　members of the imperial family

皇族（皇室）　imperial clan; imperial kinsmen; people of imperial lineage

皇统　imperial lineage

皇室家谱　the genealogical table of the imperial family

皇祖　imperial ancestors before the founder of the dynasty

高祖　the eminent founder

世祖　the epochal founder

皇高祖考　deceased imperial great-great-grandfather

皇曾祖考　deceased imperial great-grandfather

皇祖考　deceased imperial grandfather

皇祖妣　deceased imperial grandmother

皇考　deceased imperial father

皇妣　deceased imperial mother

太皇太上皇　grand super-emperor

太皇太后　grand empress dowager

太上皇　emperor emeritus; super-emperor

皇太后　empress dowager

皇贵太妃　imperial dowager consort of the first rank below the empress dowager

皇太妃　imperial dowager secondary-consort

皇伯（叔）　imperial uncle (an unofficial reference to an older or younger brother of a reigning emperor's father)

老祖宗　the venerable ancestor

老佛爷　the venerable Buddha

皇帝　emperor

天子　the Son of Heaven, a designation of the emperor

万岁爷　the emperor; the lord of a myriad of years

皇上　the emperor; the throne; the reigning sovereign; Your Majesty or His Majesty

陛下　Your Majesty; His or Her Majesty

在位皇帝　the reigning emperor

逊帝　the abdicated emperor

大行皇帝　the late emperor

嗣皇帝　heir apparent to the throne

皇太子（皇储）　crown prince; heir apparent; prince designat-

ed to the throne

东宫　the crown prince or his residence

爵位　noble status；title of nobility

亲王　imperial prince（a designation conferred on all sons of each reigning emperor other than the heir apparent，who was normally the eldest）

礼亲王　Ceremonious Prince

肃亲王　Majestic Prince

恭亲王　Reverential Prince

郡王　commandery prince（a rank of the nobility next to imperial prince）

王爷　address of prince，Your Imperial Highness；a nobleman

贝勒　Beile（a Manchu term，the 3rd rank of the nobility below the imperial prince and commandery prince；awarded only to Manchu and Mongols in direct imperial descent as sons other than heirs of commandery princes）

贝子　Beizi（a Manchu term，the 4th rank of the nobility）

公　duke

镇国公　Defender Duke

额驸（驸马）　husband of a princess；princess consort；husband of an emperor's daughter or sister；husband of a noblewoman of imperial descent

世子　heir，the formal designation of the eldest son by the principal wife of the imperial prince

郡王世子　heir of commandery prince

嫡子　legitimate son

皇嫡长孙　the eldest son of the heir apparent

皇太孙　imperial grandson-heir；imperial grandson successor

铁帽子王　Iron-Helmet Prince；Iron-Capped Prince

黄带子　（wearers of）yellow girdles：imperial clansmen（the official designation of all male descendants of the founding emperor）

皇亲国戚　relatives of the emperor

外戚　family relatives of the empress；relatives of rulers by marriage

国丈　the emperor's father-in-law

国舅 the emperor's maternal uncle or brother-in-law

爱新觉罗氏 Aixinjueluo (surname of Manchu imperial family meaning a golden race; of an early progenitor of the Manchu emperors)

后妃 the empress and maids of different ranks

皇后 empress

皇贵妃 imperial honored consort; imperial honorable concubine; highest-ranking imperial concubine

贵妃 honorable concubine; honored consort; imperial concubine of the 2nd rank

妃 imperial concubine; consort-in-ordinary; imperial concubine of the 3rd rank

嫔 a court lady; concubine; imperial concubine of the 4th rank

贵人 worthy lady; honorable person; imperial concubine of the 5th rank

常在 lady-in-waiting; categorical designation of one low-status group of palace women, ranking below worthy ladies

答应 responder; one of many titles designating palace woman; considered eligible for promotion into the ranks of consorts

嗣女 heiress apparent

女皇储 crown princess

皇女（公主） imperial princess

长公主 grand (or senior) princess

固伦公主 imperial princess of the first degree, noble designation of imperial daughters borne by the official empress

和硕公主 imperial princess, specifying one borne by a secondary wife or concubine rather than by the empress

储妃 wife of the heir apparent

福晋 dame-consort; princess consort (principal wife of an imperial prince or a commandery prince)

侧福晋 princely lady (secondary wife of an imperial prince or a commandery prince)

郡主 commandery princess

郡君 commandery mistress (granted to daughters of Beile and those of secondary wives or concubines of imperial princes)

格格　imperial clanswoman (general reference to any daughter of a male noble descended from a emperor through no more than six generations)

和硕格格　unofficial reference to a commandery princess

多罗格格　unofficial reference to a district princess or a commandery mistress

朝　政
COURT ADMINISTRATION

朝（朝代）　dynasty; a dynastic period; an emperor's reign

建朝　the founding of a dynasty

定鼎（定都）　to pick a city as the capital after uniting the empire; choose a site for the capital

政权更迭　regime change

改朝换代　dynastic changes

国朝　our dynasty (a common reference to the current reign dynasty)

帝制　autocratic monarchy; monarchy

皇天后土　the heaven and the earth

国号　dynasty title

帝号　title of the emperor

年号　reign title; year title

即位号为　to ascend the throne under a certain reign title

庙号　temple title

尊号　title of dignity

徽号　title of honor

谥号　posthumous title; name after death

称帝　proclaim oneself emperor

帝位、皇权　the imperial throne; the imperial power or authority

政权　regime; state power

执政　assume the reins of government

即位、登极　come to (ascend, mount) the throne; to enthrone

加冕典礼　coronation

即位诏书　rescript on occasion to the throne

在位　reign; be on the throne

退位诏书　document of abdication; the abdication edict

退位、逊位　to abdicate; to vacate the throne

辞位　to retire from the throne; lay down the sceptre

让位于　to abdicate the throne in favor of

传位于　to resign the throne to

继位、嗣位　to succeed to the throne

皇位继承人　heir to the throne

“正大光明”匾　a horizontal board inscribed with characters “Zheng Da Guang Ming” (upright, grand, light and shine, meaning the ruler should be open and just, shining on all things like a sun; upright and aboveboard)

建储匣　box for testament on succession to the Qing throne

立储　to designate as the crown prince; to appoint an heir

立储密旨　secret testament on succession to the throne; secret testament designating a successor to the throne

储位之争　to scramble for the position of crown prince

摄政　regency

共同摄政　co-regency

摄政者　regent

摄政王　the prince regent

女摄政王　the princess regent

皇父摄政王　imperial father regent

皇叔父摄政王　imperial uncle regent

皇太后临朝　empress dowager regent (empress dowager participating in court audience)

撤出摄政　resign regency

退出摄政　withdrawal from regency

放弃摄政　relinquish regency

重新摄政　reassume the regency

参议朝政　participant in deliberation about court policy

参预政事　participant in determining government matters

辅佐　assist a ruler in governing a country

四大臣辅政　the assistance of four ministers in governing the country

不理朝政　pay no attention to court administration

勤政亲贤　be diligent in state affairs and be close to the able and

worthy

御前　in the presence of the emperor

御前会议　a conference in which the emperor takes part

听政　(of a monarch or regent) hold court; to supervise administration; to administer affairs of state

御门听政　the emperor listened to briefings from the high officials at a gate of the imperial palace; the emperor used a gate as a place to listen to memorials and issue proclamations; a gate served as a place for the emperor to listen to administrative reports from the high officials

垂帘听政　taking charge of state affairs behind a screen; administer the government with a suspended curtain; lowering the screen and attending to state business; conceal oneself behind a screen to listen to state affairs; administer state affairs behind a bamboo screen

启帘归政　hand over to someone the reins of government; remove the screen and give back the reins of government to the emperor

训政　political tutelage; participation in political affairs by the abdicated emperor or the empress dowager

训政时期　the period of the political tutelage

亲政　the emperor assuming the reins of government in his own person; assume in person the imperial duties and prerogatives; take over the administration (or government) from a coming-of-age regent

亲政诏书　edict of an emperor on assuming the reins of government

皇帝复位　to be restored to the throne; the reinstatement of the emperor; to restore the emperor to the full exercise of his imperial authority

重新掌权　resume the powers

掌握大权　wield the sceptre

有实权的皇帝　the actual reigning emperor

无实权的皇帝　titular emperor; an emperor only in name

失去帝位　lose one's throne

废黜　to dethrone; dethronement

逼宫　to coup against the emperor

政变　coup d'etat

宫廷政变　palace coup

篡位　usurp the throne; seize the throne (sceptre)

戊戌变法　the Reform Movement of 1898

辛亥革命　the Revolution of 1911

丁巳复辟　the Restoration of 1917

逊清皇室　the abdicated Qing Imperial House

清室善后委员会　Commission for the Custody of the Property of the Qing Imperial House

清室优待条例　Articles of Favorable Treatment for the Qing Imperial House

遗老　the surviving adherent of a former dynasty

清代遗老　the surviving adherent of the Qing Dynasty

明裔　descendant of the Ming imperial house

典　制
COURT REGULATIONS

典章（典制）　traditional institutions; decrees and regulations

朝纲（朝章）　rules of the imperial court

宫廷制度　palace system

皇朝家法　dynastic house-law

皇朝惯例和祖制　dynastic usage and precedent

宫廷常规和习俗　the routine and conventions of the court

宫廷礼仪　court etiquette; ceremonies of the court; the etiquette of the imperial palace

朝仪　the proprieties for audience with the emperor; procedure at audiences

临朝　hold court audience

升殿（升座）　ascend the imperial throne

降座　descend from the throne

上朝　(of the emperor) hold court; (of the official) go to the imperial court; go to court duty

退朝　the audience breaks up; declare the audience over

早朝　a morning court held by the emperor; (of the emperor) at-

tend the imperial court session in the early morning

朝会 imperial assembly

朝班（朝列） the assemblage of courtiers at the imperial court

朝房 waiting-room

等候上朝 awaiting audiences

朝见（觐见） to be received in audience by the emperor; to have an audience with the emperor; to be presented at the imperial court

传唤朝见 summoned to audience

呈奏折求见 submit a memorial asking for an audience with the emperor

秘密觐见 secret interview

召见 to grant somebody an audience; to be admitted (or received) in audience

引见 to present a person to the emperor, or a high official, etc.

宣诏 have the imperial decree read publicly

受贺 the emperor received obeisance from his courtiers and attendants

叩头（叩拜） kowtow

朝拜 to prostrate oneself before the emperor; to pay ones respects to the emperor

三跪九叩礼 to kneel three times with the head touching the ground nine times; to make obeisance in the form of prostrating oneself before the emperor three times and kowtowing nine times; to perform the ceremony of the threefold kneeling and the ninefold prostration

三呼万岁 give three cheers of long life

叩谢 to kowtow in thanks; offer earnest thanks

谢恩 to offer thanks for the imperial bounty; rendering thanks for the imperial benevolence; to give formal thanks to the audiences

奏折制度 palace memorial system; routine system

奏疏（奏折） palace memorial

题本（题奏） routine memorial; special confidential memorial

密折 secret memorial

内折 capital memorial

外折　provincial memorial

正折　covering memorial

议复奏折　memorial of discussion and recommendation

奏片　grand council memoranda submitted to the emperor

条陈　memorial presenting opinions on a variety of topics

附件　enclosures

附（夹）片　supplementary memorials

谕（旨）　decree；edict

圣旨（诏）　imperial edict or decree

特谕　special edict or decree

御旨　imperial rescript

诏书　imperial decree or edict

诏令　a proclamation by the emperor；imperial decree or edict

谕告（谕示）　imperial instructions

内批　inner court instructions

批　rescript，written at the end of a memorial

旁　marginalia，written in the interstices

上谕　registry of imperial instructions

朱谕　vermilion edict or decree

圣训　imperial injunctions

朱圈　vermilion circles

朱点　vermilion dots

朱批　imperial rescript；the emperor's comments in vermilion ink

留中　retained in the emperor's private apartments

留览　retained for reading

御览　imperial glance；seen（or read）by the emperor

御批　comments made by the emperor

御札　instructions（or orders）issued by the emperor

御笔　imperial handwiting；imperial autograph；writings by the emperor

御制　made by the emperor or by imperial order；poems and writings authored by the emperor；vessels produced in the imperial kiln

钦定　approved by the emperor；endorsed or authorized by the emperor；（said of books，etc.）compiled and published by imperial orders；compiled or edited by the emperor's

order

钦命　imperial order; ordered by the emperor

钦点　designated by the emperor as members of the Imperial Academy

钦颁　awarded by the emperor

钦赐　granted or bestowed by the emperor; imperial gifts

钦此　an expression making the end of imperial orders; formula concluding edict; such are the imperial commands

临终遗诏　testamentary edict; a valedictory edict; instructions or decrees of a dying emperor

奉旨　instructions received

起居注　Imperial Diary

黄档　Imperial Genealogical Records

黄册　Yellow Books

黄绫本　Yellow Silk Edition

贴黄　Yellow Summary

红档　Vermilion Documents

红本　Originals; Red Books

红绫本　Red Silk Edition

满档　Manchu Archives

满本　Manchu Documents

宫中档　Palace Archives

月折档　Monthly Record Book of Palace Memorials

军机档　Grand Council Archives; Great Council Reference Collection

宫门抄　court gazette

揭贴　information copies

票拟　draft rescripts

军营文报　the military post packet

急件（急办）　urgent; a matter of great urgency

火票　transmission passes

廷寄　court dispatches

册封　to confer a title upon; to invest with rank; to confer titles of nobility on

册命　formal order, especially in conferring honor

册立皇后　to crown an empress; the coronation of an empress;

the creation of an empress

立……为后　elevated somebody to the dignity of empress

金宝　gold seal

金册　gold album or Imperial Letter Patent

玉册　jade album

诰　to grant；to confer；to bestow

诰封　the conferment of honorary titles by an imperial mandate；to bestow a title upon（the wife，living parents，or other relatives of an official）

诰封三代　to grant titles of honor for three generations

诰命　an emperor's order of conferment of titles；an imperial mandate

有封号的贵妇（命妇）　a mandated woman；a titled lady

诰授　to bestow titles upon officials

诰赠　to bestow titles upon officials posthumously

敕令　a decree from the throne

诰敕　a decree of conferment of titles upon officials above the fifth grade

诏敕　imperial rescript

封相　appoint prime minister

封侯　create feudal lords

封爵　confer a degree of nobility on someone

封拜　appoint someone to an office

封赠　grant posthumous honor

封荫　（参见 P104）

世袭　hereditary

世袭罔替　perpetual inheritance，a term referring to titles of nobility that were awarded without any limit to the number of generations through which they could be inherited

世袭……品　holding hereditary rank as

世袭号　hereditary title

无世袭爵位　non-hereditary status

赏赐　to reward；to bestow；to grant；to be bestowed（honor，gifts）by the emperor；bestowal of gifts；gifts or money given as a reward

赏紫禁城坐轿　to be granted the right to ride a sedan-chair within the Forbidden City

赏乘二人肩舆进宫　to be granted the right to enter the Forbidden City in a two-bearer chair

赏紫禁城骑马　to be granted the right to ride on horseback within the Forbidden City

下马碑（石）　a dismounting stele (or stone)

赐　bestow; confer; to bestow or confer upon; to grant (e. g. approval)

御赐　to be bestowed by the emperor

钦赐　to be granted or bestowed by the emperor (for meritorious service)

赐恩　to bestow favors

赐爵　to confer a title of nobility

赐宴　to be invited to dine with the emperor

赐谥　to have an honorary title conferred posthumously.

赐奠　(said of the emperor, especially in the Qing Dynasty) to personally offer condolences or to pay last tribute to the deceased

贬黜　to demote

贬谪　banish from the court; relegate

贬为庶民　be degraded to common status

大典　grand ceremony (the most solemn activity at the imperial court)

登极大典　grand ceremony of enthronement

庆典　celebration; a ceremony to celebrate

万寿节庆典　celebration of the Wanshou Festival (the Qing emperor's birthday)

千秋节庆典　celebration of Qianqiu Festival (the Qing empress' birthday)

圣寿节庆典　celebration of Shengshou Festival (the Qing empress dowager's birthday)

朝贺　court congratulations

祝寿　birthday celebration

寿宴　birthday banquet

寿礼　birthday gifts

大婚　imperial wedding; imperial nuptial; imperial bridal

议婚选后　selection of the bride

择吉日　select an auspicious day for the imperial wedding

备订婚宝、册、礼物　preparation of the betrothal document and gifts

纳彩礼　Na Cai Li, the betrothal presents; sending of the betrothal gifts

大征礼　Da Zheng Li, the marriage contract rites; rites of the Great Proof or Marriage Contract

册立皇后礼　coronate the bride to be the empress in her home with an envoy holding the imperial symbol

奉迎皇后礼　to escort the bride to the imperial palace

合卺礼　rite of the drinking of the nuptial cup; pledge the wedding cup

进合卺宴　partaking of the wedding feast

祀典　sacrificial rites

祭祀　to offer a sacrifice to; to worship

祭典　sacrificial services or ceremonies

大祀　the Great Sacrifices

祭天　to offer a sacrifice to Heaven; to worship Heaven; annual services of offering sacrifices to Heaven

祭圜丘　Heaven-worshiping ceremony

祭地　to offer a sacrifice to earth; annual services of offering sacrifices to earth

祭太庙　to offer a sacrifice to the imperial ancestors

祭社稷　to offer sacrifices to the Gods of Land and Grains

中祀　the Medium Sacrifices

祭先农　to offer a sacrifice to the patron god of Agriculture

祭先蚕　to offer a sacrifice to the patron god of Silk Weaving

祭历代帝王庙　to offer sacrifices to the Temple of Emperors through the Ages

群祀　the Small Sacrifices

祭火神　to offer a sacrifice to the God of Fire

祭城隍　to offer a sacrifice to the Guardian Spirit of the City

祭先医　to offer a sacrifice to the patron God of Medicine

祭……王祠　to offer sacrifices to the Temples to Great Man

祭祀供品　sacrificial offerings

奉安　the burial service of the emperor or empress; the last ceremony of sepulchre of the emperor or empress

礼制文物　cultural relics for ceremony and propriety

仪仗　imperial insignias

卤簿　Lubu, emperor's honor guard; escort carriage

卤簿仪仗　insignia carried before the emperor by the imperial guard of honor; protocol in imperial procession

大驾卤簿　Dajia Lubu used by the emperor for offering sacrifices to Heaven

法驾卤簿　Fajia Lubu used by the emperor for grand ceremony

銮驾卤簿　（参见 P303）

骑驾卤簿　Qijia Lubu used by the emperor for inspection tour to other parts of the country

仪驾　a honor guard used by the empress and empress dowager

仪仗　a honor guard used by the honorable concubine

彩仗　a honor guard used by the imperial concubine

辇（步辇）　imperial carriage; a hand-drawn carriage; imperial carriage pulled by attendants

轿（舆）　sedan chair; palanquin or palankeen borne on shoulders of four, six or sixteen bearers

凤舆　Phoenix sedan chair (the Feng is a mythical creature which is supposed to be queen of birds, and symbolizes happiness and good fortune)

大喜轿　the great bridal sedan chair

银顶黄缎轿　sedan chair covered with yellow satin and crowned by a silver knob

华盖　canop; richly-embroidered state-umbrella

直柄盖　straight handled canopy

提炉　portable censer

机　构
COURT SERVICES

内阁　（参见 P86）

内阁大库　Storage Room of the Grand Secretariat

军机处　（参见 P37）

奏事处　（参见 P87）

内奏事处　the Inner Chancery of Memorials to the Throne

议政处　（参见 P86）

批本处　（参见 P87）

奉上谕事件处　Office for Distribution of Imperial Pronouncement

内务府　（参见 P46）

宗人府　（参见 P88）

玉牒所　Unofficial Reference to the Court of the Imperial Clan

升平署　Bureau of Drama (Theater) of the Qing Court; Court Theatrical Office

奉宸院　Department of Imperial Gardens

五经萃室　Room of the Five Classics

御书房　Imperial Study

南书房　Southern Study

上书房　Schoolroom of the Imperial Princes

御书处　Imperial Library (the emperor's personal study and file room in the palace)

国史馆　State History Office

皇史宬　（参见 P360）

方略馆　Military Archives Office; Imperial Geographical Bureau

满档房　Manchu Archives

满本房　Manchu Documents Section (in the Grand Secretariat; in charge of translating Chinese documents into Manchu); Manchu Copying Office

黄档房　Imperial Genealogy Section (in the Court of the Imperial Clan); Genealogical Record Office

红本库　Red Memorial Vault

内国史院　Palace Historigraphic Academy

内秘书院　Palace Secretariat Academy

内弘文院　Palace Academy for the Advancement of Literature

起居注馆　（参见 P92）

掌仪司　Office of Palace Ceremonial

修内司　Department for Palace Maintenance

敬事房　Office for Administering Eunuchs
宫殿监　(参见 P90)
十二监　Twelve Directorates (collective reference to major units in which palace eunuchs were organized, each headed by eunuch director)
内官监　Directorate of Palace Eunuch
御用监　(参见 P90)
司设监　Directorate for Imperial Regalia
御马监　(参见 P89)
神宫监　Directorate for Imperial Temples
尚膳监　Directorate for Palace Delicacies
尚宝监　(参见 P90)
印绶监　Directorate for Credentials
直殿监　Directorate for Palace Maintenance
尚衣监　Directorate for Imperial Apparel
都知监　Directorate for Intimate Attendance
司礼监　Directorate of Ceremonial
造办处　Workshops of the Imperial Court; Palace Atelier; Imperial Palace Manufactory; Office of Manufacture
作钟处　Clock-Making Atelier
刻书处　Atelier for Block-Printing Books
修书处　Imperial Printing Office
作　Zuo or distinct workshop
牙作　Imperial Ivory Workshop
珐琅作　(参见 P268)
古董房　House for Antiques
四执库　House for Imperial Wardrobe
銮仪卫　(参见 P89)
銮驾内库　Imperial Carriage Storehouse
银库　Silver Vault
皮库　Hides Storehouse
缎库　Silk Storehouse
衣库　Clothing Storehouse
瓷库　Porcelain Storehouse
茶库　Tea Storehouse
御茶膳房　(参见 P89)

御膳房　Imperial Main Kitchen
饽饽房　Imperial Bakery
御茶房　Imperial Tea Kitchen
御药房　（参见 P90）
寿药房　pharmacy served for the empress and imperial concubines
吉安所　a ceremonial building belonging to the imperial family
宗庙　Ancestral Temple
佛堂　（参见 P336）
神房　Shamanism office

朝臣及其他人员
COURTIERS AND OTHER PERSONNEL

臣（大臣向皇帝自称）　Your Majesty's Servant
朝臣　courtier
大臣　great vassal; grand minister
重臣　high official
功臣　meritorious official
宠臣　favorite official
顾命大臣（辅佐大臣）　assistant minister
中堂　Zhong Tang, the usual designation of grand councillor
军机大臣　grand councillor; grand minister of state
军机行走　probationary grand minister of state
军机章京　secretary in the Council of State (civil); adjutant in the Council of State (military)
宫廷大臣　chamberlain (of the Household)
内侍　court-chamberlain
内大臣　grand minister of the Imperial Household Department
总管内务府大臣　（参见 P88）
御前大臣　（参见 P87）
御前侍卫　palace guardsmen; imperial guard in waiting
御前行走　（参见 P87）
御前太监　eunuch of the presence
随朝伴官　escort for court audience
领侍卫内大臣　grand minister of the palace commanding the im-

perial bodyguard

三公　the Three Dukes

太师　the Grand Preceptor

太傅　the Grand Mentor

太保　the Grand Guardian

三孤　the Three Solitaries

少师　the Junior Preceptor

少傅　the Junior Mentor

少保　the Junior Guardian

太子太保　Grand Guardian of the heir-apparent

太子少保　Junior Guardian of the heir-apparent

帝师　imperial tutor

太傅　grand tutor

伴读　fellow-student；companion-reader

侍读　reader-in-waiting

侍读学士　academic reader-in-waiting

典籍　archivist

总管　supervisors-in-chief

八旗总管大臣　（参见 P95）

议政五大臣　（参见 P86）

理事十大臣　the ten grand ministers administering affairs

议政处王大臣　princes and grand ministers of the Deliberative Council

钦差大臣　imperial envoy；imperial commissioner

宗人令　director of the court of the imperial clan

宗人府府丞　vice director of the imperial clan court

宗人　assistant director of the court of the imperial clan

宗伯　chief minister of the court of imperial sacrifices

起居注官　a court official in charge of recording the emperor's daily activities and pronoucements

奏事官　（参见 P87）

内廷供奉　palace attendant（supplier）

内廷待诏　palace editorial assistant

内监管理　eunuch manager

宫廷太监　court eunuch

御前太监　eunuch of the presence who had the honor of serving

the emperor himself

敬事房总管太监　eunuch supervisor-in-chief

敬事房首领太监　eunuch commission-in-chief

各宫殿总管太监　chief eunuch

各宫殿首领太监　head eunuch

南书房行走　the official serving in the Southern Study

内廷行走　a part-time official serving in the inner court; official in attendance in the inner court

奴才　slave; Your Majesty's slave

包衣　bondservant

皇包衣　imperial bondservant

王包衣　bondservant of princes

包衣昂邦　commandant of bondservants

包衣参领　regimental commander of bondservants

包衣佐领　company commander of bondservants

宫娥（宫女）　female court attendant; maid servant; a maid in the imperial palace; maid of honor

嫔御　female retinue at court

秀女　a young girl for the emperor's harem; selected beauty for the imperial harem

选秀女　to select beautiful girls for the imperial harem

选侍　to select girls as maids in the imperial palace

女官　palace woman

命妇　lady of rank; wife of the courtier; a lady who was given a title or rank by the emperor

在明清宫廷供职的外国人士
FOREIGNERS WHO SERVED IN THE IMPERIAL COURT OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

庞迪我（字顺阳，今译雅克·德·潘托哈）　Jacques de Pantoja (1571 – 1618), Spanish Jesuit, came to China in 1601, appointed to revise the calendar in 1611 by the Ming government

毕方济（字今梁，今译弗朗索瓦·桑比亚西）　Francois Sambiasi (1582 – 1649), Italian Jesuit, came to Beijing in

1613, once assisted the study of the astronomical calendar

邓玉函（字涵璞，今译扬·特伦茨） Jean Terrenz (1576 - 1630), German Jesuit, came to China in 1621, then summoned to Beijing to be in charge of revising the calendar

汤若望（字道未，今译让·亚当·沙尔·冯·贝尔） Johann Adam Schall von Bell (1591 - 1666), German Jesuit, came to China in 1622, had a good command of astronomy, enjoyed the trust of the Ming emperor Chongzhen; in collaboration with Italian Jesuit Jacoques Rho, he wrote and completed the book "Chongzhen Calendar"

罗雅各（字味诏，今译亚克·罗） Jacques Rho (1590 - 1638); Italian Jesuit, came to China in 1622; he first did missionary work in Shanxi Province, then was called to Beijing to assist Johann Adam Schall von Bell in compiling the "Chongzhen Calendar"

南怀仁（字敦白，今译费迪南·韦比埃） Ferdinand Verbiest (1623 - 1688), Belgian Jesuit, came to Macao in 1658, arrived in Beijing in 1660 at the invitation of the Qing emperor Shunzhi; received instructions from Emperor Kangxi to be the director of the Directorate of Astronomy in 1669; Kangxi once studied geometry, astronomy and the calendar system with him

闵明我（字德先，今译菲利普·玛丽·格里马尔迪） Philippe Marie Grimaldi (1639 - 1712), Italian Jesuit, came to Macao in 1669, then arrived in Beijing in 1671 on the call of Emperor Kangxi; appointed to take over the Directorate of Astronomy from Ferdinand Verbiest

徐日升（字寅公，今译托玛斯·佩雷拉） Thomas Pereira (1645 - 1708), Portuguese Jesuit, came to China in 1672; once was Kangxi's teacher of music and held the post of Director of the Directorate of Astronomy in the Qing court of Emperor Kangxi's reign

白晋（字明远，今译若阿基姆·布韦） Joachim Bouvet (1656 - 1730), French Jesuit, sent to China in 1685 by

King Louis XIV; served as the emperor Kangxi's teacher of mathematics, together with French Jesuit Jean Francois Gerbillon

张诚（字实斋，今译让·弗朗索瓦·热比隆） Jean Francois Gerbillon (1654 – 1707), French Jesuit, came to China in 1687; when China and Russia signed the Nerchinsk Treaty in 1689, he and Thomas Pereira were appointed as interpreters for Chinese delegates

雷孝思（字永维，今译让·巴蒂斯特·雷吉斯） Jean Baptiste Régis (1663 – 1738), French Jesuit, came to China in 1698; drew the map of China in 1708, together with Jesuits Joachim Bouvet and Perlus Pierre Jartoux, on the order of Emperor Kangxi

冯秉正（字端友，今译约瑟夫·弗朗索瓦·玛丽·安娜·德·穆瓦里亚克·德梅拉） Joseph Francois Mario Anne de Moyriac de Mailla (1669 – 1748), French Jesuit, came to China in 1702; gave assistance to J. B. Regis and others in surveying and drawing the provincial maps of China, winning praise from Emperor Kangxi

马国贤（今译马泰奥·里帕） Matheo Ripa (1682 – 1745), Italian priest, came to China in 1710, a court painter in Emperor Kangxi's reign

郎世宁（字若瑟，今译朱塞佩·卡斯蒂廖内） Giuseppe Castiglione (1688 – 1766), Italian Jesuit, came to China in 1715; served as a court painter under the reins of Emperors Kangxi, Yongzheng and Qianlong; once given the rank of the third official grade; was celebrated for his horse-painting.

戴进贤（字嘉宾，今译伊格纳什·克格勒） Ignace Kögler (1680 – 1746), German Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1717, in charge of the Directorate of Astronomy for 29 years; appointed in 1731 by Emperor Yongzheng to be the vice-director of the Board of Rites

刘松龄（字乔年，今译奥古斯廷·德·哈勒施泰因） Augustin de Hallerstein (1703 – 1774), Austrian Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1735; in office in the Directorate of Astronomy

for 30 years, enjoying the trust of Emperor Qianlong

王致诚（今译让·德尼·阿蒂雷） Jean Denis Attiret (1702 – 1768), French Jesuit, came to China in 1738; served in the Qing court as a painter and participated in the design and construction of the Western Building in Yuan Ming Yuan, being in Emperor Qianlong's graces

傅作霖（今译费利克斯·达·罗查） Felix da Rocha (1713 – 1781), Portuguese Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1738; served in the Directorate of Astronomy for 28 years, being appointed to the position of vice-director and director successively

汤执中（字精一，今译皮埃尔·德·安卡维尔） Pierre de Incarville (1706 – 1757), French Jesuit, came to China in 1740; selected in 1753 to be in charge of horticulture in the Qing court

蒋友仁（号德翊，今译米歇尔·伯努瓦） Michel Benoit (1715 – 1774), French Jesuit, came to China in 1744; once took part in the design of some buildings of Yuan Ming Yuan

艾启蒙（字醒安，今译伊格内修斯·西克尔塔特） Ignatius Sickeltart (1708 – 1780), came to China in 1745 from Bohemia (belongs to the Czech now), served the Qing court as a painter; drew many large-sized paintings of actual events together with Jesuits Giuseppe Castiglione and Jean Denis Attiret; given a handsome reward from the emperor on his 70th birthday

钱德明（字若瑟，今译让·约瑟夫·玛丽·阿米奥） Jean Joseph Marie Amiot (1718 – 1793), French Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1751, was well versed in Manchu and Chinese languages, so she enjoyed the trust of Emperor Qianlong

潘廷章（今译约瑟夫·潘奇） Joseph Panzi (? -1812), Italian missionary, came to China in 1771, served in the Qing court as a painter; once drew some portraits of Emperor Qianlong

贺清泰（今译路易斯·德·普瓦洛） Louis de Poirot (1735

–1814), French, later went to Italy, came to China in 1770, served as a painter in the Imperial Court.

罗广祥（今译尼古拉·约瑟夫·罗） Nicolas Joseph Raux (1754 – 1801), French Lazarist, arrived in Beijing in 1785, served the Qing court as a translator; sent to be the first French man in charge of the Directorate of Astronomy

巴茂正（今译夏尔·帕里斯） Charles Paris (1738 – 1804), French Lazarist, came to Beijing in 1785, served in the Imperial Household Department of the Qing court as a watch-and-clock repairer

柯姑娘（卡尔小姐）（今译凯瑟琳·奥古斯塔·卡尔） Katherine Augusta Carl (1858 – 1938), American painter, came to China in 1903; drew a portrait of Empress Dowager Cixi; wrote a book "With the Empress Dowager of China"

庄士敦（今译雷金纳德·弗莱明·约翰斯顿） Sir Reginald Fleming Johnston (1874 –1938), successively held the posts of official of Hong Kong government and of the senior officer of Weihaiwei government office; was invited in 1918 to act as a teacher of English for Emperor Puyi of the Qing Dynasty; wrote a book entitled "Twilight in the Forbidden City"

六　明清职官
OFFICIAL TITLES OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

辅佐皇帝的中枢机构
THE CENTRAL ADMINISTRATIONS FOR ASSISTING THE EMPEROR IN GOVERNING THE COUNTRY

议政处　Yi Zheng Chu. The Deliberative Council; Deliberative Council on Government

议政王　Prince of the Deliberative Council

议政五大臣　Five Grand Ministers of the Deliberative Council

内阁　Nei Ge. The Grand Secretariat

内阁大学士　Grand Secretary of the Grand Secretariat

内阁协办大学士　Assistant Grand Secretary of the Grand Secretariat

内阁学士　Academician (Chancellor) of the Grand Secretariat

内阁侍读　Grand Secretariat Reader-in-waiting; Assistant Reader-in-waiting in the Grand Secretariat

内阁侍读学士　Grand Secretariat Academician Reader-in-waiting; Reader in the Grand Secretariat

内阁中书　Secretaries in the Grand Secretariat

内阁典籍　Certification Clerk in the Grand Secretariat

内阁总理大臣　Grand Minister of the Grand Secretariat

军机处　(参见 P37)

军机大臣（大军机、枢臣）　Grand Minister of State; Grand Councillor

军机章京（小军机、枢曹）　Assistant Grand Councillor; Sec-

retary in the Grand Council of State

军机行走 （参见 P79）

内翻书房 Nei Fan Shu Fang. Sino-Manchu Translation Office; Manchu-Chinese Translation Office; Inner House for Translation

方略馆 Fang Lue Guan. Military Archives Office; Military Archives

通政使司 Tong Zheng Shi Si. Office of Transmission; Transmission Office

通政使 Commissioner in the Transmission Office

通政副使 Vice（Deputy）Commissioner in the Transmission Office

通政参议 Assistant Commissioner in the Transmission Office

通政给事中 Supervising Secretary in the Transmission Office

通政知事 Archivist in the Transmission Office

通政经历 Sub-Archivist in the Transmission Office

奏事处 Zou Shi Chu. Office for Provincial Memorials; Chancery of Memorials（to the Emperor）

御前大臣 Grand Minister in Attendance; Imperial Vassal of the Presence

御前行走 Imperial Attendant

御前侍卫 （参见 P79）

奏事官 Memorial Processors; Chancellors of Memorials（to the Emperor）

批本处 Pi Ben Chu. Endorsement-Copy Office

稽察钦奉上谕事件处 Ji Cha Qin Feng Shang Yu Shi Jian Chu. Office for Distribution of Imperial Pronouncements; Office for Supervising the Affairs Received from His Majesty; Chancery for the Publication of Imperial Edicts

稽察员 Inspector

中书科 Zhong Shu Ke. Central Drafting Office; Imperial Patent Office

中书科中书 Secretary of the Central Drafting Office

中书舍人 Secretariat Drafter

掌管皇族和宫廷事务的机构
THE BODIES IN CHARGE OF AFFAIRS OF THE IMPERIAL FAMILY AND IMPERIAL PALACE

宗人府　Zong Ren Fu. The Imperial Clan Court; Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人令（正卿）　Director of the Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人（正丞）　Assistant Director of the Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人府理事官　Administrator of the Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人府主事　Secretary of the Court of the Imperial Clan

詹事府　Zhan Shi Fu. Household Administration of the Heir Apparent; Imperial Supervisorate of Instruction

詹事　Chief Supervisor of Instruction

少詹事　Head of the Household Administration of the Heir Apparent; Supervisor of the Household; Supervisor of Instruction

左春坊庶子　Left (Senior) Mentor of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

右春坊庶子　Right (Junior) Mentor of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

左春坊中允　Left (Senior) Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

右春坊中允　Right (Junior) Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

左春坊赞善　Left (Senior) Assistant Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

右春坊赞善　Right (Junior) Assistant Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

司经局洗马　Librarian of the Editorial Service of the Heir Apparent

内务府　（参见 P46）

总管内务府大臣　Grand Minister Supervisor of the Imperial Household Department

武备院　Wu Bei Yuan. Court of Imperial Armaments; Office of

the Armaments and Military Provisions

武备院卿 Chief Minister of the Court of Imperial Armaments

武备院郎中 Director of the Court of Imperial Armaments

武备院员外郎 Vice Director of the Court of Imperial Armaments

武备院笔帖式 Clerk of the Court of Imperial Armaments

奉宸苑 Feng Chen Yuan. Imperial Parks Administration; Department of the Imperial Gardens; Bureau of Imperial Gardens and Hunting Parks

上林苑 Imperial Forest Park

上驷院 Shang Si Yuan. Palace Stud; Imperial Stud

御马监 Directorate of the Imperial Horses

广储司 Guang Chu Si. Storage Office; Department of the Privy Purse

会计司 Kuai Ji Si. Office of Palace Accounts

掌仪司 Zhang Yi Si. Office of Palace Ceremonial

都虞司 Du Yu Si. Office of the Imperial Hunt

慎刑司 Shen Xing Si. Office of Palace Justice

营造司 Ying Zao Si. Office of Palace Construction

庆丰司 Qing Feng Si. Office of Imperial Pasturages

戈戟司 Ge Ji Si. Spears Office

升平署（南府） Sheng Ping Shu. Court Theatrical Office; Bureau of Drama

御茶膳房 Yu Cha Shan Fang. Palace Larder; Imperial Tea-and-Dining Office; Imperial Buttery

尚膳 Meal Servers

尚茶 Tea Servers

礼仪监 Li Yi Jian. Directorate of Ceremonial Propriety

养心殿造办处 Yang Xin Dian Zao Ban Chu. Workshops of the Hall of Mental Cultivation

銮仪卫 Luan Yi Wei. Imperial Procession Guard; Department of Imperial Chariots and Processional Regalia; Imperial Equipage Department

掌卫事大臣 Grand Minister in Command of the Guard

銮仪使 Commissioner of the Imperial Procession Guard

銮舆司 Luan Yu Si. Carriage Office

驯马司 Xun Ma Si. Horse-training Office

锦衣卫　Jin Yi Wei. Imperial Bodyguard

旗手卫　Qi Shou Wei. Standard-Bearer Guard

侍卫处　Shi Wei Chu. Department of Imperial Bodyguard

侍卫　Imperial Guard; Imperial Guardsman

领侍卫府　Ling Shi Wei Fu. Headquarters of the Imperial Bodyguard

领侍卫内大臣　Grand Minister of the Imperial Household Department concurrently controlling the Imperial Guardsmen

后扈大臣　Grand Minister of the Rear Watch

侍卫班领　Imperial Guard Duty Group Commander

蓝翎侍卫　Junior Guardsman (wearing blue feathers)

蓝翎总承　Junior Guardsman-gamekeeper

尚虞备用处　Shang Yu Bei Yong Chu. Department for Emperor's Fishing and Hunting

虎枪营　Hu Qiang Ying. Tiger-hunting Brigade; Imperial Guard Corps against Tigers and Leopards

虎枪长　Chief Tiger Hunter

善扑营　Shan Pu Ying. The Corps of Horsemanship, Archery and Wrestle

宫殿监　Gong Dian Jian. Directorate of Palace Domestic Service; A Eunuch Agency

总管太监　Eunuch Supervisors-in-Chief

首领太监　Eunuch Director

督领侍　Supervising Attendant (Eunuch Head)

御药房　Yu Yao Fang. Imperial Dispensary

御书处　(参见 P77)

御用监　Yu Yong Jian. Directorate for Imperial Accouterments

尚宝监　Shang Bao Jian. Directorate of Palace Seals

承理国政的行政机构
THE ADMINISTRATIVE BODIES TAKING FULL CHARGE OF STATE AFFAIRS

吏部　Li Bu. Ministry of Personnel; Board of Civil Officials

俸饷处　Feng Xiang Chu. Office for Issue of Salaries and Supplies

户部　Hu Bu. Ministry (Board) of Revenue

礼部　Li Bu. Ministry (Board) of Rites (Ceremonies)
工部　Gong Bu. Ministry (Board) of Works
宝源局　Bao Yuan Ju. Metropolitan Coinage Service; Coinage Office
六部尚书　President in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
六部左侍郎　Senior Vice-President in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
六部右侍郎　Junior Vice-President in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
部院郎中　Department Director in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
部院员外郎　Assistant Department Director in any of the Six Boards (or Ministries)
部院主事　Secretary in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
部院笔贴式　Clerk in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
太常寺　Tai Chang Si. Court of Sacrificial Worship; Court of Imperial Sacrifices
太常寺卿　Director of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
太常寺少卿　Sub-Director of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices; Assistant of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
太常寺寺丞　Secretary of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
太常寺博士　Learned Doctor of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
光禄寺　Guang Lu Si. Court of Imperial Entertainments; Imperial Banqueting Court
光禄寺卿　Director of the Imperial Banqueting Court
光禄寺少卿　Sub-Director of the Imperial Banqueting Court
鸿胪寺　Hong Lu Si. Court of State Ceremonial
鸿胪寺卿　Director of the Court of State Ceremonial
鸿胪寺少卿　Sub-Director of the Court of State Ceremonial
行人寺　Xing Ren Si. Office in Charge of Traveling Envoys
行人寺行人　Secretary of the Office in Charge of Traveling Envoys
国子监　Guo Zi Jian. Imperial Academy of Learning; Imperial College; Directorate of Education; Hall of Classics
国子监监事　Chief Proctor in the Imperial Academy of Learning
国子监祭酒　Libationer in the Imperial Academy of Learning
国子监司业　Tutor in the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监博士　Learned Doctor of the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监助教　Assistant Teacher of the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监学正　Director of Studies of the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监学录　Sub-Registrar of the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监典簿　Archivist in the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监典籍　Sub-Archivist in the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监监生（太学生）　Student of the Imperial Academy of Learning

国子监贡生　Tribute Student to the Imperial Academy of Learning

钦天监　Qin Tian Jian. Directorate (Bureau) of Astronomy; Imperial Board of Astronomy

钦天监监丞　Director of the Directorate of Astronomy

翰林院　Han Lin Yuan. Hanlin Academy; National Academy

翰林学士　Hanlin Academician

翰林院掌院学士　Chancellor of the Hanlin Academy

翰林院侍读学士　Reader in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院侍讲学士　Expositor in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院侍读　Sub-reader in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院侍讲　Sub-expositor in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院修撰　First-class Hanlin Compiler

翰林院编修　Second-class Hanlin Compiler

翰林院检讨　Corrector in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院典簿　Senior Archivist in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院孔目　Junior Archivist in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院待诏　Compiling Assistant in the Hanlin Academy

翰林院庶常馆　Han Lin Yuan Shu Chang Guan. Institute of Advanced Study in the Hanlin Academy; Department for Shu Chang Ji Shi with high grades

庶常吉士　Hanlin Bachelor

起居注馆　Qi Ju Zhu Guan. Imperial Diary Office (a subsection of the Hanlin Academy)

起居注　（参见 P72）

起居注官　Official in charge of the emperor's activities

国史馆　Guo Shi Guan. Historiography Institute; Department

(Office) of Dynastic History

太医院　Tai Yi Yuan. Imperial Academy of Medicine; Imperial Medical Department

太医　Palace (Imperial) Physician

太医院吏目　Medical Secretary of the Imperial Academy of Medicine

太医院院使　Commissioner of the Imperial Academy of Medicine

太医院院判　Vice Commissioner of the Imperial Academy of Medicine

理藩院　Li Fan Yuan. Court of Colonial Affairs

理刑司　Li Xing Si. Judicial Bureau

柔远司　Rou Yuan Si. Outer Mongolian Reception Bureau

徕远司　Lai Yuan Si. Eastern Turkestan Bureau

俸档房　Feng Dang Fang. Stipends Office

司法监察机构
JUDICIAL AND SUPERVISORY BODIES

刑部　Xing Bu. Board (Bureau, Ministry) of Justice

大理寺　Da Li Si. Court of Judicial Review; Court of Judicature and Revision; Grand Court of Revision

大理寺卿　Director of the Court of Judicial Review

大理寺少卿　Sub-Director of the Court of Judicial Review

大理寺左（右）寺丞　Senior (Junior) Secretary in the Court of Judicial Review

大理寺左（右）评事　Senior (Junior) Assistant of the Court of Judicial Review

都察院　Du Cha Yuan. Court of Censors; Chief Surveillance Office; Censorate

都察院左都御史　Chief Censor; Censor-in-Chief

都察院左副都御史　Deputy Chief Censor; Vice (Deputy) Censor-in-Chief

都察院监察都御史　Chief Investigating Censor; Circuit Censor

都察院监察御史　Investigating Censor

六科掌印给事中　Senior Supervising Secretary in one of the Six Sections of the Office for Scrutiny of Metropolitan Officials

六科给事中　Supervising Secretary in one of the Six Sections of

the Office for Scrutiny of Metropolitan Officials

御史台　Yu Shi Tai. Censorate; Censorial Agency

御史大夫　Chief Censor; Censor-in-chief

御史中丞　Deputy Censor-in-chief

侍御史　Palace Censor

都御史　Chief Censor in the Capital

监御史　Surveillance Censor

律例馆　Codification Office

军事机构
MILITARY APPARATUS

兵部　Bing Bu. Ministry (Board) of War

尚书　Minister

侍郎　Vice Minister

司务厅　Si Wu Ting. General Service Office

司务　Office Manager

车驾司　Che Jia Si. Bureau of Communications

职方司　Zhi Fang Si. Bureau of Operations

武选司　Wu Xuan Si. Bureau of Military Appointments

武库司　Wu Ku Si. Bureau of Provisions

武库司郎中　Director of the Bureau of Provisions

武库司员外郎　Vice-Director of the Bureau of Provisions

旗　Qi. Banner (the core of hereditary soldiers in the imperial Qing military organization)

八旗　Eight Banners, collective reference to the system of social-political-military organization of the Manchu people, gradually extended to include eight Mongol and Chinese Banners, making a total of 24 tribe-like Banners of hereditary troops garrisoned along the frontiers and at strategic places throughout the country.

八旗制　The Eight-Banner System of Manchu Military Structure; Eight-Banner Organization

上三旗　Three Imperial (Superior) Banners

正黄旗　Plain Yellow Banner

镶黄旗　Bordered Yellow Banner

正白旗　Plain White Banner
下五旗　Five Common (Lesser) Banners
正红旗　Plain Red Banner
镶红旗　Bordered Red Banner
镶白旗　Bordered White Banner
正蓝旗　Plain Blue Banner
镶蓝旗　Bordered Blue Banner
三旗包衣统领　Commander-general of the Bondservants of the Three Banners
三旗侍卫　Imperial Guardsmen of the Three Banners
三旗宗室侍卫　Imperial Clansmen of the Three Banners
八旗总管大臣　Grand Ministers Commanding the Eight Banners
八旗公　Duke of the Eight Banners
京旗　Metropolitan Bannermen
驻防　Provincial Bannermen; Banners stationed throughout the empire
绿营　Lü Ying. Green Standards; Green Standard Forces
前锋营　Qian Feng Ying. Vanguard Brigade; Imperial Guards Encampment
内前锋营　Nei Qian Feng Ying. Palace Vanguard Brigade
护军营　Hu Jun Ying. Guards Brigade (Division); Forbidden City Garrison
火器营（神机营）　Huo Qi Ying. Firearms Brigade; Artillery and Musketry Division
健锐营　Jian Rui Ying. Scouting Brigade
骁骑营　Xiao Qi Ying. Cavalry Brigade
都统　Commander-in-chief; Lieutenant-general
副都统　Vice Commander-in-Chief
参领　Regimental Commander
佐领　Assistant Commander
总兵　Regional Commander; Brigade General
统领　Commander-General
副将　Regional Vice Commander

地方行政机构
PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATIONS

省　Sheng. Province

总督　Governor-General

提督　Provincial Military Commander

巡抚　Grand Coordinator (Ming Dynasty); Governor (Qing Dynasty)

提督军务　Military Superintendent

提督学政　Provincial Education Commissioner

提督学道　Education Intendant Circuit

提督学使者　Education-Supervising Commissioner

督抚　Civil and Military Governors

巡按　Provincial Censor

布政使司　Bu Zheng Shi Si. Provincial Administration Commission

布政使　Provincial Administration Commissioner; Lieutenant Governor; Commissioner of Finance

参政　Administration Vice Commissioner

参议　Assistant Administration Commissioner

布政使经历　Secretary in the Lieutenant Governor's Office

按察使司　An Cha Shi Si. Surveillance Commission

按察使　Surveillance Commissioner; Commissioner of Justice

按察使经历　Secretary in the Office of Surveillance Commissioner

提刑按察使　Judicial Commissioner

按察副使　Surveillance Vice Commissioner

按察佥使　Assistant Surveillance Commissioner

都指挥使司　Du Zhi Hui Shi Si. Regional Military Commission

都指挥使　Regional Military Commissioner

道　Dao. Circuit; administrative district

道台（巡道）　Circuit Intendant; Magistrate of Dao

府　Fu Prefecture

知府、府尹　Prefect

府丞　Vice-Prefect

同知　First-class Sub-Prefect

厅　Ting. Subprefecture

同知　Subprefectural Magistrate; Vice Magistrate

通判　Second-class Sub-Prefect

府经历　Prefectural Secretary

州　Zhou. Subprefecture (Ming Dynasty); Department (Qing Dynasty)

知州　Department Magistrate

州同　First-class Assistant Department Magistrate; Department Vice Magistrate

州判　Second-class Assistant Department Magistrate

县　Xian. District

知县（县令）　District Magistrate

县丞　Assistant District Magistrate

府儒学教授　Prefectural Director of Studies

州儒学学正　Departmental Director of Studies

县儒学教谕　District Director of Studies

州（县）训导　Department (or District) Sub-director of Studies

县主簿　District Registrar

盐运使　Salt Controller

运同　Assistant Salt Controller

粮道　Grain Intendant

漕运总督　（参见 P105）

漕运使　Transport Commissioner

河道总督　Director-General of the Grand Canal

官　阶
OFFICIAL RANKS

等级制　a system of gradations

品　rank

等（级）　grade; class; degree

正　upper

从　lower

官　officials with rank status

吏　unranked subofficials; lesser functionaries

九品等级制　The System of Nine Ranks; Nine Ranks System

上上　upper-upper

上中　upper-middle

上下　upper-lower

中上　middle-upper

中中　middle-middle

中下　middle-lower

下上　lower-upper
下中　lower-middle
下下　lower-lower
正一品　1A（rank 1，upper class）
从一品　1B（rank 1，lower class）
正二品　2A（rank 2，upper class）
从二品　2B（rank 2，lower class）
正三品　3A（rank 3，upper class）
从三品　3B（rank 3，lower class）
正四品　4A（rank 4，upper class）
从四品　4B（rank 4，lower class）
正五品　5A（rank 5，upper class）
从五品　5B（rank 5，lower class）
正六品　6A（rank 6，upper class）
从六品　6B（rank 6，lower class）
正七品　7A（rank 7，upper class）
从七品　7B（rank 7，lower class）
正八品　8A（rank 8，upper class）
从八品　8B（rank 8，lower class）
正九品　9A（rank 9，upper class）
从九品　9B（rank 9，lower class）
一至九品文武官员　Civil（military）official of the（first，second，through ninth）grade
当朝一品　the highest court official
品级山　a Rank marker（as follows）：

△
△ △
△ △ △
△ △ △ △
△ △ △ △ △
△ △ △ △ △ △
△ △ △ △ △ △ △
△ △ △ △ △ △ △ △
△ △ △ △ △ △ △ △ △

顶戴（顶子）　Rank button，an insignia of rank worn atop an official's headgear，ranking from a ruby（rank 1）down to a silver-plated button（rank 9）
未入流　outside the current；not get official status

头品顶戴 The highest of nine official grades; Button of the First Rank

花翎顶戴 Ruby and coral buttons and peacock feathers on official's hat

科举制度
IMPERIAL EXAMINATION SYSTEM

科举 examinations for master's and doctor's degree; recruitment by examination

童试（州试） Tong Shi, Zhou Shi. Prefectural Examination (held at prefectures for the first or master's degree of Xiucai秀才, or Cultivated Talent)

乡试（省试） Xiang Shi, Sheng Shi. Provincial Examination; Triennial Examination (held at the provincial capitals for the second or master's degree of Juren 举人, or Provincial Graduates, who were eligible for minor appointments or for participation in subsequent Metropolitan Examination at the dynastic capital)

会试（京试） Hui Shi, Jing Shi. Metropolitan Examination; Unified (Joint) Examination (held in the capital of Beijing for the third or master's degree of Jinshi 进士, or Metropolitan Graduates, normally followed by a confirmatory Palace Examination presided over by the Emperor or his surrogate)

殿试（廷试） Dian Shi, Ting Shi. Palace Examination; Imperial Examination (the final stage in any sequence of civil service recruitment examinations, normally a one-day examination that confirmed and listed in order of excellence all passers of the metropolitan examination)

科甲 Examination Graduates (refers to Provincial Graduate 举人 and Metropolitan Graduate 进士 in the civil service recruitment examination sequence)

科甲出身 Official by Examination (signifies that one had entered the civil service with status as either a Provincial Graduate 举人 or a Metropolitan Graduate 进士)

阅卷大臣 Grand Minister Examiner

登第 success in examination of graduates for the Hanlin Academy

及第 to obtain a degree

特赐第 specially granted degree

下第 failure to obtain a degree

秀才 Xiu Cai. Cultivated Talent (the lowest or first degree conferred upon successful candidates who were qualified to participate in Provincial Examinations in the civil service recruitment examination sequence)

生员（儒学） Sheng Yuan, Ru Xue. Government Student (another name for Xiucai)

解元 Jie Yuan. Provincial Graduate with Highest Honors (the top candidate of the civil service examination held on the provincial level)

贡士 Gong Shi. Successful Candidates of Metropolitan Examination

会元 Hui Yuan. Principal Graduate (the man whose name stood first on the pass list issued after a Metropolitan Examination in the civil service examination sequence)

举人 Ju Ren. Provincial Graduate; Elevated Men (a second degree graduate or a successful candidate in the Provincial Examination)

进士 Jin Shi. Metropolitan Graduate; Presented Scholar (a third degree graduate or a successful candidate in the national civil examination held at the imperial capital)

进士及第 Jin Shi Ji Di. Metropolitan Graduate with Honors (in the first category of successful candidates)

进士出身 Jin Shi Chu Shen. Regular Metropolitan Graduate (in the second category of successful candidates)

同进士出身 Tong Jin Shi Chu Shen. Associate Metropolitan Graduate (in the third category of successful candidates)

状元 Zhuang Yuan. Principal Graduate (who stood first on the list of passers of the Palace Examination; the No. 1 Graduate of the Palace Examination)

榜眼 Bang Yan. Second Graduate (the No. 2 Graduate of the Palace Examination)

探花　Tan Hua. Third Graduate (the No. 3 Graduate of the Palace Examination)

传胪　Chuan Lu. List Leader (designation of those Metropolitan Graduates whose names headed the lists of the second and third group of passers in the Palace Examination)

三元　San Yuan. Triple First (quasi-official reference to the extremely rare man who stood first on the pass lists of each of three levels of civil service recruitment examinations)

翰林院　(参见 P92)

翰林学士　(参见 P92)

儒学　Confucian School

贡生　Gong Sheng. Tribute Student; Student of the Imperial College

太学　National University

监生　Jian Sheng. National University Student

优监生　National University student for excellence

拔贡生　Tribute Student for Preeminence

博学鸿词　Erudite Literatus

博学鸿儒　Erudite Scholasticus

七　六部公用语
THE TERMINOLOGY OF THE SIX BOARDS

吏　部
THE BOARD OF CIVIL APPOINTMENT

选任　appointment
大选　regular appointment
保举　recommendation
候选　awaiting appointment
补缺　waiting to fill a specific office
铨衡　just selection
陞用　promotion
调迁　transfer
员缺　vacancy
内陞　promotion to the capital
外转　reassignment to the provinces
考选　appointment by examination
拣选　appointment by selection
职衔　rank and title
加衔　nominal rank
加级　additional grade
到任　arrival at the post
任所　seat of office
受事　assume office
回署　return to office
现任　current post
优任　better position
原任　former post

新任　new incumbent
前任　former incumbent
接任　taking charge of a post
交代　handing over
交盘　delivery of inventory
经管　directly in charge
署理　acting
接署　take charge as acting （official）
一等称职　first class：fully competent for the office
二等勤职　second class：diligent in office
三等平职　third class：equal to the office
考课　investigation of official performance on duty
奉裁改调　abolition of post and transfer （of incumbent）
略加陞用　slight promotion to a suitable official post
引见　（参见 P70）
陛见　imperial audience
京察　metropolitan inspection
届期　at the designated time
举劾　recommendation and impeachment
黜罢　demotions and dismissals
劝惩　exhortation and warning
事迹　biographical facts
劣迹　bad deeds
参革　dismissal after impeachment
参罚　penalty for the impeachment
逐斥　dismissal with reprimand
革职　dismissal from office
拿问　arrest for questioning
摘印　surrender of seal
离任　departure from the post
解任　relieved of duty
降级　lowering of rank
卸事　handing over the office
降调　demotion and transfer
留任　retained at post
住俸　withholding of salary

降俸 reduction of salary

除俸 elimination of salary

降俸二级 reduction of salary by two classes

回避 avoidance

休致 retirement

归农 retire to the farm

原官致仕 retire with the original official title

告病乞休 request for retirement due to ill health

闻讣 receiving news of death

服阕 completion of mourning period

归葬 on leave for parents' interment

省亲 visiting parents

上司 superior

同僚 colleagues

流内官 ranked officials; officials within the ranks

流外官 unranked officials (unclassified officials)

杂职 minor posts

正途出身 holder of regular graduate ranks

检选举人 selected provincial graduates

教习贡生 teaching senior licentiates

幺磨小吏 insignificant minor official

文凭 certificate

品级考 rank and class reference

委牌 assignment tablet

封荫 awards made because of the merits of one's ancestors or descendants

呈赐 presenting local products to the emperor, imperial gifts bestowed on local officials

缴批 returning rescripted palace memorials and corrected edicts to Beijing for storage

户 部
THE BOARD OF REVENUE

地丁钱粮 land-poll tax funds

正项钱粮 principal tax funds

杂项钱粮　miscellaneous tax funds

衙役工食　office runners' food and wage costs

俸工银两　salaries and wages

关税　customs duties

行税　business tax

租税　tax on rentals

典税　pawn-broker's tax

经费银　administrative expenditures fund

俸薪银　stipend and salary fund

铺垫银　pad and cushion fund

路费银　travel fund

科敛　tax allocation and collection

入己　to one's pocket (government funds)

挪移　to shift (funds)

亏空　deficit

出纳　outlay and income

拨补　transfer for replenishments

裒益　to maintain balance

垫赔　to restore with advanced (funds)

抗粮　resistance to taxation

乐纳　happy payment

豁免　tax remission

正供稻米　court rice

孤贫口粮　poor relief rations

斛石斗升　The Hu, Dan, Peck and Pint

合勺抄撮　One-tenth, one-hundredth, one-thousandth of a pint and one pinch

平粜　sale of government grain at low price

出陈易新　to sell the old in exchange for new (rice)

存七粜三　store seven parts and sell three

漕运总督　director-general of grain transport

运官　transport officials

领运　(official) in charge of transport

押运　(grain) transport escort officials

土司　tribal authorities

土舍　tribal leader(s)

土目　tribal head

土民　native people

客民　temporary residents

平民　common people

花民　lower classes (or castes)

流寓　temporary residence

壮丁　able-bodied men

屯丁　agricultural settlers

正丁　men of the family

户丁　men of the clan (men of the household)

成丁　adult male

舍丁　house men

闲丁　non-quata men

脱漏户口　missing census counts

户由执照　license for change of residence

肥田　fertile land

瘠田　poor land

淤田　alluvial land

涂田　mud land

熟地　mature land

荒地　unused land

卤地　brine land (or salt land)

海滩淤沙地　sandy alluvial land on the coast

凋残瘠薄地　devastated, poor land

耕九余三之谷　three years' surplus grain out of nine years of cultivation

青黄不接之候　the season of pre-harvest food shortages

礼　部
THE BOARD OF RITES

大祀　great sacrifices (the great sacrifice to Heaven at the Round Altar 圜丘 in the Temple of Heaven 天坛; the great sacrifice to Earth at the Square Pond 方泽 in the Temple of Earth 地坛)

中祀　superior sacrifices (the superior sacrifices at the Altar of

Earth and Grain 社稷坛, the Altar of the Planet Jupiter 太岁, and the Temples of Confucius and of Guandi 孔庙和关帝庙)

庙享 offerings at the Imperial Ancestral Temple or Great Temple (太庙)

致斋 major fast

斋戒 fasting and purification

散斋 minor fast (major fast is observed for a Great Sacrifice, while Minor fast for a superior sacrifice)

陪祭 (to serve as) associates in sacrifice

陪祀 (to serve as) associates in worship

助祭 (to serve as) sacrificial assistants

祭仪 sacrificial offerings; sacrificial ceremonies

祭文 sacrificial ode or prayer

飨荐 food offering

案衣 altar drape

元宵 first night of full moon

除夕 New Year's Eve

元旦令节 fair festival of New Year's Day

灯节 Lantern Festival

万寿圣节 ten-thousand-year imperial birthdays (the birthdays of the retired emperor, the empress dowager, and the emperor are all termed "ten-thousand-year imperial birthdays")

千秋令节 one-thousand-year imperial birthday (the birthdays of the empress and heir apparent are referred to as "one-thousand-year imperial birthdays")

庆贺表笺 congratulatory memorials and messages (to be presented to the empress dowager or emperor was called a memorial, to the empress or heir apparent, a message)

巨典礼成 completion of grand ceremony

尊号 honorific titles (in the case of the retired emperor and the empress)

徽号 special titles (in the case of the empress dowager)

尊谥 posthumous honors (all the honorific titles and the special titles given after death are termed posthumous honors)

举手加额　the forehead salute

大行皇太后尊谥　Posthumous honors of the late Empress Dowager ("Da Xing" means having departed without return i. e., dead; before posthumous honors can be definitely fixed after the passing of the empress dowager of the emperor)

初祭　first sacrifice

大祭　grand sacrifice

启奠　removal libation

朝觐　an audience (with the emperor)

朝贡　an audience and presentation of tribute

赐宴　court banquets; banquets granted by the emperor

品尝御膳　testing of the emperor's food

乘舆服御物　imperial wardrobe and articles of daily use

卤簿大驾（全副执事）　full regalia and grand equipage (known as "the full set of equipments")

织金朝衣　audience robe of gold-wefted brocade (with patterns woven in gold thread)

历代陵寝　imperial mausoleums of past dynasties

忠臣烈士　loyal ministers and patriots

古圣先贤　ancient sages and past worthies

孝子顺孙　filial son, submissive grandson

义夫节妇　faithful husband, chaste wife

烈妇　virtuous woman

烈女　virtuous girl

旌表　public commendation

建坊　to erect an honorary arch

一甲赐进士及第　the degree of first class Metropolitan Graduate is granted to (successful candidates of) the first rank (which consists of three places, i. e. Zhuang Yuan 状元, Bang Yan 榜眼 and Tan Hua 探花)

二甲赐进士出身　the degree of second class Metropolitan Graduate is granted to (successful candidates of) the second rank (which had no fixed number of places; the candidate winning the highest places was known as Chuan Lu 传胪, while all who passed the examination received the degree of second class Metropolitan Graduate)

乡试外帘五所官　officials of the five bureaus of the outer section at provincial examination

三甲赐同进士出身　the degree of third class Metropolitan Graduate is graduated to (successful candidates of) the third rank

三场体格　literary forms for the three sittings (or parts) of an examination (in the provincial and metropolitan examinations, the first sitting consisted of three essays on the Four Books 四书; the second, Five Classics 五经; and the third sitting, two discourses on the formulation of policies; each type of writing had its own form to be followed)

经书七义　the seven purports of the classics

会试举人　metropolitan examination candidation; provincial graduates at the metropolitan examination

拔贡　imperial student by special selection

会试　metropolitan examination

殿试　Palace examination

科举　public examinations; public examination system

贡院　examination compound; the examination hall

道考　circuit examination

院考　chancellor's examination

科甲　advanced degrees

兵　部
THE BOARD OF WAR

将材　having the ability to be a general

统辖　in command of

整饬营伍　putting the camp in order

和辑兵民　bringing about harmony between troops and civilians

边疆　frontier

腹里　the interior

隘口　narrow pass

海疆　coastal frontier

缘边关塞　frontier passes and forts

滨海要汛　strategic coastal military district
堤备不严　security measures are lax
失误军机　missing a military opportunity
越出界石　to overstep the boundary markers
私渡关津　illegally passing customs stations
军机重务　important military matter
事出不测　unexpected occurrence
立有战功　having won merit in battle
警跸　security guard
警备严密　strict security measures
号令森严　the orders are inviolable and strict
关防提督　guarding and commanding
团练　training of militia
点视　inspection by roll call
剿抚　to extirpate and to pacify
鏖战　to battle fiercely
活捉　to capture alive
逡巡　to shrink back
猖乱　creating violence
跋扈　to tyrannize; tyrannous
驰驱　to gallop
瞭望　look-out
关堡　pall and fort
墩台　signal mounds; watch towers
王命旗牌　imperial command flags and plaques
令旗令箭　command flags, command arrows
鹿角傍牌　cavalry traps, side barricades
云梯牌钯　scaling ladder, shield, and scaling hook
弓弩药箭　cross-bow, poisoned arrow
大刀长枪　broad sword, long spear
麦穗流星　three-headed flail
号带火筒　command streamer, flare gun
帐房锣锅　tent, cauldron
红衣鸟枪　red-coat's musket
胖袄棉甲　fat jacket, floss vest
皮铁盔甲　leather or iron helmet and armor

纛旗　marshal's banner
高招旗　direction pennant
杂色旗　multi-colored flag
邮符　postal credentials
火牌火票　express tag，express ticket
勘合　tallies
驿递　via the （military） post
马站　horse post
马头　chief groom
马夫　grooms
驿夫　post station men
递回　extradition
轻骑减从　to travel light with reduced retinue
驰驿就道　to travel via the post road
考试武举　to take the provincial military examinations
马步箭　mounted and dismounted archery
舞刀　sword play
作策论　writing a discourse on policy

刑　部
THE BOARD OF PUNISHMENTS

原告　plaintiff
被告　dependant
干证　witness
两造　both parties
首告　accuser
讦告　disrespectfully preferring charges against
投首　turning oneself in
抱告　to bring a suit by proxy
刁讼　cunning litigant
诬告　false accusation；groundless accusation
顶名代告　to accuse under assumed name
仇报　to draw in owing to personal enmity
飞冤驾害　to bring untrue charges and frame （the innocent）
教唆陷害　instigating disaster （for others）

波及无辜　innocent bystander being drawn into （a legal dispute）
诬轻为重　imposing a heavy （sentence） for a minor （crime）
诬良为盗　to charge a good citizen with robbery
株连受累　being implicated in trouble
申诉冤枉　pleading for （redress of） grievance
自认不讳　self-confessed without equivocation
坚供不移　unchangeable testimony
投供　reporting one's presence
亲供　personally penned report
俛首自招　confessing with bowed head
情愿抵偿　willing to forfeit；willing to pay the penalty
伤证俱确　full evidence of both the wound and witness(es)
犯罪待对　the criminal awaiting confrontation
任其哓哓　to permit wrangling
巧供谎供　evasive testimony，false testimony
赃证明确　loot and witness are clear and indisputable
赃经主认　loot identified by owner
起认赃物　retrieve and identify stolen goods
朝审　court assizes （or trials）
历审　successive interrogation
审供　to interrogate for evidence
援赦　amnesty granted in conformity with precedent
赦前（后）　pre-amnesty （post-amnesty）
缓决　execution suspended；suspension of execution
成招　confession obtained
全招　complete confession
三覆奏　thrice to reconsider and memorialize
两议具奏　to memorialize on the two alternatives
御笔勾除　crossed off with the imperial brush
减等发落　to be disposed of with reduced （penalty）
重杖　heavy flogging
笞五十　（sentenced to） fifty lashes
枷号一个月　to wear the cangue for one month
刺字　tattoo
杂犯死罪　secondary criminals rating the death penalty
并赃治罪　punished for the total sum of loot

自首免罪　penalty waived of one who turns himself in
发配　deportations to frontier areas
发边外为民　to be exiled beyond the Wall as civilians
远戍难宽　no clemency for the sentence of remote garrison duty
绚首　strangulation
斩罪　decapitation
戮尸　beheading of corpse
发烟瘴充军　be exiled to serve military duty in a malarious area
立决正法　to be immediately executed in conformation with the law
枭首示众　beheading and exhibition
酷(极、惨)刑　harsh(extreme,cruel) punishment(or torture)
手扭　handcuffs
脑箍　head band
脚镣　foot fetters
冤陷在狱　jailed on a false charge
毙监免议　cancellation of trial of one who has died in prison
淹禁致死　death due to long imprisonment
反狱在逃　has revolted and escaped from prison
越狱脱逃　escaping from prison
惧罪潜逃　fleeing for fear of punishment
疏纵脱逃　escape resulting from carelessness
勒限严缉　to conduct a thorough search within a given time limit
缉获　captured after a search
故杀　killing with an intent to kill
谋杀　murder by conspiracy
主谋　to instigate (or incite)
戏杀　manslaughter resulting from joking
鸩杀　murder by poison
自刎　cutting one's own throat
自缢　hanging oneself
自尽　suicide
误杀　killing by mistake
过失杀　killing by accident
通奸　adultery
和奸　adultery by mutual consent

强奸　rape
刁奸　seduction
轮奸　to rape by turns
鸡奸　sodomy
奸久情密　close attachment arising out of a long liaison
遂谋杀夫　thereupon have murdered the husband
弃毁死尸　to abandon and destroy a corpse
抛撒死尸　to scatter corpses
尽髡去发　cutting off the hair completely
犯人　criminal
重犯　major criminal
首犯　ringleader, principal criminal
为从　accomplice; abetter
盗犯　larcenist
元谋　instigator
首盗　robber chief
伙盗　robber band
窃盗　thief
掏摸　burglary
越墙　over the walls
撞门　battering the door
撬门　forcing the door
入室　into the rooms
捆打　to tie and beat up
火烤　roasting with fire
油烧　scalding with oil
拷打　inquisition with beating
刀扎　stabbing
略卖　to seize and sell
拐骗　to kidnap through deception
引诱逃走　to lure and flee
诱逼转卖　(to kidnap by) inducement or coercion, and to sell
以图灭口　in order to eliminate witnesses

工 部
THE BOARD OF WORKS

河工　river conservancy; river works
修筑　to construct
垒砌　to build with masonry
修浚　to dredge
宣泄　to flush out
越开　to bypass
下埽　lower embankment
加帮　extra bulwark
裹头　source enclosure
合龙门　closing the "dragon's gate"
越坝　a spanning dam or weir
遥堤　distant dyke
大墩　great mounds
拦河坝　mid-channel dam
滚（挑、减）水坝　diversion (deflection, detention) dam
越河　alluvial river
涵洞　reservoir; culvert
春（伏、秋）汛　spring (summer, autumn) floods
冲决　breached by flood
坍塌　to collapse
断流　to halt the stream
房屋建造　the construction of buildings
上梁　to place the beams in position
竖柱　to erect the posts (or pillars)
码磉　to build the pillar bases
翻造　to remodel
灌浆　to seal with liquid mortar
勾抿　plastering
曰至　the four boundaries
三座洞门　triple-arch gate
斗拱　brackets
斜山　sloping walls
黄花竹　yellow-spotted bamboo
熏竹　smoked bamboo
淘金　gold washing
采木　purchase of lumber

杉槁　slim firs

架木　frame lumber

砖工　brickwork；masonry

验收　to inspect and terminate a public works project

八　青铜器
BRONZES

金属及金工
METALS AND METALCRAFT

五金　The Five Metals
黄金　gold
白银　silver
赤（红、紫）铜　copper
黄铜　brass
青铜　bronze
铁　iron
锡　tin
锡镴　pewter
合金　alloy
铜锈　patina
铜绿　verdignis
铁锈　（参见 P155）
铸铜技术　technique of bronze casting
矿石　ore
蓝铜矿（石青）　azurite；blue malachite
黄铜矿　chalcopyrite
辉铜矿　chalcocite
斑铜矿　bornite
坩埚（将军盔）　crucible；an open-mouthed vessel for smelting the ore，also known as “general's helmet”
熔化　to melt（ore）
冶炼　to smelt
浇铸　to cast

锻炼　to forge
陶范　pottery molds（for casting bronze）
型范　sectional molds
母范　master mold
合范　composite molds
泥模　clay model
失蜡法　cire-perdue；lost-wax method
浇铸法　method of casting with sectional molds
分铸法　separate casting method
铸造　foundry
铸件　foundry goods
主体　main body
部件　minor parts
装配　to assemble；to match
铜器镶嵌技术　technique of embellishing bronzes with inlays
镌刻　（参见 P171）
镶嵌　to inlay；to encrust with metal or gems
镶嵌细工　marquetry；inlaid work
镀　to overlay；to plate；to gild
镀（鎏）金（银）　to gold（silver）plate；to be gilt with gold（silver）
错金（银）　to inlay with gold（silver）
戗金　with inlay of gold；with gold relief
描金　（参见 P245）
贴金　（参见 P268）
抹金　（参见 P158）
嵌花　applique
贴花　（参见 P158）
錾花　（参见 P267）
敲出品　repousé
镂空　openwork；fretwork
十字形镂空　cruciform opening
圆穿　holes
长孔　slots
金银丝细工　filigree work
嵌螺钿　（参见 P245）

掐丝 filigree; wire inlay

形 制
SHAPES

体、腹 body; belly (to receive food, wine or water)

(深、中、浅)腹 (deep, medium, shallow) belly (body)

盖 lid; cover (to keep the contents warm and tight within the vessel)

(半、浅凹、深凹)盖 (flat, slightly concave, in the shape of a cup) lid

盖捏手 lid knob (stands on the top of the lid for the purpose of picking up the lid)

缘(唇) rim (the lower edge surrounding the mouth)

反唇 spreading rim

口 mouth (to let out the contents of the vessel)

侈口 trumpet mouth; wide flared mouth (whose diameter is greater than that of the body)

敛口 contracted mouth (whose diameter is much smaller than that of the body)

中口 medium mouth (whose diameter is nearly the same as that of the body)

项、颈 neck (between the body and the mouth)

束颈 contracted neck

耳 ears (two handles on both sides of the vessel)

立(直)耳 vertical ears; upright handles (on the rim of a vessel)

侧(附)耳 side ears (on the sides of the body in the shape of crescents)

环耳 ring ears (big rings hanging down from a nose or an animal head)

圈耳 loop ears (attached to both sides of the body)

提梁 swing-handle; loop handle (in the form of a bridge as on the You 卣)

联环 chain-handle (to fasten the lid and to serve the purpose of hanging when being heated)

柄、拊 rod-handle; hilt (appears on spoons and knives; a long rod, sometimes carved)

鋬 single ear

嘴 spout (to pour out liquid)

喙 tube-spout (in the shape of a projecting tube, as seen on big and deep wine vessels with lid)

流 peaked spout; slanting spout (being the projecting part of the brim of mouth)

足 legs (to support and to leave the vessel space for heating)

实足 solid legs (in the shape of cylinders like those on the Ding 鼎)

款足 hollow legs (facilitate the boiling of the liquid content)

小足 small legs (of various forms: some are slender, some take the form of animals, some are small rings; appear not only under the bottom or the base but also on covers)

圈足 medium base; circular base; ring foot (originally a separate supporter for standing vessels with no legs, it was later cast together with the bottom as part of the whole vessel)

斂底 contracted base (has no surrounding rim under the bottom, and supports itself by a contracted bottom)

短而粗 dumpy

长而细 long and slender

类别及名称
CLASSIFICATION AND NAMES

礼器 Ritual Vessels

炊器(烹饪器) Cooking Vessels

鼎 Ding (tripod for cooking meat and cereals; its body may be round or rectangular with three or four solid legs; it may or may not have a lid)

鬲 Li (cauldron for cooking meat and cereals, similar to tripod but with hollow legs; Li are generally round, a few are rectangular; some have ears, but most have none)

甗　Yan (steamer for vegetables and cereals with round body on three legs, a few with rectangular body on four legs)

甑　Zeng (colander; the upper part of a Yan)

盦　An (a vessel for storing seasoned food; a cover of a tripod)

鬵　Xun (a kind of boiler; a round kettle)

釜　Fu (a cauldron, usually with a cover, two handles and three feet)

鍪　Mou (a kind of kettle)

镉、镐　Ge、Gao (a kind of stove)

刀　Dao (knife, kitchen knives)

俎　Zu (chopping blocks for carving meat)

食器（盛器）　Food Containers

簋　Gui (a bowl with or without cover and ears, used as a container for grain and other foodstuffs; usually round, rectangular ones are rare)

簠　Fu (a rectangular covered dish with straight sloping sides, used as a container for cooked cereals; the lid is similar to the main body)

盨（盨簋）　Xu, Xugui (a rectangular round-cornered vessel with a lid; has the same utility as a Gui and is actually a variant of the latter)

敦　Dui (a round or oval, covered vessel for holding cereals; popularly termed "Watermelon Ding")

豆、琦　Dou, Qi (a high-stemmed shallow saucer with cover on a round base, used for keeping minced meat; a rectangular Dou was called a Qi)

铺、笾　Pu, Bian (a compressed version of Dou, used to keep preserved fruits or meat)

卢　Lu (a shallow rectangular tray)

匕　Bi (a spoon with shallow elliptical bowl for serving meat and other solids)

酒器　Wine Vessels

煮酒器　vessels for heating wine

爵（雀）　Jue, Que (goblet, a tripod cup with projecting lip;

most Jue have two small pillars; a few have one or none)

角 Jiao (goblet, similar to the Jue but with the extended symmetrical rim and bielliptical mouth; the Jiao has no pillar; the spout and tail are both of the same shape)

斝 Jia (a round tripod vessel with a handle on one side and two uprights on the lip)

盉 He (kettle, a rounded vessel with closed spout, handle, cover, and three or four legs, solid or hollow)

盛酒饮酒器 Wine Containers and Drinking Vessels

觚 Gu (a slender beaker with trumpet-shaped mouth and spreading foot; rectangular ones are rare)

尊 Zun (a beaker-shaped rectangular vessel, with flaring lip)

樽 Zun (cup, for drinking or warming up wine)

牺尊(鸟兽尊) Xi Zun (vessel in the form of a rhinoceros, bird, or other animal)

觯 Zhi (goblet, with flaring lip, swelling body and foot-rim; with or without a lid)

方彝 Fang Yi (ewer, a rectangular casket-shaped vessel with cover surmounted by a knob)

卣 You (jar or tankard, round or ovoid in horizontal section, with cover and swing-handle)

鸮卣 Xiao You (You modeled in the shape of an owl)

觥 Gong (a squat pitcher, elongated from front to back, with a cover extending over open spout at front and with handle at back, and a square stand or four legs at the base)

壶 Hu (a jar, vase or ewer with bulbous body, narrow neck, foot-rim and two handles or rings, with or without cover)

钟 Zhong (the round Hu with a big belly was called Zhong)

钫 Fang (the rectangular Hu was called Fang; a term used for a four-sided Hu)

钾 Jia (the compressed Hu was called Jia)

扁壶 (参见 P151)

贯耳壶 Hu (thread-ear Hu with tubular ears for cord)

罍 Lei (a large vase, or jar similar to the Hu, but with the widest part of the body just below the neck)

瓿　Pou or Bu (a vessel resembling the Hu and the Lei, but lower in proportion, bulkier and with a more rounded body)

缾　Ping (a vessel with the form of a Hu but generally with a flat base)

缶、𨯫、罎　Fou, Ling, Dan (names for low spout vessels with contracted mouths)

卮　Zhi (a low cup or bowl with two or more handles)

杯、觞　Bei, Shang (low oval cups with horizontal flanges parallel to the longer axis, known as "Wings")

勺　Shao (ladle for serving fluids with a long handle and deep bowl)

禁、案　Jin, An (a low table or altar, square or rectangular, on which ritual vessels may be stood)

水器　Water Vessels

盘　Pan (a wide shallow bowl for washing vessels or for ablutions, usually with a high foot-rim and two ears for lifting)

匜　Yi (a low ewer, from which water could be poured, with a flat base on three or four legs)

鉴　Jian (a large deep basin with two or more ring-handles, or none at all, used for washing; used also as a mirror when filled with water; or used for keeping ice)

洗、盆、盂　Xi, Pen, Yu (basins similar in form to the Jian, but smaller, and usually with everted rims, rather like the wash-basin of today)

鉌　He (an oval-shaped container with a handle, usually to hold water for grinding an ink-stick for scholarly writing)

皿　Min (vessels, containers especially for use in the house)

乐器　Musical Instruments

铙　Nao (a large cymbal; a bell with a long bar-handle set on a wooden stand and struck with a wooden mallet)

钟　Zhong (a clapperless bell to be struck with a stick on the outside; also a Nao upside down, hung up to produce a clear sound)

特钟　Te Zhong (a large bell designed to hang alone, not as part

of a chime)

镈钟　Bo Zhong (a kind of bell with a plane opening; it was hung vertically by a circular knob)

编钟　Bian Zhong (a chime of bells hung in series in a wooden frame so that it could play more complicated tunes)

甬钟　Yong Zhong (a bell with cylindrical handle on top; it was hung up in an inclined position)

执钟　Zhi Zhong (handled bell from the Shang Dynasty)

钮钟　Niu Zhong (a bell with semi-circular knob on top)

錞于　Chun Yu (a kind of cylindrical bell, suspended by a loop in the form of a bird or an animal; its long body which widens upward is usually undecorated)

钲（丁宁）　Zheng (Ding Ning) (a kind of bell, oval section and wide mouth, with a short hollow handle; like the Nao it was struck with a mallet)

钩鑃　Gou Diao (used at sacrificial ceremonies or feasts)

铎　Duo (a hand-bell with clapper; in ancient times, Zheng, Chun Yu and Duo were used as signals in battle)

铃　Ling (a small bell of oval section suspended by a loop or canon)

鼓　Gu (drum; has a face on both sides, which is struck with sticks or hands)

甬　Yong (the shank or handle of a bell)

舞　Wu (the flat top of a bell)

磬　Qing (stone chime; sonorous stone)

舞戚　Wu Qi (a ceremonial axe used in dancing)

舞铙　Wu Nao (ringing instrument for the dance)

旂铃　Ji Ling (a bell fixed at the top of a flag)

锣　Luo (gong)

钹　Bo (cymbal)

兵器　Weapons (Military Implements)

勾兵　Gou Bing (hook weapons; a general term for weapons having a pointed blade held at right angles to the shaft)

戈　Ge (a dagger-axe, consisting essentially of a pointed blade with both edges sharpened, used for hooking and hitting)

戈各部的技术名称　technical names of the parts of a Ge

援　Yuan (the blade of a Ge)

内　Nei (tang or the butt end of a Ge)

后缘　Hou Yuan (tang terminal)

胡　Hu (dewlap; the base or stem of the later Ge)

穿　Chuan (aperture or hole of a Ge)

锋　Feng (blade tip of a Ge)

阑　Lan (banister of a Ge)

脊　Ji (median ridge)

斧　Fu (axe, hatchet, celt; also used for battle-axe)

戚　Qi (axe, battle-axe, broad axe; a term used for several variants of this weapon)

钺　Yue (an axe, was used both as a weapon of war as well as an implement of execution)

钺各部的技术名称　technical names of the parts of a Yue

柲冒　Bi Mao (finial)

木柲　Mu Bi (wooden shaft)

身　Shen (body)

内　Nei (tang)

肩　Jian (shoulder)

刃　Ren (blade edge)

阑　Lan (banister)

穿　Chuan (aperture)

矛　Mao (a spear or lance; and has the same function as a bayonet)

戟　Ji (a kind of lance, halberd; a combined spear and dagger axe developed from the slotted Ge)

勾戟　Gou Ji (hook-halberd; a kind of weapon combining dagger axe and knife)

弓　Gong (bow)

铳　Chong (blunderbuss)

銎　Qiong (the socket in a tool or weapon for the shaft or handle)

突　Tu (protuberance; the ferrule of the shaft of a weapon)

弩　Nu (cross-bow, bow fitted with mechanism for stretching and

firing)

弩各部的技术名称　technical names of the parts of a Nu

郭　mechanism host

望山　scope

牙　tooth

悬刀（扳机）　trigger

钩心　catch

键（栓塞）　pinions

弦　bow string

弩箭　arrow

弩弓　bow

木制弩臂　tiller

箭、矢　Jian, Shi (arrow)

矢箙　Shi Fu (quiver)

鸣镝　Ming Di (whistling arrow)

镞　Zu (the barbed head of an arrow, or arrow-head used for long-range shooting)

大刀　Da Dao (knife; broad sword with long handle used for sabering)

刃　Ren (the edge of a knife)

马头短刀　Ma Tou Duan Dao (horse-head short dagger, used for fighting at slope quarters)

盾　Dun (emblazoned shield)

甲胄　Jia Zhou (armor and helmet used as protective equipment)

剑　Jian (double-edged sword)

剑各部的技术名称　technical names of the parts of a Jian

锋　Feng (the tip of a sword)

腊（脊）　La or Ji (the spine of a sword)

茎　Jing (the hilt or grip of a sword)

首　Shou (the pommel of a sword)

叶　Ye (the blade of a sword)

格　Ge (the guard of a sword)

节尖　Jie Jian (the jag of a sword)

镡　Xin (the nose of a sword)

铍　Pi（short sword with long handle；most Pi are shaped like a willow leaf with a hole on the hilt）

车马饰　Chariot and Harness Ornaments

辕　Yuan（shaft of chariot）

軎　Wei（the endpiece of axle）

轭　E（horse collar；yoke）

辖　Xia（linchpin；axle-pin）

镳　Biao（curb chain）

衔　Xian（curb bit）

镫　Deng（stirrup）

毂　Gu（hub）

当卢　Dang Lu（ornaments of bridle）

马冠　Ma Guan（horse mask）

銮铃　Luan Ling（bell）

马面饰　Ma Mian Shi（bridle ornament）

生产工具　Tools of Production

手工业工具　handicraft tools（employed mostly in carpentry）

斧　（参见 P125）

锛　Ben（adze）

锥　Zhui（awl）

钻　Zuan（drill）

凿　Zao（chisel）

削　Xiao（scraper）

锯　Ju（saw）

锉　Cuo（file）

农具　farm tools

铲　Chan（shovel）

镢　Jue（pickaxe）

镰　Lian（sickle）

锄　Chu（hoe；pickaxe）

鱼钩　Yugou（fish hook）

度量衡器　Weights and Measures

直尺　Zhi Chi（ruler）

卡尺　Ca Chi (calipers)

天平　Tian Ping (balance; scales)

秤　Cheng (steelyard)

权　Quan (weight)

衡　Heng (graduated arm of a steelyard; balance)

钫　Fang (a measure with a square mouth)

杂器　Miscellaneous Articles

镜　Jing (flat hand-mirror)

奁　Lian (a cylindrical covered vessel used as a cosmetic box)

炉　Lu (brazier; stove; censer)

熏炉　Xun Lu (incense burner)

博山炉　Bo Shan Lu (hill censer; censer shaped as a stem cup with cover in the form of a mountain peak; Boshan incense burner)

灯　Deng (lamps)

烛台　Zhu Tai (candlestick)

服饰　Fu Shi (clothing ornaments)

带钩　Dai Gou (belt hook; clothing hook)

带扣　Dai Kou (buckle)

建筑饰件　ornamental pieces for buildings

棺椁饰件　decorative accessories for coffins

鸠杖首　pigeon-shaped staff-head

杠头　pole cap

铺首（门环）　Pu Shou (brass knocker; door knocker)

铜钱　a coin, a cash, money

肉　Rou (the field of a cash)

好　Hao (the hole in a cash)

郭　Guo (the thickened rim of a coin)

背　Bei (reverse of a coin)

面　Mian (obverse of a coin)

刀币　knife-shaped money

铲币　spade-shaped money

虎符　Hu Fu (a tiger-shaped tally)

鱼符　Yu Fu (a fish-shaped tally)

腰牌　Yao Pai (waist warrant)

纹 饰
DECORATIONS

云雷纹　cloud and thunder pattern

回纹　meandering pattern；rectangular spiral pattern

螺旋纹（涡纹）　spiral pattern；whorl circle

浪花纹　foam pattern

弦纹　bow string pattern

圈带纹　belt-of-circles；circle band

环带纹　wave pattern

重环纹　double ring pattern

直线纹　perpendicular pattern

乳丁纹　nipple pattern；nipple protrusion

绹纹　（参见 P163）

鳞纹　scale pattern

龟纹　tortoise design；turtle pattern

瓦纹　tile pattern

窃曲纹　curved and hooked forms derived from animal elements；"broad figure band"

穷曲纹　impoverished（ragged，degenerate）curves

鸟兽纹　bird and animal（beast）pattern

夔　（Kui）Kui pattern；Kui-dragon

两头夔　two-headed Kui

饕餮纹　glutton motive；ogre mask；Tao Tie（a monster with a head but no body）

蟠螭纹　（Pan Chi）interlaced-hydras design

蟠虺纹　Pan Hui pattern；coiled serpent design

龙　dragon（an animal with scaly serpentine body，four legs with clawed feet，and a large head with horns）

凤　phoenix（a more splendid and handsomely crested variant of the bird）

两尾龙　two-tailed dragon；two dragons with heads fused into one

蟠（龙、螭、夔）　motives in which a dragon or other animal is coiled，head to tail to form a circular or oval medal-

lion

螭　(Chi)　a hornless dragon;“hydra” or “lizard”

虺　(Hui)　serpent

鸮　(Xiao)　owl

蝉　(Chan)　cicada

人面　human mask

羊头　ram head

神怪鸟兽纹　mythical bird and animal design

动物形纹　zoomorphic design

翼鹿纹　winged deer design

鳄鱼纹　crocodile design

虎噬猪纹　tiger devouring a pig

海马葡萄纹　“beasts and grapes”

变形兽纹　stylized animal pattern

龙盘虎绕　dragon entwined with tiger

龙鸟交织　interlacing dragons and birds

蕉叶纹　banana-leaf pattern

垂叶纹　descending leaf pattern

四瓣花纹　four-petaled flower pattern

四半月形纹　four crescents

三角云纹　cloud-in-triangle pattern

斜方格　rhomboid form

几何图案　geometric pattern

对称图案　symmetrical patterns

错纹　geometrical interlacery

相交纹　interlocking patterns

贝纹　cowrie pattern

粟纹　grain (millet) pattern

战斗纹　combat motive; combat between man and animals

猎纹　hunting motive; hunting scenes

人字纹　(参见 P162)

万字纹　(参见 P162)

四神、四灵　the four supernatural beings (symbolizing the four quadrants of the sky and the earth, and also the four seasons); the Animals of the Four Quarters, they are:

青龙　Green Dragon, symbol of the east and of spring

朱雀 Scarlet Bird, symbol of the south and of summer

白虎 White Tiger, symbol of the west and of autumn

玄武 Somber Warrior, symbol of the north and of winter

连续双线椭园纹 linked ellipses formed by double lines

连续菱形纹 linked lozenge pattern

棋盘格式纹 chessboard (or checked) pattern

花纹文字 characters in the shape of design

勾莲纹 crochet (hooked) lotus

勾旋纹 hooked spiral

直凿纹 vertical ribs

竹编纹 bamboo interlacery

铭 辞
INSCRIPTIONS

金文学 epigraphy

记名铭文 inscription of names

族名 clan name

受祭者名 name of ancestor receiving offering

作器者名 name of the maker of the vessel

器名 name of vessel

铸冶工人名 name of the caster

器之所有者 name of the owner

记事铭文 inscription of events

征伐 warfare

赏赐 (参见 P73)

祀典 ceremonial events

祭祀 sacrificial activities

册命 appointment of officials by the king (emperor)

分封 enfeoffment

契约 covenants

作器媵女 record of marriage of daughter

先世功绩 in praise of ancestral deeds

作器时间 date of making vessel

吉祥语 auspicious sayings

铸器记名 names of the conferer and receiver of the vessels

青铜器物选
SELECTED WORKS OF BRONZES

妇好鸮尊　Owl-shaped Zun（wine vessel）made for Fu Hao

盠驹尊　Colt-shaped Zun（wine vessel）made for Li

蔡侯䌛尊　Zun（wine vessel）made for Marquis Shen of the Cai State

三羊尊　Zun（wine vessel）with three rams' heads on shoulder

趞曹鼎　Ding（cooking vessel）made for Que Cao

毛公鼎　Ding（cooking vessel）of the Duke of Mao

父已鼎　Ding（cooking vessel）to worship Father Ji

鱼父丁鼎　Ding（cooking vessel）of Yu clan to worship father Ding

祖庚作司母戊方鼎　Rectangular Ding（cooking vessel）made by Zugeng to worship mother Wu

田告作母辛鼎　Ding（cooking vessel）made by Tian Gao for mother Xin

叔父丁鬲　Li（cooking vessel）to worship uncle Ding

加作父戊爵　Jue（wine vessel）made by Jia to worship father Wu

㝬簋　Gui（food container）made for Hui

宜侯矢簋　Gui（food container）of Ze, Marquis of Yi

中山王方壶　Rectangular Hu（wine vessel）of the Prince of Zhongshan

杜伯盨　Xu（food container）inscribed with the name Du Bo

郑乙伯𬭚　Ling（wine container）inscribed with the name Zheng Yi Bo（count Yi of the Zheng State）

鲁大司徒铺　Pu（food container）inscribed with Lu Da Situ（Great Minister Rites of the Lu State）

陈侯午敦　Dui（food container）of Wu, Marquis of Chen

曾侯乙编钟　（参见 P9）

虢季子白盘　Pan（water vessel）of Bai, younger brother of Guo

越王勾践剑　Jian（sword）of Gou Jian, Prince of Yue

秦始皇二十六年诏版　Bronze plate inscribed with an imperial

edict of the 26th year of Qinshihuang's reign

商鞅量　Liang (measure) of the State of Qin introduced by its prime minister Shang Yang

武城相帮七年戈　Ge (dagger axe) of the seventh year of Wucheng Xiangbang

巴蜀符号矛　Mao (spearhead) with Bashu Emblem

元兴元年弩机　Nuji (crossbow trigger mechanism) of the first year of Yuan Xing

十字孔方卣　Rectangular You (wine container) with rectangular openings (or cross holes) on each side

饕餮龙鸟纹觥　Gong (wine vessel) decorated with Taotie mask, dragons and birds

三足兽纹甗　Yan (food steamer) with three legs decorated with animal masks

鸟纹爵　Jue (wine vessel) decorated with design of birds

四腿兽匜　Yi (water vessel) in the form of four legged animal

镶嵌纹壶　Hu (wine container) inlaid with scenes of feasting, fishing, hunting and fighting

嵌金银绿松石觯　Zhi (wine vessel) inlaid with gold, silver and turquoise

铜镀金六十二字壶　Gilt-bronze Hu (wine container) with sixty-two character inscriptions giving date and place of manufacture and names of its makers

铜镀金博山炉　Gilt-bronze Boshan Lu (censer) in the form of Mountain of the Immortals

镂空蟠螭纹鼎　Ding (wine vessel) with interlaced-hydra design in openwork

水陆攻战纹鉴　Jian (basin) with land and water battle scenes

蟠龙饕餮纹罍　Lei (wine container) with coiled dragon and ogre-mask motif

三角援戈　Triangular-blade Ge (dagger-axe)

直（曲）内戈　Straight- (curved-) Tang dagger-axe

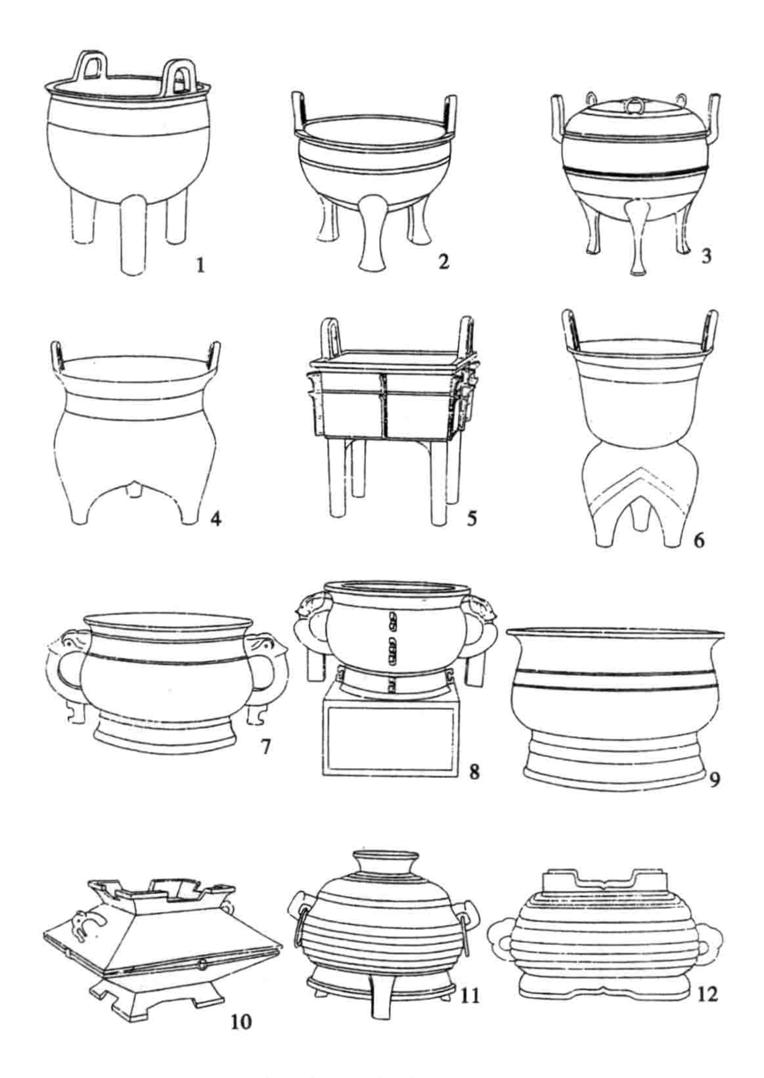
曲刃銎柄剑　Undulated-blade sword with trumpet grip

扁茎剑　Flat-grip sword

金鞘铜柄铁剑　Gold-sheath and bronze-gripiron sword

人面纹钺　Yue (axe) with human-mark motif

古代青铜器样式（线图）
SHAPES OF ANCIENT BRONZES
(LINE DRAWING)



古代青铜器样式图（一）

1）鼎　2）鼎　3）鼎　4）鬲　5）方鼎　6）献

7）簋　8）簋　9）簋　10）簋　11）簠　12）盨

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes Ⅰ

1） *ding*　2） *ding*　3） *ding*　4） *li*　5） *fang ding*　6） *yan*

7） *gui*　8） *gui*　9） *gui*　10） *gui*　11） *fu*　12） *xu*



古代青铜器样式图（二）

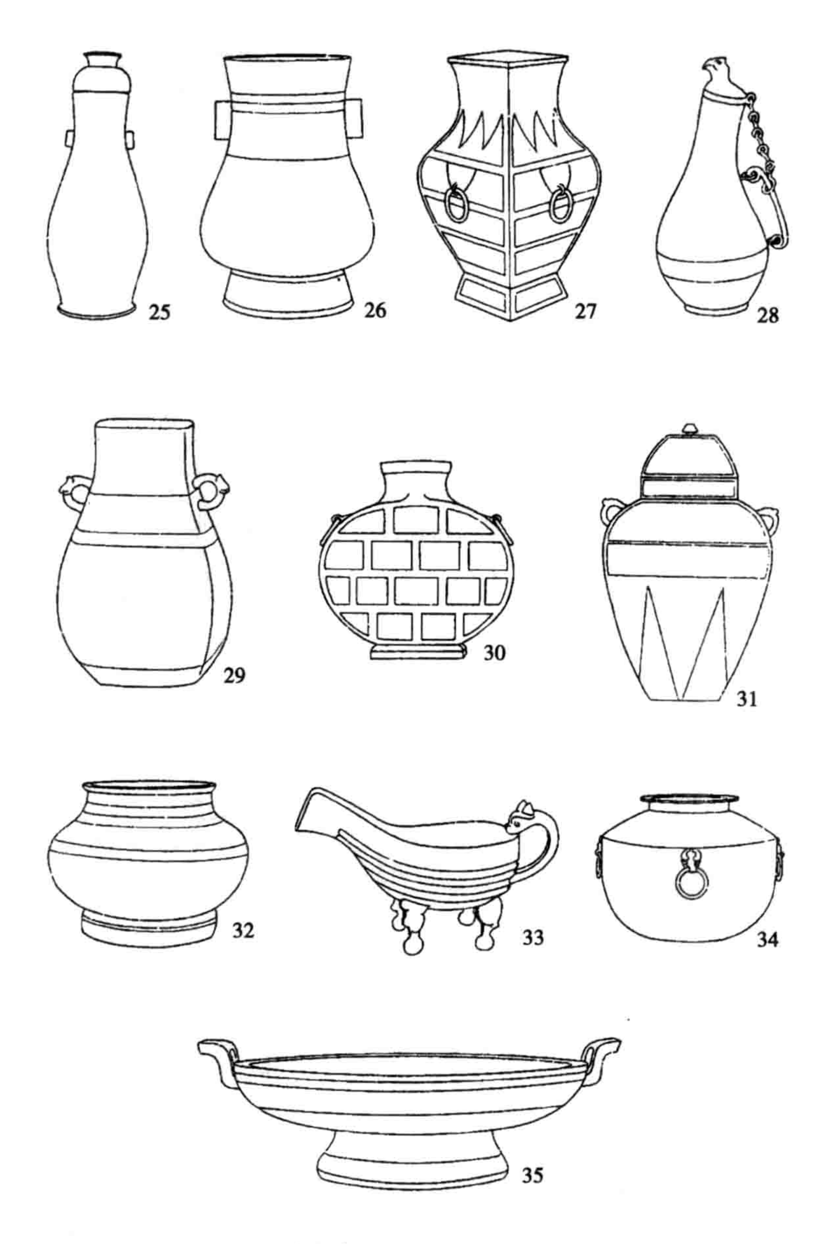
13）爵　14）豆　15）角　16）尊　17）斝　18）觚

19）觯　20）盉　21）觞　22）方彝　23）卣　24）觥

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes Ⅱ

13）*jue*　14）*dou*　15）*jiao*　16）*zun*　17）*jia*　18）*gu*

19）*zhi*　20）*he*　21）*shang*　22）*fang yi*　23）*you*　24）*guang*



古代青铜器样式图（三）

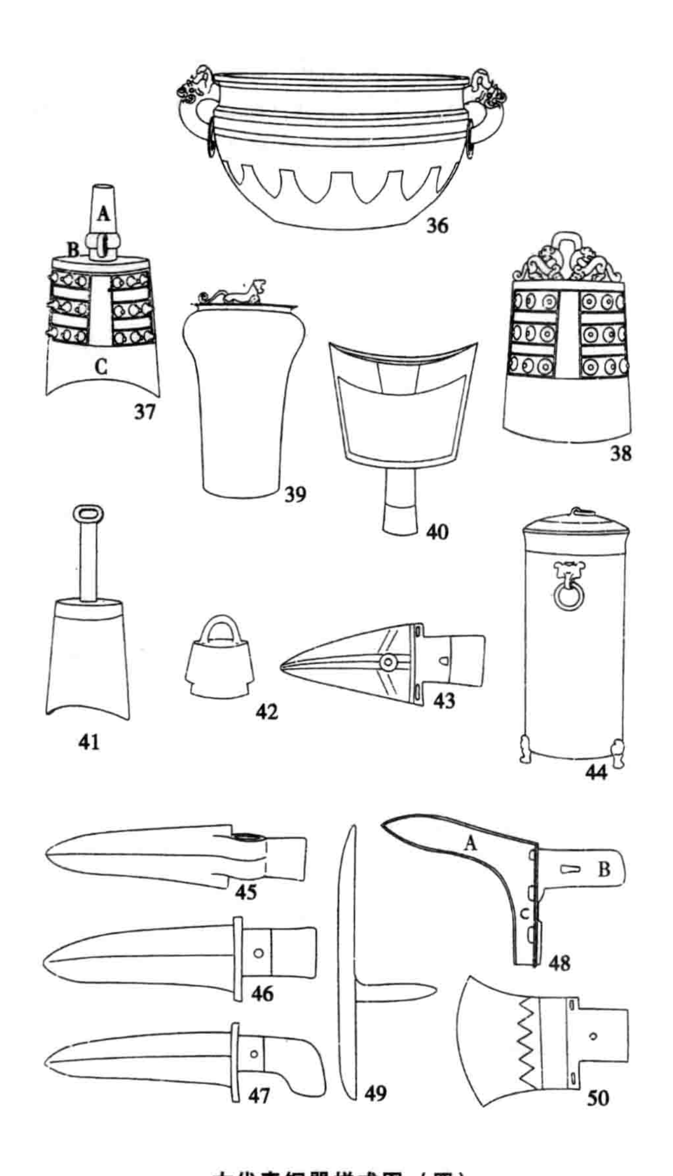
25） 壶 26）壶 27）壶 28）壶 29）瓶 30）扁壶

31）罍 32）瓿 33）匜 34）缶 35）盘

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes Ⅲ

25）*hu* 26）*hu* 27）*hu* 28）*hu* 29）*ping* 30）*bian hu*

31）*lei* 32）*bu*，*pou* 33）*yi* 34）*fou* 35）*pan*



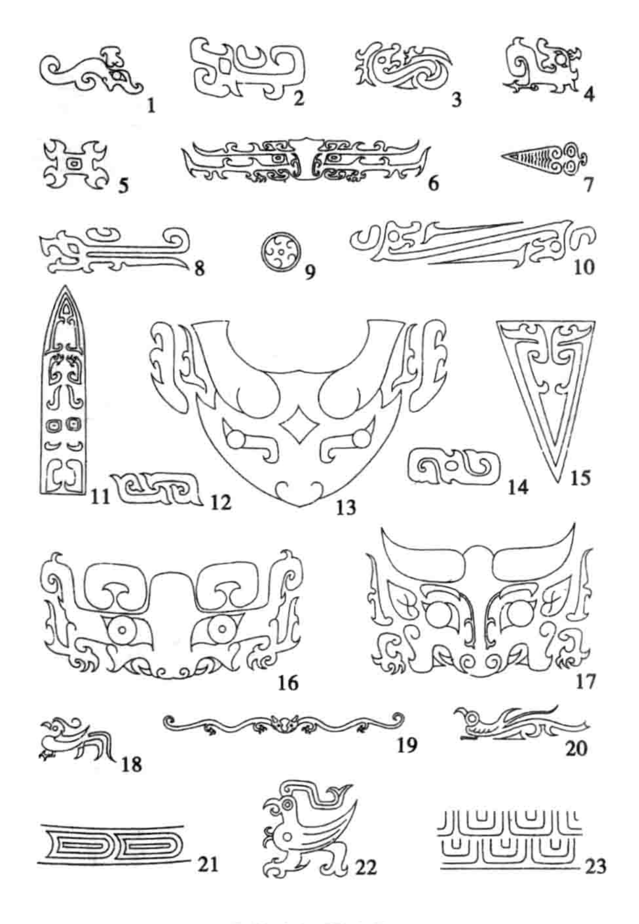
古代青铜器样式图（四）

36）监 37）钟 37A）甬 37B）舞 37C）鼓 38）钟 39）錞 40）钲 41）铎 42）铃 43）戈 44）奁 45）戈 46）戈 47）戈 48）戈 48A）援 48B）内 48C）胡 49）戟 50）戚

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes Ⅳ

36）*jian* 37）*zhong* 37*A*）*yong* 37*B*）*wu* 37*C*）*gu* 38）*zhong* 39）*chun* 40）*zheng* 41）*duo* 42）*ling* 43）*ge* 44）*lian* 45）*ge* 46）*ge* 47）*ge* 48）*ge* 48*A*）*yuan* 48*B*）*nei* 48*C*）*hu* 49）*ji* 50）*qi*

古代青铜器纹饰（线图）
MOTIFS OF ANCIENT BRONZE DECORATION (LINE DRAWING)



古代青铜器纹饰图

1－4）夔纹　5）四瓣花纹　6）饕餮纹　7）蝉纹　8）夔纹　9）圆涡纹　10）两头夔　11）蕉叶纹　12）窃曲纹　13）饕餮纹　14）窃曲纹　15）垂叶纹　16、17）饕餮纹　18）鸟纹　19）两尾龙　20）鸟纹　21）重环纹　22）凤纹　23）鳞纹

Motives of Ancient Bronze Decoration

1）*kui wen*　2）*kui wen*　3）*kui wen*　4）*kui wen*　5）*si-ban hua wen*　6）*tao-tie wen*　7）*chan wen*　8）*kui wen*　9）*yuan-wo wen*　10）*liang-tou kui*　11）*jiao-ye wen*　12）*qie-qu wen*　13）*tao-tie wen*　14）*qie-qu wen*　15）*chui-ye wen*　16）*tao-tie wen*　17）*tao tie wen*　18）*niao wen*　19）*liang-wei long*　20）*niao wen*　21）*chong-huan wen*　22）*feng wen*　23）*lin wen*

九 陶 瓷
CERAMICS

历代名窑
FAMOUS KILNS (YAO) THROUGH THE AGES

唐代 Tang Dynasty

越窑 Yue Yao. situated in Yuezhou (越州), the modern Shaoxing (绍兴), Zhejiang Province

余姚窑 Yuyao Yao. a site of Yue ware kilns in Yuyao (余姚), Zhejiang Province

邢窑 Xing Yao. located in what is now known as Xingtai (邢台), Hebei Province

邛窑 Qiong Yao. in Qionglai (邛崃), the modern Dayi (大邑), Sichuan Province

宜兴窑 Yixing Yao. in Yixing (宜兴), Jiangsu Province

婺州窑 Wuzhou Yao. in Jinhua (金华), Zhejiang Province

潮州窑 Chaozhou Yao. in Chaoan (潮安), Guangdong Province

郏县窑 Jiaxian Yao. in Jiaxian (郏县), Henan Province

大邑窑 Dayi Yao. in Dayi (大邑), Sichuan Province

宋代 Song Dynasty

定窑 Ding Yao. in Dingxian (定县), Hebei Province

钧窑 Jun Yao. in Juntai (钧台), the modern Yuxian (禹县), Henan Province

汝窑 Ru Yao. in Linru (临汝), Henan Province

龙泉窑 Longquan Yao. in Longquan (龙泉), Zhejiang Province

磁州窑 Cizhou Yao. in Cixian (磁县), Hebei Province

建窑　Jian Yao. in Jianyang（建阳），Fujian Province

吉州窑　Jizhou Yao. in Ji'an（吉安），Jiangxi Province

德化窑　Dehua Yao. in Dehua（德化），Fujian Province, famous since Ming Dynasty; blanc-de-chine ware（中国白器）

耀州窑　Yao Zhou Yao. in Tongchuan（铜川），Shaanxi Province

哥弟窑　Ge Di Yao. in Longquan（龙泉），Zhejiang Province, named after two Zhang brothers（章氏兄弟）who operated kilns at Longquan for the manufacture of porcelain. These factories were therefore called Ge Yao（the Elder Brother's Factory）and Di Yao（the Younger Brother's Factory）

官窑　Guan Yao. in Kaifeng（开封），Henan province（in Northern Song）; in Hangzhou（杭州），Zhejiang Province（in Southern Song）; The products of Imperial Kilns at various periods have been so-called.

东窑　Dong Yao. in modern Chenliuxian（陈留县），Henan Province, being situated to the east of the national capital, it was so named Dong Yao（East Kiln）

登封窑　Dengfeng Yao. in Dengfeng, Henan Province

丽水窑　Lishui Yao. in Lishuixian, Zhejiang Province

肖县窑　Xiaoxian Yao. established at Baitu Zhen（白土镇），in modern Xiaoxian, Jiangsu Province

当阳峪窑　Dangyangyu Yao. in Xiuwu（修武），Henan Province; It was a civilian kiln（民窑）in northern China.

郊坛下窑　Jiaotanxia Yao. means near to Altar of Heaven, at Wuguishan（乌龟山）near Beijing

元代　Yuan Dynasty

枢府窑　Shufu Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi province; The porcelain made there was ordered for official use.

鹤壁窑　Hebi Yao. a northern civilian kiln in Hebi, Henan Province

明代　Ming Dynasty

处州窑　Chuzhou Yao. so named after a town in Zhejiang Pro-

vince; it was a source of celadon (青瓷) in this dynasty.

石湾窑 Shiwan Yao. in Foshan (佛山), Guangdong Province

清代 Qing Dynasty

郎窑 Lang Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province

年窑 Nian Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province

醴陵窑 Liling Yao. in Liling, Hunan Province

唐山窑 Tangshan Yao. at Tangshan, Hebei Province

广窑 Guang Yao. at Shiwan (石湾), Guangdong Province

景德镇窑 Jingdezhen Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province, beginning from Chen of the Southern Dynasties up to now

陶瓷术语
CERAMIC TERMS

陶瓷学 ceramography

陶瓷业 ceramic industry

陶瓷工艺 ceramic technology

陶瓷工人 potter

陶工 potter's craft

陶土 potter's clay; pottery clay; potter's earth

赤陶(赤土) terracotta

泥水 the paste in water state

色泥 colored paste

瓷土 white clay

高岭土 Kaolin; infusible clay

紫金土 reddish purple clay; "Zijin" clay

白墩子 white briquette; "Petuntse"

素坯 biscuit

陶车 potter's wheel

按泥(拉坯) to mold, or throw clay on the wheel

轮制 wheel-made

圆器 round vessel, i. e. vessel shaped by throwing on the wheel

琢器 carved vessel, i. e. vessel of angular and of other shapes not produced by throwing on the wheel, but as if worked

by a lapidary

锥工　awl-work，incising with a pointed instrument

雕镶　carved applique work

镂雕　engraving

镂空　（参见 P118）

胎质（骨）　paste，or body of pottery

铁骨　iron body；porcelain body of dark color

砂胎　sandy body

脱胎　insubstantial；“bodiless”；egg-shell porcelain

绞胎　twisted colored body

滑泥　slip

涂泥浆　slip decoration

蘸釉　glazing by immersion

堆釉　massed glaze

吹釉　glazing by sufflation；soufflé glaze

绞釉　twisted glaze

浇釉　glazing by pouring

通体施釉　all-glazed

窑　kiln（窑址）；ware（产品）

官窑　official kiln

民窑　civilian kiln

圆顶窑　dome kiln

露天窑　field kiln

蛋形窑　egg-shaped kiln

隧道窑　tunnel kiln

反射窑　inverse kiln

隔焰窑　muffle kiln

侧烧窑　side-fired kiln

回转窑　rotary kiln

素烧窑　biscuit kiln

挡火墙　flash wall

烧箱　saggar

窑门　kiln gate

窑眼　kiln eye

装窑　kiln setting

倒窑　wasters；pottery spoiled in the kiln；kiln collapse

窑具　kiln furniture（items of refractory material（耐火材料）to support ware in the kiln during firing）

铸模（范）　mold

模型　model

浇注　pouring

分离器（层）　separator（a coating applied to permit separation of mold and model）

烘烧　to bake

素烧　unglazed（biscuit）firing

高（中、低）烧　high（medium，lower）-fired；temperature（grand feu，demigrand feu）

仰烧　the technique of firing bowls one on top of another（with rings placed as pads inside each bowl）

覆烧　the firing technique of putting the mouth rim of a bowl to that of another；upside-down firing

火候　mode of fire；maturing temperature

持久焰　lasting flame；permanent flame

氧化焰　oxidizing flame

还原焰　reducing flame

二次氧化　re-oxidation

显气孔率　pore-showing rate

吸水率　water absorption rate

一次烧器　once-fired ware

上釉烧法　encaustic

烧成温度　sintered temperature

烧成时间　firing time

窑款　kiln mark

年款　reign mark

印款　seal mark

缺口　chip

磨痕　sign of abrasion；frayed traces

支钉痕　spur-marks

补丁（片）　patch

瑕疵　blemish；flaw

露胎　exposed body

剥釉　peeling

釉泡　bubble
汽泡　air bubble
沙眼　pores；pitting
棕眼　palm eyes
渗漏　leak out
陶瓷器　ceramics
陶器　pottery；earthenware
炻器　stone ware
泥质黑陶　black pottery made of fine clay
夹砂灰陶　gray pottery mixed with sand
细（粗）砂陶　fine（coarse）sandy clay ware
紫砂　purple stoneware；“buccaro” ware；purple sandy ware；redware；“zisha”
赤陶　terracotta
釉陶　glazed pottery；glazed stoneware
彩陶　painted pottery；polychrome pottery
彩釉陶　glaze-colored pottery
铅釉陶　plumbic-glazed pottery
艺术陶　art pottery
印纹陶　impressed pottery
薄胎陶　egg-shell pottery
陶俑　pottery figure；terracotta figure
兵马俑　terracotta warriors and horses
瓷器　porcelain；china
原始瓷器　proto-porcelain
青瓷　celadon；green porcelain
荞麦青瓷　buck wheat celadon
白瓷　white porcelain；blanc de chine
黑瓷　black porcelain
青花瓷　blue-and-white porcelain
青白瓷　bluish-white porcelain；celadon-white porcelain
影青瓷　shadow blue porcelain
秘色瓷　olive green porcelain
彩瓷　decorated（painted）porcelain
花釉瓷　speckle-glazed porcelain；fancy-glazed porcelain
薄胎瓷　egg-shell porcelain

仿古瓷　imitation porcelain
耐热瓷　refractory porcelain
雕瓷　sculptured porcelain
细（粗）瓷　fine（rough） porcelain
半陶半瓷　semi-porcelain
白底青花瓷　Nankeen，or Nankin
瓷器裂纹　crackle（裂隙为 crack）
百圾碎　hundred-gold crackle
高温陶瓷　high temperature ceramics
陶瓷碎片　fragment；shard or sherd
刻花装饰　incised floral decoration
朴素无纹　plain；without decoration
胎质细密　close texture
胎质坚薄　thinly potted，but strong
质细而坚　fine and compact
质粗而松　coarser and looser
凹面　concave
凸面　convex
透明的　transparent
不透明的　opaque
半透明的　translucent
器物各部　parts of vessels
腹（肚）　belly；the swelling body of a jar or vase
颈（脖子）　neck
盖　cover（用于杯、碗、盒、罐等）；lid（用于壶）；top（用于瓶）
钮（顶、捏手）　knob（as of a cover）
柄（把柄）　handle；lug（as of a ewer or tea pot）
耳　ears；handles（attached to the shoulder or rim of a vessel）
贯耳　handles for threading；loops on the shoulders of a vessel through which tapes could be passed for carrying；pierced handles
戟耳　halberd-shaped handles
冲耳　loop handles rising from the rim of a vessel
壶嘴（口）　beak；spout；lip
碗（盘、杯）口　rim

碗（盘、杯）边　brim

瓶口　mouth

足　foot；foot-rim

乳足　mammillated feet

底　bottom

款足　（参见 P120）

圈足　（参见 P120）

侈（撇）口　flared-mouth；everted-mouth；spreading mouth

敛口　（参见 P119）

直口　upright mouth；straight mouth

锥足　conical leg

扁足　flattened foot

卧足　concave foot

器心　well

内壁　inside wall

外壁　body；exterior

器物尺寸　sizes of vessels

长　length

通长（带嘴壶）　length with spout and handle

全长　full length

口边长　length of mouth brim

足（底）边长　length of foot（bottom）brim

口径长　length of the surface

足径长　length of the bottom

宽　width

高　height

通高（带盖器）　height with lid

通耳高（带提梁）　height with handle

底径　diameter of bottom

底盘口径　mouth diameter of tray

口径（圆器）　diameter of mouth

面径（圆器）　diameter of top（face）

（圆）足径　diameter of base（foot）

足距　spacing of feet

腹围（圆器）　circumference of belly；girth

上围（圆器）　upper bulb

下围（圆器） lower bulb

流长（壶） length of spout

口纵（方器） length of mouth

口横（方器） width of mouth

口距（多口瓶） spacing of mouths

口缘镶铜边 the mouth-rim bound with a copper band

上下饰边线 with double lines above and below

器心粘垫托 attached to the well are "clay-cushions"

外壁加双圈 to enclose with double rings

仿古创新 to introduce some new features while preserving the good old traits

背标（标记） back stamp (maker's name or trademark as it appears on the back or underside of a ware)

器物形状
SHAPES OF VESSELS

腹部上敛下丰 pear-shaped body

腹部上丰下敛 swelling body tapering downwards

腹部扁圆 flattened globular body

腹部丰硕 swelling belly (body)

周壁上丰下削 deep side greatly tapering downwards

周壁较深 rather deep sides

颈部细长 slender long neck

身如直筒 straight cylindrical body

中心微凹 slightly concave at the center

敛口窄边 contracting mouth with narrow lip

侈（撇）口卷边 spreading mouth with everted rim

椭圆圈足 low elliptical ring-foot

高（矮）圈足 splayed (low) ring-foot

双圈足 double foot-ring

长颈短流 tall neck and short spout

兽首衔环 animal head holding a large pendant ring

翻唇 everted rim

凸缘 flange

凹棱 indented edges

圆棱　rounded edges

曲鋬（冲耳）　loop handles rising from the rim of a vessel

弓耳　bow-shaped handle

衔环兽面耳　beast-head ears holding a loose ring

凤耳　phoenix-shaped handle

贯耳　with pierced handles

螭耳　dragon-mask handles

绳耳　twisted-rope-shaped handles

龙首耳　handles in the shape of a dragon head；dragon-head handles

折沿　foliated edge

板沿　folded brim

平底　flat base（bottom）

浅凹底　slightly necessed base

委角　flattened angles

云头足　cloud-scroll feet

扁方形　depressed tetragonal shape

敛圆口　contracting round mouth

碟子　small circular dish

格碟　dish with compartments

盘子　plate；large circular dish

杯盘　plate with cups

杯（盏）托　cup saucer；cup with saucer

洗子　washer（deeper than a dish and larger than a bowl，and is used only for washing）

笔洗　brush washer

鼓式洗　drum-shaped bowl（washer）

糖锣洗　gong-shaped bowl（washer）

蔗段洗　cut sugar-can bowl（washer）

竹节洗　bamboo-joint bowl（washer）

三联洗　triple washer

水丞　water container

二联盒　twin-box

盖盒　covered box

碗　bowl

钵　（参见 P342）

宫碗　palace bowl; high-sided bowl with small foot

撇口碗　cymbal bowl; flared-mouth bowl

葵瓣碗　mallow-petal bowl; bowl with lip indented like mallow petals

菱花碗　water-chestnut-flower bowl

莲花碗　lotus-flower-shaped bowl

高足碗　high-footed bowl

鸡心碗　heart-shaped bowl

卧足碗　bowl with concave foot

折腰碗　waisted bowl; belly-bent bowl

合碗　bowl with fitted cover

盖碗　covered bowl

六瓣碗　six-lobed bowl

渣斗式　refuse-vessel shape

痰盂式　spittoon shape

秋海棠式　begonia-flower shape

莲瓣式　lotus-petal shape

仰钟式　shape of a inverted bell

杯（瓯、钟）　cups used for serving tea

盏　small cup used for drinking

高足杯　stem cup

压手杯　press-hand cup

把杯　handle cup

套杯　overlapping cups; a set of cups, one bigger than and encases another; a nest of cups

柳斗杯　cup in the shape of a plaited willow basket

水仙盆　narcissus pot; bulb pot

花盆　flower pot

缸、甕　urn, a large bowl (usually with high sides and slightly contracting mouth)

鱼缸　fish bowl (for live gold fish)

瓶　vase or bottle (generally applied to vessels with narrow necks and swelling bodies)

胆瓶（锥把瓶）　gall-bladder vase; vase with cylindrical neck swelling to a bulbous body; awl-handle vase; gall-shaped vase

观音瓶　Guan Yin vase (so named from the Sanskrit amrta-kalasa carried by Goddess of Mercy)

柱瓶（罐）　baluster vase (jug); it has a tall shape with a fullness about the middle.

扁瓶　flat vase

葫芦瓶　double-gourd vase; vase in the shape of a gourd

梅瓶　prunus vase; vase with wide shoulder and contracted neck suitable for displaying a single branch of prunus blossom

纸槌瓶　vase in paper-beater shape; paper-mallet vase; vase in the shape of a tool used in the manufacture of paper money

盘口瓶　vase with dish-shaped mouth

荸荠瓶　vase in the shape of a water-chestnut

蒜头瓶　garlic-head vase; a bottle with a bulbous mouth, slender neck and swelling body

天球瓶　vault-of-Heaven vase; globular vase with cylindrical neck; vase in the shape of celestial sphere

转心瓶　vase with reticulated exterior and independently revolving interior

玉壶春瓶　pear-shaped vase with flaring lip (Yu Hu Chun, literally "Spring in a Jade Jar")

镂空套瓶　vase enclosed in reticulated envelope, the whole fired in one piece

双连瓶　twin (double) vase; Siamese twins

双耳瓶　amphora; vase with two ears

贯耳瓶　vase with pierced handles

穿带瓶　vase with two tape holes

灯笼尊　lantern-shaped vase; lantern jar

莱菔尊　turnip-shaped vase

马蹄尊　horse-hoof-shaped vase

凤尾尊　phoenix-tail-shaped vase

长颈瓶　flask; long-necked vase

盘口鹅颈瓶　vase with dish-shaped mouth and goose-neck

大吉瓶　"great luck" vase

三孔瓶　vase with "three spouts"

六管瓶　vase with six tubes; six-tubed vase

花觚　beaker；beaker-shaped vase

花插　flower receptacle

方瓶　square vase

壁瓶　wall vase

壶瓶　tall ewer with spout

净瓶　white vase；Holy-water vase

魂瓶　an ancient burial object mostly celadon in the shape of a jar

壶　pot；ewer；flask

茶（酒）壶　tea（wine）pot

执壶　vase or ewer with handle at the side

提梁壶　pot with over-top handle；swing-handled pot；vessel to be held and lifted by a handle passing over the cover；loop-handled teapot

唾壶　spittoon

三登方壶　vase with a three-terraced trapezoid body

鸡首壶　chicken-spout ewer

鸡冠壶　cockscomb pot

鹦鹉壶　parrot-head pot（ewer）

凤首壶　phoenix-head pot

僧帽壶　monk's cap jug

三系把壶　handled pot with three loops for suspension

贯耳穿带壶　pot with piercing handles and tape holes

马蹬壶　stirrup-shaped pot

卤壶　sauce-pot

扁壶　flask；flattened pot；pilgrim bottle

鼻烟壶　snuff bottle

温壶　warming vessel；vessel for warming wine in hot water

罐（甕、罂）　jar（commonly applied to substantial vessels more-or-less contracted towards the neck）

柳斗罐　jar with impressed willow twig design

乳丁罐　jar with nipple decoration

鱼篓罐　jar in the shape of a fishing basket

谷仓罐　model of granary

缸　urn（wide mouth vessel）

鸟食罐　container for bird's food；bird feeder

四系罐　jar with four rings

水注　water dropper

水浇　flower spinkler

渣斗　refuse-vessel

镂空花薰　palace（flower）perfumer with open-work

花卉漏斗　funnel with floral decorations

香铲　incense-spade

香薰（香炉）　incense-burner; vessel for burning perfume (perfumer)

坐墩　barrel-shaped garden seat

瓷枕　porcelain pillow

腰圆枕　oval pillow

银锭枕　ingot-shaped pillow

盒　small box with fitted cover often circular in shape

银锭式盒　box in the shape of a silver ingot

攒盘　plate set; sundry dish

攒盒　（参见 P240）

二人共饮餐具　tite-à-tête set（tea, coffee or chocolate service for two persons）

龙骨戟　segmented flanges（There are many vessels which have their bodies divided into fields or panels by vertical keel-like flanges, either running from top to bottom along the whole vessel, or only over one of its horizontal sections.）

直（横）出戟　vertical（horizontal）flanges

器物釉色
GLAZES AND COLORS OF VESSELS

深　deep（of colors）

浅　pale, light（of colors）

硬　strong（of colors）; hard（of substances）

软　soft（of colors and substances）

粉　powder（soft or light of colors）

淡　pale or insipid（of colors）

大　great（applied to colors in the sense of dark, rich, full）

白　white（of colors）

牙白　ivory white

月白　moon-white; light grayish-blue; "clair-de-lune"

甜白　sweet white

乳白　creamy white; milky white

莹白　pure white; transparent glaze

青　glaucous

绿　green

蓝　blue

秘色　private color; secret color; olive-green color

峰翠　verdure of mountain peaks

葱青（绿）　onion green; green of onion sprouts

瓜皮绿　cucumber green

苹果绿　apple green

翠青（绿）　blue-green; bright green; kingfisher blue

铜绿　copper green

窑变绿　green flambé

孔雀绿　peacock green; "turquoise blue"

鳝鱼青　eel green; dark bluish-green

雨过天晴　blue of the sky after rain

天青　sky blue (lighter and with a green tinge)

天兰　sky blue (with no tinge of green)

粉青（绿）　light greenish blue; powder blue (green)

浅青　lighter bluish gray

灰青　darker bluish gray (the color of wood ash)

豆青　light bluish green (the color of dried peas)

霁青　sky-clearing blue; "mazarine blue"; dark rich blue

影青　shadowy blue; misty blue

回回青　Mohammedan blue; fine cobalt blue; "mid-night blue"

苏泥　Sumani (Sumatra) blue

勃青　Bo-Qing (Penang blue)

陂塘（乐平）青　Po-Tang blue

卵青　egg blue

蟹青　crab green

吹青　sprayed blue; powdered blue; souffle blue; blown blue; (speckled blue ground)

冬（东）青　dong green; pale green; holly green

梅子青　plum green

青花　blue-and-white（painting in cobalt on a white ground）
老青花　old blue-and-white（Japanese“Ko-sometsuke”
青白　greenish white；bluish white
月光蓝　lavender-blue
砧青　Kinuta（Japanese word）
法蓝（绿、紫）　“fahua”blue（green，purple）
洒蓝　snow-flake blue
祭蓝　sacrificial blue
云蓝　cloud blue
青金蓝　lazurite blue
紫罗兰　violet blue
釉里（下）蓝　underglaze blue
青花加紫　blue-and-white with purple
紫　brown；red-brown；mahogany；violet；purple
紫金　brown bronze；ruddy brown；“cafe-au-lait”
葡萄紫　grape-purple
玫瑰紫　rose-purple
紫金釉　reddish purple
丁香紫　lilac color（in Jun ware）
茄皮紫　aubergine
窑变浅紫　flambé mauve
米色　light brown color of roasted rice；millet-colored；beige；straw-colored；yellowish brown
黄　yellow
娇黄　bright yellow；the fine，rich yellow of the Ming and Kangxi bowls and dishes
鳝鱼黄　eel yellow；greenish yellow
蔗黄　cane yellow
蛋黄　egg yellow
青黄　greenish yellow
褐　brown
黄褐　yellowish brown
御黄　imperial yellow
红　red
祭红　sacrificial red；ritual color
积红　“massed red”

霁红　"sky-clearing red"

鲜红　fresh red; bright red; blood red

宝石红（牛血红）　ruby red; precious stone red; ox blood red; "sang-de-boeuf"

豇豆红　kidney-bean red

辣椒红　chili red

桃红　peach blossom red

枣儿红　jujube red; date red

海棠红　begonia red

礬（铁）红　red from iron-oxide; iron-red; "rouge-de-fer"

铜红　copper-red

抹红　spread red

胭脂红　rouge red; crimson-pink

珊瑚红　coral-red

釉里（下）红　underglaze red; red within the glaze

粉红　soft red; pink

茶叶末　tea dust

铁锈　iron rust

酱釉　dark reddish brown

乌金　black bronze; ancient mirror black ("Black gold" is not admissible.)

纹　marks

鱼子纹　fish-roe mark

蟹爪纹　crab-claw mark

菟丝纹　dodder mark (a feature of Jun ware)

蚯蚓纹　earthworm mark (one of the feautures of Jun ware)

鸡皮纹　chicken flesh

桔皮纹　orange-peel effect

堆脂　massed fat or lard

泪痕　tear stains(resembling tears on the outer surface of Ding ware)

绺纹　silk mark; fortuitous crazing of the glaze

斑纹　streaks; mottles

兔毫斑　hare's-fur streaks (as on Jian ware)

鹧鸪斑　partridge mottles (as on Jian ware)

玳瑁斑　tortoise-shell marking

油滴斑　silvery spots; oil spots

红斑　red splashes

紫斑　purple mottles

铁斑　iron brown spots

黄斑　yellow mottles; "egg and spinach glaze"

滴珠　globules of glaze

窑变　furnace transmutation; flambe glaze; rouge flambe (Ware glaze is composed of relatively high concentrations of copper, which when fired produces flambe effects ranging from blue to red and deep purple. This is called flambe glaze.)

纹（开）片　crackle in a ceramic glaze

碎纹　crackle of more-or-less close mesh

冰裂纹　broken ice crackle; wide-mesh crackle

鳝血纹　eel's blood crackle

彩　colors in combination, variegated; enamel colors

三彩　decoration in three colors

唐三彩　Tang tricolor (Tang pottery in green, yellow and cream)

釉下彩　underglaze enamels (in green, yellow and aubergine)

五彩　polychrome; five-colored (porcelains with decoration in green, yellow, aubergine, red and blue)

斗彩　contending colors; strongly contrasting colors (In this decoration a bright red enamel is contrasted with enamels in softer colors and a soft underglaze blue.)

粉彩（软彩）　pink family; "famille rose" (French name for a style of imported Chinese porcelain. The predominant color of the design or ground color is pink.); soft color

绿彩（硬彩）　green family; "famille verte" (French name for a style of imported Chinese porcelain. The predominant color of the design or ground color is green.); strong color

墨彩（黑彩）　grisaille family; "famille noire" (French name for a style of imported Kangxi's porcelain; The predominant color of the design or ground color is black.); black color

黄彩　Yellow family; "famille jaune" (French name for a style of imported Kangxi's porcelain; The predominant color of the design or ground color is yellow.)

珐琅彩　cloisonne enamel
钴兰彩　painted in cobalt blue
织金彩　woven gold color
胭脂彩　"rouge ware"
广彩　Guang color; Guangdong-decorated export ware
广蓝　Canton blue (violet blue obtained by the combination of barium carbonate 硝酸钾钡 with cobalt oxide 氧化钴)
加彩　clobbering; added color
点彩　with colored splashes; stippling decoration
釉上（下）彩　overglaze (underglaze) enamel
青釉绿（褐）彩　celadon glaze with green (brown) color
浅黄三彩　tricolor with tender yellow
黄釉褐（绿）彩　yellow glaze and brownish green color
素三彩　on-biscuit enamels; painted on a plain porcelain body in three colors; plain tricolor
天目釉　"Temmoku" (Japanese) glaze
淡清釉　"cafe au lait" glaze
白地墨花　"black on white" ware
紫口铁足　"purple mouth and iron foot"
洁白如玉　pure white like jade
细白如粉　fine and white like powder
莹白腴润　unctuous and lustrous
白中透灰　white with a tinge of gray
白釉微黄　white glaze with a tinge of light yellow
天青窑变灰黄　glazed in sky blue-green with flembé yellowish-grey
青色微含浅粉　blue faintly tinged with light pink
浅黄细纹密布　to net on the surface with fine yellowish crackles
足底外露白胎　The bottom of the foot reveals white biscuit.
粉青微呈淡碧　The light greenish-blue glaze is slightly tinged with light green
釉色青中泛黄　The glaze looks dark green tinted with yellow
青花蓝中泛紫　The blue and white color smacks of purple.

器物纹饰
DECORATIONS OF VESSELS

花饰　floral decoration; flowers

印花　stamped (or impressed) decoration

锥花（刻花）　incised decoration (drawn in the paste with a pointed instrument)

雕花（划花）　decoration carved in the paste; underglaze relief decoration

刻划花　incised and carved design

画花（彩花）　painted decoration

堆花　embossed decoration; "pâte-sur-pâte" (ornament luted into the body and carved in relief)

暗花　veiled decoration; hidden decoration; secret decoration (decoration lightly incised in porcelain paste)

明珐花　Ming cloisonne-style decoration

透花　transparent design; rice grains (grains-de-riz)

贴花　applied floral design

剔花　cut decoration

剪纸贴花　applied paper-cut design

露胎贴花　applique design with exposed body

雕填　designs carved in the paste and filled in with colored glazes

描金　（参见 P245）

抹金　to cover with gold; gold applied to the whole of the glazed surface

珍珠地　over a pearl-pattern ground

白地黑花　floral design over a white ground

锦地　brocade ground

开光　reserved panels

梅花　prunus blossom

莲花　lotus flower

莲蓬　lotus seed-pod

钩莲纹　delineated lotus design

番莲　Indian lotus

牡丹　tree-peony

菊花　chrysanthemum

兰花　orchid

月桂　laurel

丁香　clove

水仙花　narcissus

海棠花　cydonia

秋葵　hibiscus

玉兰　magnolia

牵牛花　petunia; morning glory

玫瑰　rose

山茶花　wild camellia

艾叶纹　artemisia leaf design

藤萝　wistaria

灵芝　Ling Zhi (an herb of immortality)

百花　hundred flowers ("mille flours")

四季花　flowers of the four seasons (usually prunus, peony, lotus and chrysanthemum)

菱花　water chestnuts

转花　a band of floral arabesques

缠枝花　interlocking flower

八瓣花　eight-petal flower

花果朵　clusters of flowers or fruits

缠枝　winding branches; arabesques

折枝　plucked branches; disconnected sprays of flowers or fruit

过枝　overextended branches

蔓草纹　entwining vines

碧桃花　double-flowering peach blossom

佛手　"Buddha's hand"; the finger citrus

三多　the Three Abundances (a decoration comprising three clusters of fruit — the finger-citrus, peach and pomegranate)

三友　the Three Friends (a name given to decoration of pine, bamboo and prunus)

四方　the Four Quadrants: the White Tiger (west), the Dragon (east), the Phoenix (south) and the Tortoise (north)

四艺　the Four Elegant Accomplishments: music (Zither), checkers (checker-board and container for the pieces), calligraphy (two books) and painting (two picture scrolls)

四灵　the Four Intelligent Creatures (unicorn, phoenix, turtle

and dragon)

五蝠　Five Bats (meaning five blessings — longevity, ease, wealth, honor and joy)

五岳　the Five Peaks (meaning the five sacred mountains of China, i. e. Taishan in Shandong Province; Huashan in Shaanxi Province; Hengshan in Hunan Province; Hengshan in Shanxi Province; and Songshan in Henan Province)

八卦　the Eight Divinatory Trigrams (Each consists of a combination of three parallel lines, either complete or broken medially.)

阴阳　Yin-Yang, the symbol of the dualistic cosmogony of the Chinese. It consists of a circle divided into two equal halves by an S-shaped line passing through the center. One half of the circle is colored dark (Yin), the other light (Yang). The latter relates to the male, Heaven, the Sun and light, and the former to the female, Earth, the Moon and darkness.

八宝　the Eight Emblems, or Treasures (consist of a pearl, a coin, a rhomboid device of doubtful significance, a mirror, a sonorous stone, two books, two rhinocerous horns and an artemisia leaf)

八吉祥　the Eight Buddhist Emblems of good augury (the wheel of the law, the conchshell, the umbrella, the canopy, the lotus, the jar, a pair of fish and the mystic endless knot)

八音　the Eight Musical Instruments: Qing (sonorous stone 磬), Zhong (bell 钟), Qin (Zither 琴), Di (flute 笛), Zhu (wooden instrument 柷) Sheng (the mouth-organ 笙), Gu (drum 鼓) and Xun (a kind of ocarina 埙)

穆王八马　the Eight Steeds of King Mu

八仙　the Eight Immortals

百寿　the Hundred Shou (the hundred different forms of the Chinese character for longevity)

鸿宝　Taoist emblems for immortality

法宝　Buddhist emblems (including charms incorporating figures

of Buddhas, etc.)

百古　the Hundred Antiques of ancient ritual vessels, insignia of rank, etc.

梵文　Sanskrit or Pali script

真言字　texts from the sutras in Sanskrit

鸟兽纹　（参见 P129）

鸡　chickens

野鸡（雉鸡）　pheasant

仙鹤　crane

孔雀　peacock

凤凰　phoenix

穿花凤　phoenixes flying among flowers

凫雁　wild ducks and geese

鸳鸯　mandarin duck

鹦鹉　parrot

黄鹂　oriole

鹌鹑　quail

喜鹊　magpie

鹳鸽　mynah

燕子　swallow

麻雀　sparrows

竹雀　sparrows among bamboo

龙　（参见 P129）

云龙　dragon among clouds

海水龙　dragon among waves

控珠龙　dragons grasping pearls

赶珠龙　dragons in pursuit of pearls; pearl-pursuiting dragon

蟠龙纹　design of coiled dragons

狮子　（参见 P30）

狮子滚绣球　lions sporting with ornamental balls

麒麟　the unicorn; a fabulous animal of good omen

百鹿　the Hundred Deer

云蝠　bats among clouds

蝴蝶　butterfly

螳螂　mantis

蛤蟆　toad

蟾蜍　a three-legged toad
山水人物　scenery and figures
美人图　beauties；graceful ladies
婴戏图　children at play；playing boys
耕织图　design of farm work and weaving
故事图　scenes from novels，romances and plays
仙女跨凤　Nymphs riding on phoenixes
吹箫引凤　to play flageolet to lure phoenix
丹凤朝阳　phoenix facing the Sun
天禄流云　deer among moving clouds
边　a border
云边　cloud-scroll borders
海水江牙　crested waves，as at the base of a decoration
法花　within raised border
雷纹　（参见 P244）
珠纹（团花）　medallions
篮纹　basket pattern
篦纹　comb pattern
花束纹　posy design
几何纹　geometric design
忍冬纹　acanthus design
宝相纹　（参见 P223）
垂叶纹　leaf-shaped lappet
蕉叶纹　plantain leaf design
莲瓣纹　lotus-petal design
缠枝花　（参见 P159）
花蝶纹　（参见 P242）
蔓草凤草纹　entwining vines and phoenix design
鱼藻纹　fish and water-weed design
菱形纹　rhomboid forms
方格纹　trellis pattern；check design
格子纹　lattice pattern
方胜纹　（参见 P259）
乳丁纹　（参见 P129）
人字纹　zigzag pattern
万字纹　swastika pattern

涡纹　whorl design
涛（浪花）纹　wave pattern
人面纹　human-mask design
钱纹　cask pattern （in the shape of a round coin with a square hole in the center）
绳纹　rope pattern；cord （or string） impressions
绹纹　twisted cord design
斜条（线）纹　oblique strip （slanted-line） design
直纹　perpendicular pattern
布纹　textile impression
回纹　（参见 P129）
弦纹　（参见 P129）
团花纹　medallion；posy design
柳斗纹　willow twig design
条纹　stripe decoration
席纹　mat-impression
锦纹　brocade design
网纹　（参见 P243）
鼓丁　drum-nail pattern
福寿双全　both fortune and longevity
七弦纹　design of seven bow-strings in relief
凸雕　decoration in relief

陶瓷器物选
SELECTED POTTERY AND PORCELAIN

红陶三足鬶　Red pottery Gui （tripod-pitcher）
红陶布纹碗　Red pottery bowl with textile impressions
白陶双系壶　White pottery Hu （jar） with two loops at neck
黑陶细颈镂空高足杯　Black pottery Bei （cup） with thin neck and tall openwork stem
印纹硬陶罐　Stained hard-pottery Guan （jar）
斜方格纹彩陶罐　Painted pottery Guan （jar） with rhomboid forms
硬釉原始青瓷尊　Hard-glazed protoceladon Zun （cup）
青釉刻划花纹杯　Celadon Bei （cup） with incised floral design

青瓷凤首壶 Celadon Hu (pot) with phoenix-head spout

青瓷莲花尊 Celadon Zun (cup) with lotus pattern

三彩釉陶灯台 Dengtai (candlestick), three-color glazed pottery

彩绘陶壶 Pottery Hu (pot) with painted design

彩绘乐舞杂技陶俑 (参见 P9)

菊纹三彩珐花瓶 Three-colored Fahua vase with design of chrysanthemums

绿釉六博陶俑 Green glazed pottery figurines of backgammon players

红釉高足碗 High-stemmed bowl, red-glazed porcelain

白釉葵口盘 White glazed Pan (plate) with upper rim shaped like mallow petals

白釉刻花净瓶 White glazed porcelain holy-water vase with incised floral design

白瓷鸡冠扁壶 White porcelain flask decorated with a cockscomb

德花窑观音像 Porcelain statue of Buddisattva Avalokitesvara, Dehua ware

青白釉龙柄壶 Bluish white glazed porcelain Hu (jar) with dragon-shaped handle

浅灰青釉出戟尊 Zun (cup) with vertical flanges, light grayish blue glaze

青白釉酒壶和温酒碗 Covered ewer and warmer, bluish white glaze

细裂纹褐釉胆瓶 Gall-shapedvase, crackled brownish glaze

釉里红松竹梅纹盖瓶 Covered underglazed red porcelain vase with pine-bamboo-prunus design

青绿釉里雕牡丹纹瓶 Vase with design of peony sprays in relief, under bluish green glaze

青花僧帽壶 Blue-and-white monk's cap Hu (jug)

青花八宝纹香壶 Blue-and-white Hu (pot) with design of the Eight Buddhist emblems in the style of bronze He (wine vessel)

青花釉里鸳鸯莲花纹盘 Blue-and-white porcelain plate with underglaze decoration of mandarin ducks and lotus

影青缠枝卷叶纹瓷瓶　Ying qing (shadowy blue) porcelain vase with interlocking branch and leaf design

描金云龙纹直颈瓶　Straight-necked vase with cloud and dragon design in gold tracery

釉下蓝和釉上彩婴戏纹斗彩杯　Doucai (contending colors) porcelain cup within underglaze blue and overglaze polychrome enamel decoration of children playing

釉下蓝釉上彩镂空云凤纹五彩瓶　Wucai (five colors) porcelain vase with underglaze blue, overglaze polychrome enamel, and openwork decoration of phoenix and clouds

釉上彩镀金鸟莲纹五彩尊　Wucai (five colors) porcelain Zun (vase) with overglaze polychrome enamel and gilt design of birds and lotus

釉上彩镂空刻花纹素三彩香薰　Susancai (plain tricolor) porcelain censer with floral decoration in overglaze polychrome enamel, incesing, and openwork

釉上彩牡丹花纹粉彩瓷瓶　Fencai (famille rose) porcelain vase with overglaze polychrome enamel decoration of peony flowers

粉彩鹌鹑猎纹天球瓶　Globular vase with famille rose quail and hunting scene

蓝地珐琅彩缠枝花纹瓶　Vase decorated with interlocking sprays in cloisonné enamel over a blue ground

多彩雉鸡牡丹花纹白瓷瓶　White porcelain vase with polychrome enamel decoration of pheasants and peony flowers

白釉黑花褐彩花卉罐　White glazed jar with floral design in black and brown

斗彩八挂炉　Porcelain burner with the Eight Trigrams in Doucai (contending colors)

窑变绿釉瓶　Green flambé glazed porcelain vase

定窑白瓷暗花瓶　White porcelain vase with veiled ornamentation, Ding ware

龙泉窑雕龙纹瓷罐　Porcelain jar with dragon design in relief, Longquan ware

耀窑刻花青釉三足盖罐　Celadon covered tripod with incised floral design, Yao ware

釉里红梅竹纹笔盒　Brush box with design of prunus and bamboo in underglaze red

釉里红地白龙纹盖罐　Covered jar with dragon design in white on undergalze red ground

绿地黄缠枝花纹高足碗　Bowl with high foot and design of interlocking sprays in yellow enamel on green ground

青花斗彩鸳鸯莲池纹侈口碗　Bowl with flared mouth and design of mandarin ducks and lotus pond in Doucai enamel

青花缠枝牡丹纹兽耳盖罐　Under glaze blue covered jar with animal-mask handles and design of peony scrolls

青花狮子滚绣球墩　Blue-and-white garden seat with design of lion sporting with ball

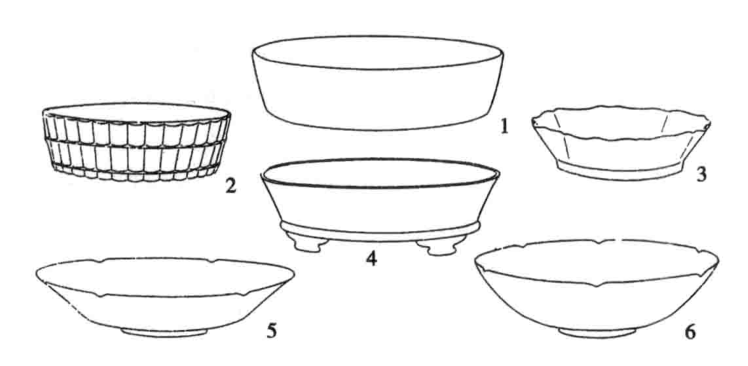
仿官青釉觚　Gu（goblet）with Southern Song imperial kiln type glaze

黑釉铁绣花四系瓶　Black glazed brown vase with iron rust decoration and four handles

黑釉蓝斑腰鼓　Black glazed waist drum with blue mottles

粉彩婴戏纹双连瓶　Fencai "Siamese Twins" vase with polychrome enamel decoration of children at play

典型陶瓷器样式（线图）
SOME TYPICAL CERAMIC SHAPES (LINE DRAWING)

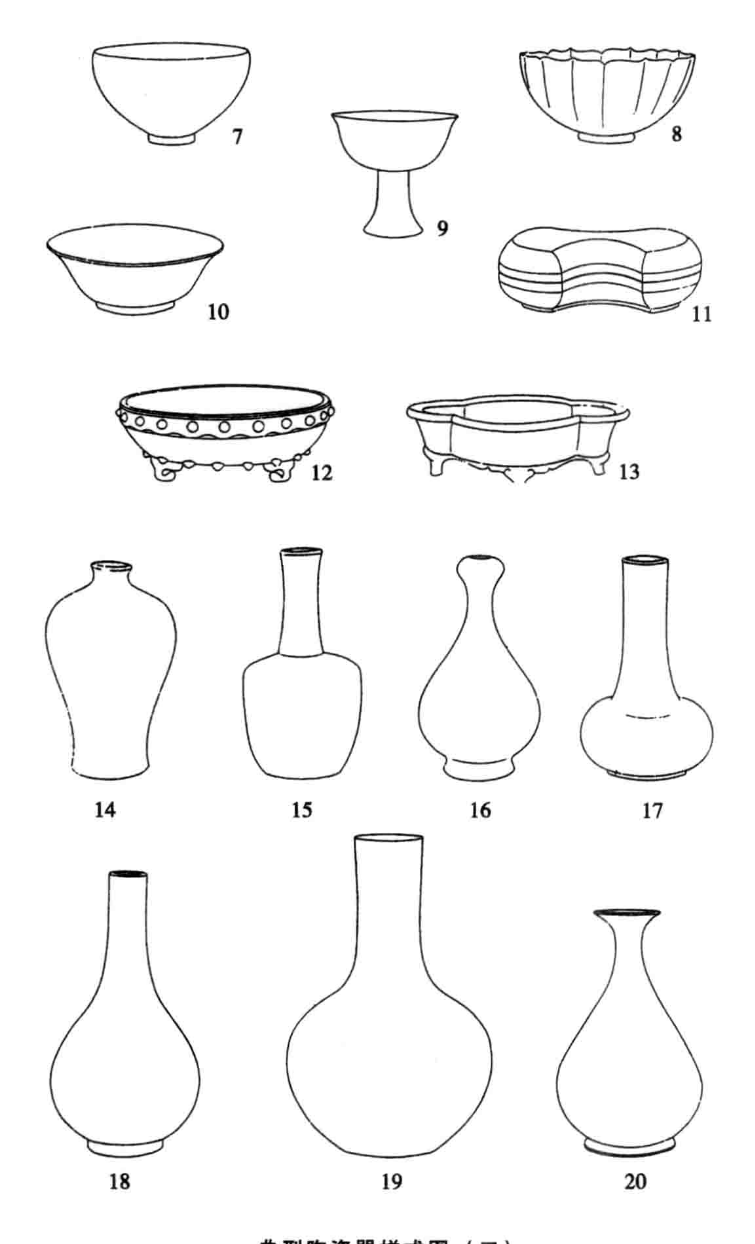


典型陶瓷器样式图（一）

1）糖锣洗 2）蔗段洗 3）菱花碗 4）水仙盆 5）葵瓣口碗 6）葵瓣口碗

Some Typical Ceramic Shapes Ⅰ

1）*tang-luo xi*　2）*zhe-duan xi*　3）*ling-hua wan*　4）*shui-xian pen*　5、6）*kui-ban-kou-wan*

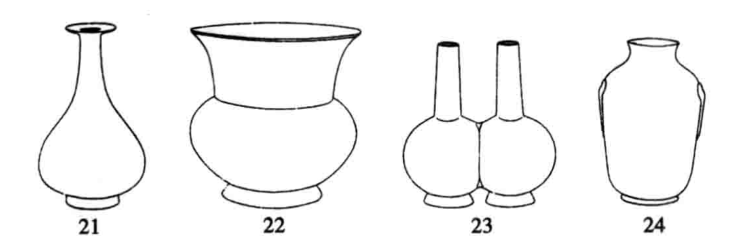


典型陶瓷器样式图（二）

7）宫碗　8）莲花碗　9）高足碗　10）撇口碗　11）银锭式盒　12）鼓式洗　13）秋海棠式　14）梅瓶　15）纸槌瓶　16）蒜头瓶　17）荸荠瓶　18）胆瓶　19）天球瓶　20）玉壶春瓶

Some Typical Ceramic Shapes Ⅱ

7）*gong wan*　8）*lian-hua wan*　9）*gao-zu wan*　10）*pie-kou wan*　11）*yin-ding-shi he*　12）*gu-shi xi*　13）*qiu hai-tang-shi*　14）*mei ping*　15）*zhi-chui ping*　16）*suan-tou ping*　17）*bi-qi ping*　18）*dan ping*　19）*tian-qiu ping*　20）*yu-hu-chun ping*



典型陶瓷器样式图（三）

21）盘口瓶　22）渣斗式　23）双连瓶　24）灯笼尊

Some Typical Ceramic Shapes Ⅲ

21）*pan-kou ping*　22）*zha-dou shi*　23）*shuang-lian ping*　24）*deng-long zun*

十　玉　器
JADE WARE

玉石名称
NAMES OF JADES, GEMS AND GEMSTONES

玉　jade；gems；gemstones

硬玉　jadeite（belongs to the group of augite or pyroxene（辉石）；it is as tough as nephrite but surpasses it in specific gravity（比重）and attains the somewhat higher grade of hardness 6.5 – 7）

软玉　nephrite（belongs to the group of the hornblendes（角闪石）or amphibole（闪石）；its hardness does not quite attain grade 6，but it is particularly tough owing to its complicated structure）

翠玉（翡翠）　jadeite；chrysolite

青玉　green jade

碧玉　jasper；dark green nephrite

绿玉（绿宝石）　emerald

蓝宝石　sapphire；aquamarine

墨玉（黑宝石）　jet；dark jade；black jade

红玉（红宝石）　ruby；jacinth

黄玉　yellow jade；topaz

紫翠玉（金绿宝石）　alexandrite

红翡　red jadeite

绿翠　green jadeite

菠菜玉　spinach jade；the dark green Siberian nephrite

羊脂玉　mutton-fat jade；pure white nephrite

钻石　diamond

（白）玛瑙　agate

红玛瑙　sardonyx；carnelian

条纹玛瑙　onyx

紫玛瑙　violet agate；lavender agate

水晶　crystal；rock crystal；clear quartz

发（棕）晶　hair crystal

茶晶　tea crystal；cairngorm（found in the Cairngorm Mountains of Scotland）

墨晶　（参见 P297）

红晶（石榴石）　garnet；rose crystal

紫晶（紫石英）　amethyst；violet quartz

蓝晶　aquamarine

珊瑚　coral

琥珀　amber

云珀（蜜蜡琥珀）　cloudy amber

珍珠　pearl

蛋白石　opal

天青石（青金石）　lapis lazuli；lazurite

孔雀石　malachite

绿松石（土耳其石）　turquoise

碧玺（电石）　tourmaline

萤石　fluorite；fluor-spar

滑石（皂石、冻石）　steatite；soap-stone

金星石　aventurine

芙蓉石　rose quartz

血石　blood-stone

寿山石（蛇纹石）　a serpentine quarried at Shou Shan，Fujian；Shoushan stone

绿蛇纹石　bowenite

青田石　a greenish serpentine found in Qingtian，Zhejiang；Qingtian stone

岫岩石　a serpentine of jade-like appearance quarried at Xiuyan，Liaoning；Xiuyan stone

田黄石　a honey-colored stone；Tianhuang stone

鸡血石　（参见 P297）

猫眼石　cat's-eye stone

虎眼石　tiger's eye stone

玳瑁　turtle；tortoise shell

木变石　petrified wood; woodstone

玉石琢工
LAPIDARY'S CRAFT

琢磨　to carve and polish (jade); to work hardstones by grinding; to carve gems

璞　uncut gem-stones; common stones as opposed to precious or semi-precious stones

硬度　grade of hardness

比重　specific gravity

玞玉　lapidary stones resembling jade but of inferior quality

子玉　jade pebbles; jade from river beds

山料　mined jade

莹润　the rich unctuous quality of well-polished fine jade

木头　the "water", or pellucid quality of fine jade

镌刻　to engrave (or carve) surface decoration

玲珑　fine open-work carving

琢玉砂　the abrasive sand used to cut and grind jade

黄砂　yellow sand; quartz sand

红砂　red sand; crushed almandine garnets

黑砂（金刚砂）　black sand; crushed black corundum; emery

砂纸（轮）　emery paper (wheel)

宝药　precious powder; the jade-polishing medium

觿　Xi, a short pointed instrument; a knot-opener

昆吾刀　Kunwu knife, a traditional tool of ancient jade carver

鬼斧神工　uncanny workmanship; superlative craftsmanship; craftsmanship of exceptional skill

玉　器
JADE WARE

瑞玉　Ritual Jades

璧　Bi, a flat disk having a circular concentric orifice in the center (the symbol of the deity Heaven)

环　Huan, a disk with a larger orifice than that of the Bi

瑗　Yuan, a disk with an orifice still larger than that of the Huan

琮　Cong, a hollow tube of cylindrical section enclosed by a rectangular body (the symbol of the deity Earth)

珪　Gui, an enlongated tablet or flat sceptre (the symbol of the Eastern Quarter)

璋　Zhang, a tablet in the form of half of a pointed Gui (the symbol of the Southern Quarter)

璜　Huang, a tablet in the form of half a Bi (the symbol of the Northern Quarter)

琥　Hu, a jade ornament in the shape of a tiger, and for military use (the symbol of the Western Quarter)

珑　Long, as a jade of dragon design used for prayer in time of drought

玦　Jue, an incomplete (split) penannular ring; a ring from which a segment has been cut

璿玑　Xuan Ji, a disk with serrated edge and central orifice, believed to be an astonomical instrument

磬　Qing, chime stone or jade, designed to emit a musical note when struck

特磬　Te Qing, a sonorous stone suspended separately

编磬　Bian Qing, a chime of sonorous stones

琀　Han, a gem placed in the mouth of the dead; commonly in the form of a cicada; archaic jade cicada

瑱（充耳）　Tian, Chong-er, ear-plugs or ear-stuffer used in dressing a corpse

辟邪　Pi Xie, used to ward off evil influences; thus a charm or an amulet; archaic jade winged beast

珮　Pei, worn at the waist; a set of girdle ornaments; a pendant

珩　Heng, an archaic jade girdle ornament

钗　Chai, a hairpin

璂　Ji, a cap ornament

带钩　（参见 P128）

带扣　（参见 P128）

带头　Dai Tou, archaic jade belt ring

带环　Dai Huan, ring to engage with clothing hook

朝带　Chao Dai, court girdle in which are set plaques of jade

剑饰　sword fittings

璏　Wei or Zhi, slotted jade fitting attached to sword-scabbard

琫　Feng, jade sword-guard; jade sword pendant

珌　Bi, chape attached to the lower end of the scabbard

璲　Sui, scabbard slide

戒指　finger-ring

扳指（韘）　archer's ring

珠串　necklace

朝珠　court beads

胸针　brooch

项链　necklet

手镯　bracelet

把玩　fondling pieces

玲珑剔透的玉雕　exquisitely wrought jade carvings

碧玉花薰　jasper flower perfumer

寿山　longevity hills; boulders of jade carved to represent mountains with forests, torrents, buildings, human figures, etc., on their slopes

大禹开山治水　Emperor Yu opening mountains to control the flood (more than 7 feet high and 3 feet wide)

玉山子"大禹治水图"　a rock-shaped jade article carved with the picture of Emperor Yu controlling the flood; a poem composed by Emperor Qianlong is inscribed on it.

玉山子"会昌九老图"　a rock-shaped jade article carved with the picture of Bai Juyi, a famous poet of the Tang Dynasty, meeting eight old men

玉山子"秋山行旅图"　a rock-shaped jade article carved with the picture of walking on a mountain in autumn

白玉牌"鹤鹿同春"　white jade rectangular pendant carved with crane and deer

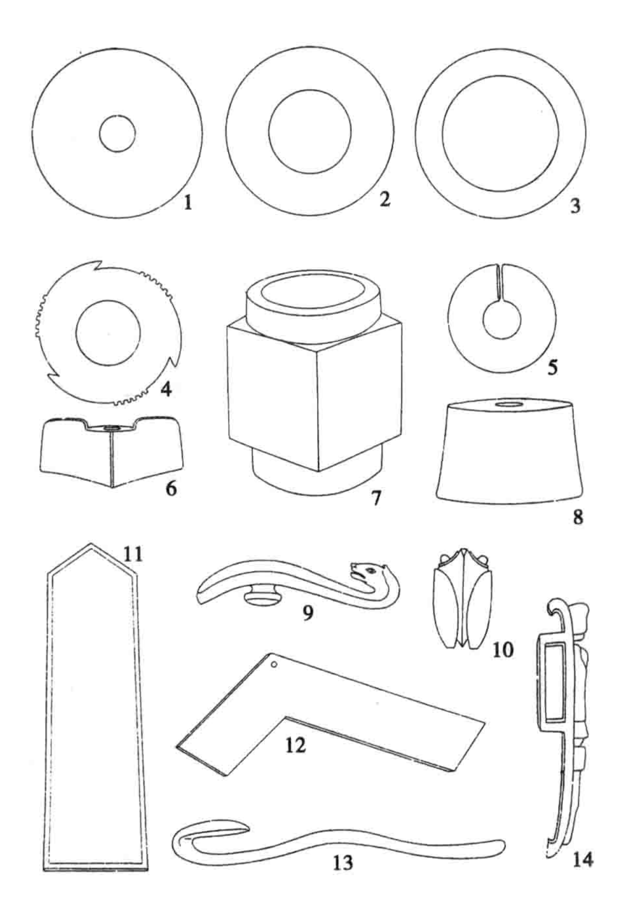
桐荫仕女图　garden scene with moon door afar, with a young woman on either side inscribed with encomium and poem by Emperor Qianlong

金缕玉衣　（参见 P9）

银缕玉衣　funerary garment made of jade plates linked by silver wire

瑞玉和其他玉器样式（线图）

SOME TYPES OF RITUAL AND OTHER JADES (LINE DRAWING)



瑞玉和其他玉器样式图

1）璧　2）环　3）瑗　4）璿玑　5）玦　6）琫　7）琮　8）珌
9）带钩　10）琀　11）珪　12）磬　13）如意　14）璏

Some Types of Ritual and Other Jades

1）*bi*　2）*huan*　3）*yuan*　4）*xuan ji*　5）*jue*　6）*feng*　7）*cong*
8）*bi*　9）*dai gou*　10）*han*　11）*gui*　12）*qing*　13）*ru-yi*　14）*zhi*

十一 书 法
CALLIGRAPHY

文房用具
THE INSTRUMENTS FOR WRITING

文具　writing materials (or accessories)

四宝　the four treasures — paper, ink block, brush and ink slab

毛笔　writing brush (usually made of the hair of animals such as goat, weasel, rabbit and others)

羊毫　sheep's (or goat's) hair (or wool)

狼毫　weasel's hair

紫毫(兔毫)　purple hare's (or rabbit's) hair

霜毫(兔毫)　white hare's hair

鹿毫　deer's hair

獾毫　badger's hair

鸡毫　chicken's soft feather

棕毫　palm coir

兼毫　mixed hair

鬃毫　pig's (or horse's) hair

貂毫　marten's hair

花毫　colored hair

墨　inkstick; inkcake; inkblock

湖笔徽墨　Hu-brush (made in Huzhou) and Hui-inkstick (made in Huizhou)

宣纸　Xuan-paper (suitable for writing)

生宣　raw Xuanzhou paper

熟宣　processed Xuanzhou paper

单宣　single Xuanzhou paper

夹宣　lined Xuanzhou paper

二层夹　double-lined Xuanzhou paper
三层夹　triple-lined Xuanzhou paper
罗纹　rib-like grain paper
龟纹　tortoise-shell grain paper
扎花　embroidery grain paper
砚　inkslab；inkstone
端砚　Duan-inkstone（made in Duanxi，Guangdong Province）
歙砚　She-inkstone（made in Shexian，Anhui Province）
洮河砚　Taohe-inkstone（made in Lintao，Gansu Province）
澄泥砚　Chengni-inkstone（made of settled mud in Shanxi Province）
笔筒　brush pot（or barrel，or holder）
笔管（桿）　shaft；stem
笔帽（套）　cap for writing brush
笔搁　brush rest（or rack）
笔洗　（参见 P148）
笔舔　ink pallet
水注　（参见 P152）
水丞　（参见 P148）
臂搁　arm-rest
印章　（参见 P203）
印色盒　seal vermilion box
镇纸　paper weight
烟油墨汁　lampblack ink
消除器　eraser
战国笔　writing brush of the Warring States Period
白马作笔　writing brush with the inscription "Bai Ma Zuo"
彩漆云龙管笔　calligraphy brush with polychrome lacquer stem with pattern of dragon and clouds
乾隆御题十色墨　ten colored inkcakes with Qianlong Emperor's inscription
百子图墨　inkcake with "Hundred Children at Play" motif
明代方于鲁墨　ink made by Fang Yulu of the Ming Dynasty
明代程君房墨　ink made by Cheng Junfang of the Ming Dynasty
清代曹素功墨　ink made by Cao Sugong of the Qing Dynasty
松花石壶卢砚　Songhua inkstone in the shape of a gourd

北宋百一砚　inkstone with 101 holes at the bottom, Northern Song Dynasty

书　体
DIFFERENT STYLES OF WRITING

古字体　paleography

古文书学家（古字体研究者）　paleographer

古文字　ancient scripts

象形字　ideographs (on early bronze vessels; known as Zhong Ding Wen 钟鼎文); pictographs; hieroglyphs

鸟虫书　（参见 P296）

蝌蚪文　tadpole script

古文　ancient script (introduced by Cang Jie（仓颉）in legendary times)

籀文　writing as developed by Shi Zhou（史籀）in the Eastern Zhou Dynasty (770 – 221 B. C.)

甲骨文　inscriptions on bones or tortoise shells of the Shang Dynasty (c. 16th – 11th century B. C.); oracle-bones inscription

石鼓文　(475 – 221 B. C.) （参见 P184）

魏碑　tablet inscriptions of the Northern Wei Dynasty (386 – 534 A. D.); inscriptions in tablet style (first used in Northern Wei Dynasty)

竹书　inscriptions on bamboo slips (supposedly in the 4th century A. D.)

飞白　flying white style of writing (first used by Cai Yong 蔡邕)

篆书　（参见 P295）

大篆　greater seal; majuscule script (invented or introduced by Shi Zhou 史籀)

小篆　lesser seal; minuscule script (introduced by Li Si 李斯)

隶书　official script; clerical style; chancery script (invented by Cheng Miao 程邈)

楷书　regular script; uncial script; clerkly script; model style (introduced by Zhong You 钟繇)

大楷　regular script in big characters

小楷　regular script in small characters

行书　semi-cursive script; running script (or hand); a style between regular script and cursive script

草书　cursive script; draft script; rapid writing; manuscript writing; rustic script; "grass script"

狂草　wild cursive script

行草　running-cursive script

章草　a style of cursive script, originated by Shi You (史游) of the Han Dynasty, so named because it was chiefly used in a memorial 章奏. It is also written in "memorial-used cursive script".

瘦金体　slender gold script

八分书（汉代）　eighty percent style of writing (Han Dynasty)

八　法
THE EIGHT BRUSH-STROKES

横（"一"，如列阵之排云）　dash — like a continuous, horizontal cloud (stratus), scarcely visible but with a definite outline

点（"丶"，如高峰坠石）　dot — like a stone falling from a high precipice, bumping as if it would break to pieces.

左下撇（"丿"，如犀角、象牙之锋利　downstroke to the left — sharp enough to sever the horn of a rhinoceros or the tusk of an elephant

右下勾（"乚"，如弹弓之射弹）　downstroke to the right with a hook — like the firing of a heavy charge from a catapult

竖下垂（"丨"，如万岁枯藤）　perpendicular downstroke — as straight as the drooping branch of an old vine

捺（"㇏"，如海岸之激浪或如闪电）　wave-like stroke — like the breakers on a coast line or like streaks of lightning

弓勾（"亅"，如绷紧之臂或拉紧之弓）　bow-like stroke — like a taut arm or a stiff bow

月勾（"㇈"，状如新月）　thin crescent — like that of the new moon

"永" 字八法

The Eight Brush-Strokes of the Character "Yong"



点（"侧"）　1. the dot（"sidelong"）

横（"勒"）　2. the dash（"bridle-bit"）

竖（"努"）　3. the perpendicular stroke（"strength"）

勾（"趯"）　4. the hook（"a foot in the act of kicking"）

提（"策"）　5. the upstroke to the right（"a staff"）

撇（"掠"）　6. the downstroke to the left（"a flogging stick"）

短撇（"啄"）　7. the downstroke to the left（"like the peck of woodpecker"）

捺（"磔"）　the downstroke to the right（"like the slash of a sharp weapon"）

"永" 字八法（传王羲之）　the Eight Brushstrokes of the Character "Yong" attributed to Wang Xizhi

品评标准
STANDARDS FOR JUDGING BEAUTIFUL WRITING

神　Shen: a style full of spirit, energy of vivacity

气　Qi: representing the strength of brush-strokes

韵　Yun: the rhythm or balance

味　Wei: the aesthetic quality

笔锋有力　The brush-strokes must be vigorous.

笔触简洁　a simple, light touches

匀称谐调　There must be balance or rhythm.

字体传神　The artistic spirit of the writer, who must control the style of his writing.

传神之笔　a vivid touch in writing

笔力苍劲　the writing in bold, vigorous strokes

败笔　worn-down brush

硬笔　stiff brush

软笔　soft brush

其 他
OTHERS

纸（绢）本　original form written on paper (silk)

拓本　form of rubbings taken from ancient stones on which characters were incised.

抄本　manuscript

字帖　specimens of the writings (original rubbings bound as albums); models for calligraphy

碑帖　rubbings from stone tablets

法帖　rubbings of standard autographs; standard calligraphic specimens; famous specimens of calligraphy

临帖　practice calligraphy after a model

对联　antithetic couplets

联句　parallel phrases

楹联　pillar couplets

条幅（贴落）　ornamental hanging; vertical scroll

横披（轴）　horizontal scroll

春联　good-luck slogans; Spring Festival couplets; New Year couplets

中堂　large size vertical scroll; central scroll

斗方　square scroll (or sheet)

匾额　horizontal tablet over a door; horizontal inscribed board

招牌　sign-board; shop sign

题跋　remarks on scrolls of calligraphy

题诗　（参见 P203）

题签　book title written on book cover; a label with the title of a book on it

题款　inscription; dedication

上款　inscription to a person on a scroll

下款　signature in a scroll

书简（札） letters; correspondence

书法家 calligrapher; calligraphist

吮笔（润毫） to lick the brush

喫墨 to feed on ink

悬腕 with the wrist raised, i. e. not touching the desk (when writing big Chinese characters)

振笔直书 take up the brush and write vigorously

法书精品
MASTERPIECES OF CALLIGRAPHY

法帖 model calligraphy; standard calligraphic specimens

三希堂法帖 famous specimens of calligraphy in San Xi Tang (Hall of Three Rare Specimens of Calligraphy)

草书《中秋帖》 "The Mid Autumn" in cursive script by Wang Xianzhi 王献之, Eastern Jin Dynasty

行书《伯远帖》 "The Bo Yuan" in running script or "Letter to Bo Yuan" in running script by Wang Xun (王珣), Eastern Jin Dynasty

行书《快雪时晴帖》 "The Kuai Xue Shi Qing" ("The Clear Sky after Snow") in running script by Wang Xizhi (王羲之), Eastern Jin Dynasty

草书《平复帖》 "The Recovery from Illness" in cursive script or "A Consoling Letter" in cursive script by Lu Ji (陆机), Western Jin Dynasty

行书《兰亭序》(修禊帖) "The Gathering at Orchid Pavilion" or "Purification at Orchid Pavilion" in running script by Wang Xizhi (王羲之) (considered to be the most valuable calligraphic work)

行书《祭侄文稿》 "Draft Manuscript of a Memorial to his Nephew" in running script by Yan Zhenqing (颜真卿), Tang Dynasty

行草《张好好诗》 "Song of Zhang Haohao" in running-cursive script by Du Mu (杜牧), Tang Dynasty

草书《怀素自叙帖》 "Autobiography" in cursive script by Huai Su, Tang Dynasty

行草《神仙起居法》 "Massage Technique for Achieving Immortality" in running-cursive script by Yang Ningshi (杨凝式), Five Dynasties

狂草《诸上座帖》 "Sayings of a Chan Buddhist Monk" in the "wild" style of cursive script by Huang Tingjian (黄庭坚), Song Dynasty

行书《将之苕溪》或《苕溪诗》 "Six Poems on Leaving for Shaoxi" in running script by Mi Fu (米芾), Song Dynasty

行草《致季常尺牍》 "Letter to Ji Chang" in running-cursive script by Su Shi (苏轼), Song Dynasty

瘦金体《五七言诗》 "Two Poems in Five and Seven-syllable Verse" in slender gold script by the Song emperor Hui Zong (宋徽宗)

行书《高峰和尚行状》 "Biography of Monk Gaofeng" in running script, by Zhao Mengfu (赵孟頫), Yuan Dynasty

行草《张九龄〈白羽扇赋〉》 "Zhang Jiuling's 'Fu on a White Feather Fan'" in running-cursive script by Dong Qichang (董其昌), Ming Dynasty

草书《诗卷》 "Poems" in cursive script (which contains "The Terrace of Ode to the Wind" and two other poems) by Zhu Yunming (祝允明), Ming Dynasty

四体《千字文》 "Thousand Characters Essay" in four scripts (regular, cursive, clerical and seal scripts) by Wen Zhengming (文徵明), Ming Dynasty

题米芾《蜀素帖》 "Inscription on Mi Fu's 'Calligraphy on Sichuan Silk'" by Shen Zhou (沈周), Ming Dynasty

章草《急就章》 "Curriedly Composed Writing" or "An Improvization" in memorial-cursive script by Song Ke (宋克), Ming Dynasty

行书《明代名人尺牍精品》 "Albums of Letters of Prominent Figures of the Ming Dynasty" in running script (2 albums of 45 leaves)

隶书《战国策》 "Chronicle of the Warring States" in clerical script by Jin Nong (金农), Qing Dynasty

楷书《义利辨》 "Yi Li Bian" (Discussion on Righteousness

and Personal Benefit) in standard script by Yong Xing (永瑆), Qing Dynasty

行书《洛神赋》 "Luoshen Fu" (Rhyme-Prose on Nymph of the Luo River) in running script by Jin Cong (金聪), Qing Dynasty (album of 22.5 leaves, ink on paper, each leaf 38 × 47cm, additional 10 leaves of colophons)

十二　古代碑刻
ANCIENT STONE INSCRIPTIONS

碑碣　stone tablet; stele

碑额　the top part of a tablet; the head of a stone tablet

碑阴　the reverse side of a stone tablet; the back of a stone tablet

碑记（志）　an inscriptional record; an inscription; a record of events inscribed on a tablet

碑铭（文）　an inscription on a tablet

碑亭　a pavilion built over (or housing) a stone tablet

碑林　forest of steles; a large collection of stone tablets (especially that of Xi'an which includes more than 3000 items)

墓碑（表）　a tombstone; a gravestone

墓志铭　inscription on the memorial tablet within a tomb; epitaph

纪念碑　monument; memorial

牌坊　an honorific arch; memorial archway

牌匾　an inscribed board; tablet

牌额　a horizontal inscribed board

画像石（砖）　pictorial stone (brick)

石鼓文　Inscriptions on Drum-shaped Stone Blocks (carved by State of Qin. Warring States Period, discovered in early Tang Dynasty in Shaanxi Province)

诅楚文　Inscriptions on "Curse Chu" Steles (done by State of Qin, Warring States Period, unearthed in Song Dynasty at various places)

监囿守丘刻石　Jianyou Shouqiu Keshi. Stone inscribed with "Jian You Shou Qiu", Zhongshan State, Warring States Period (unearthed about 1937 at Hebei Province)

琅玡刻石　Langya Keshi. Inscribed Stone at Mount Langya, work of Qin Dynasty, at Langyatai, Zhucheng, Shandong Province

泰山刻石　Taishan Keshi. Inscribed Stones on Mount Tai, steles of Qin Dynasty erected by the Prime Minister Li Si and others at the top of Mount Tai, Shandong Province

张景碑　Zhang Jing Bei. Stele of Zhang Jing, an important inscribed stele of Eastern Han Dynasty, unearthed in 1958 at Nanyang city, Henan Province

曹全碑　Cao Quan Bei. Stele of Cao Quan, an important inscribed stele of Eastern Han Dynasty, unearthed in early Wanli period of Ming Dynasty in Heyang County, Shaanxi Province

礼器碑　Li Qi Bei. Stele of Ritual Vessels, an important inscribed stele of Eastern Han Dynasty, erected in the second year of Emperor Yongshou's reign

西狭颂　Xi Xia Song. Stele with an Eulogy on the Reconstruction of the Road in the Western Gorge, an important cliffside inscription of Eastern Han Dynasty, engraved in the fourth year of emperor Jianning's reign

熹平石经　Xi Ping Shi Jing. Stone Classics of the Xiping Reign, the earliest Confucian classics on the stone stele, originally engraved in the fourth year of Xiping's reign and completed in Guanghe's sixth year, Eastern Han Dynasty

正始石经（三体石经）　Zhengshi Shijing. Stone Classics of the Zhengshi Reign, or Stone Classics in Three Scripts, made in Cao Wei（曹魏）of the Three Kingdoms

晋辟雍碑　Jin Piyong Bei. Stele in the "Piyong" Hall of the Jin Dynasty, China's largest and most complete extant stele inscription of Jin Dynasty, erected in the fourth year (278) of Xianning（咸宁）reign in the Piyong Imperial College at Luoyang（洛阳）

好太王碑　Haotaiwang Bei. Stele of Great King Haotaiwang, Korean（高句丽）important inscribed stele, erected in 414 by his son Changshouwang（长寿王）at Ji'an（集安）in Jilin Province

魏晋南北朝墓志　Wei-Jin-Nanbeichao Muzhi. Epitaphs from Tombs of the Wei, Jin, and Southern and Northern Dynasties

王兴之夫妇墓志　Wang Xingzhi Fufu Muzhi. Epitaph on the Tomb of Wang Xingzhi and his wife, work of Eastern Jin, unearthed in 1965 on the outskirts of Nanjing

龙藏寺碑　Longzangsi Bei. Stele of the Construction of Longzang Temple, an important inscribed stele of the Sui Dynasty, erected in the sixth year (586) of the Kaihuang reign at Zhengding, Hebei Province

唐蕃会盟碑　Tang-Bo Huimeng Bei. Monument Commemorating Tang Dynasty's Aligning with Tibet, carved and erected in the third year of the Changqing reign in front of Zuglakang Monastery (大昭寺) in Lhasa

九成宫碑　Jiuchenggong Bei. Stele in the Jiucheng Palace, a famous inscribed stele of the Tang Dynasty, established in the sixth year (632) of Zhenguan 贞观 in the Palace (now at Linyou 临游 county, Shaanxi Province)

多宝塔碑　Duobaota Bei. Stele of the "Abundant Treasure" Pagoda, an important inscribed stele of the Tang Dynasty, erected in the eleventh year (752) of Tianbao (天宝) at Xingping (兴平), Shaanxi Province

大秦景教流行中国碑　Daqin Jingjiao Liuxing Zhongguo Bei. Stele Marking Spread of Nestorianism from Rome to China, a stele of Tang Dynasty erected in 781 and unearthed in 1625 during the Ming Dynasty

升仙太子碑　Shengxian Taizi Bei. Stele Commemorating Prince Jin (王子晋), erected by Empress Wu Zetian (武则天) of the Tang Dynasty in 699 at Yanshi (偃师), Henan Province in memory of Prince Jin

隋唐墓志　Sui-Tang Muzhi. Epitaphs of the Sui and Tang Dynasties (inscriptions on stone, brick or ceramic materials buried in tombs)

泉州宗教石刻　Quanzhou Zongjiao Shike. Religious Stone Inscriptions and Carvings at Quanzhou (These cultural relics of religious stone inscriptions from the Song and Yuan

Dynasties are preserved in Quanzhou.)

契丹文石刻 Qidanwen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Khitan Hieroglyphic (They were carved in the Liao Dynasty and unearthed or discovered in either Inner Mongolia or Liaoning Province.)

女真文石刻 Nuzhenwen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Nuzhen (Jurchen) Hieroglyphic (These inscriptions were carved in the Jin (Kin) Dynasty and mostly discovered in Jilin Province.)

西夏文石刻 Xixiawen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Western Xia (Tangut) Hieroglyphic (Xixia, a state in the Song Dynasty occupied part of today's Inner Mongolia and Gansu. These inscriptions were carved in Song, Yuan and Ming Dynasties.)

蒙古文石刻 Mengguwen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Mongolian Script (These steles were carved in the Yuan Dynasty and are now distributed mostly over Inner Mongolia, Yunnan, Gansu, Shanxi, Shaanxi, Henan, Hebei and Shandong Provinces.)

沂南墓画像石 Yinanmu Huaxiangshi. Pictorial Stones of the Yi'nan Tomb, excavated from a large tomb chamber of the late Eastern Han Dynasty at Yinan County, Shandong Province

孝堂山汉画像石 Xiaotangshan Hanhuaxiangshi. Pictorial Stones of the Han Dynasty on Xiaotang Mountain, in the earliest existing Chinese Stone Memorial Hall at Guo's Cemetery

十三　绘　画
PAINTING

材　料
MATERIALS

绢　silk (This is the general term for the common ground for painting.)

画绢　picture silk; silk especially adapted to painting, particularly ready-sized silk

花边画绢　colored border painting silk; silk distinguished by multi-colored stripes in the selvage

红边画绢　red border painting silk, distinguished by red stripes in the selvage

绫子　thin silk, a fine silk used chiefly for mounting paintings

瓷青绢　porcelain blue silk, usually a good silk dyed with a very dark blue

素绫　plain thin silk, ordinarily used for mountings, but many prefer it for painting

熟（生）绢　sized (unsized) silk

练绢　prepared silk

双丝绢　double thread silk

单丝绢　single thread silk

缣　a kind of white silk woven with double threads, and waterproof

纸　paper (the general term for this important material)

澄心堂纸　a fine, thin, smooth paper of superior quality, popularily used by the artists of the Song and Yuan Dynasties

宣纸　a fine white bamboo-pulp laid paper, it is so named because it comes from Xuancheng of Anhui Province

矾宣（熟纸）　sized paper, specified to distinguish it from the common unsized paper

单宣（生纸） a thin, single layer, unsized paper

通纸（米纸） Tong paper made from the cellular tissue of a plant known to foreigners as "rice paper"

蝉衣笺（蝉翼笺） cicada shell paper (cicada wing paper), a fine, single thickness sized paper

金笺 speckled-gold paper; gold-flecked paper

墨 ink (Chinese ink is a mixture of a form of carbon and glue, and is usually molded into sticks or cakes.)

松烟墨 pine soot ink, the best ink for painting

笔 brush (The typical Chinese brush is made of animal hair carefully graded and glued into the end of a bamboo tube.)

色素 pigments

石青（佛青） mineral blue; ultramarine; azurite (prepared from lazurite 青金石)

头青 first blue (the deepest mineral blue, used for filling in certain outlined leaves and for painting on the back of silk to intensify the blue on the surface)

二青 second blue (the medium shade of mineral blue, used for the hills and rocks of blue and green landscape)

三青 third blue (the lightest mineral blue, used chiefly for painting garments)

石绿 mineral green (prepared from malachite 孔雀石)

头绿 first green (the deepest mineral green, used for filling in certain outlined leaves and for painting on the back of silk to intensify the color of rocks and mountains)

二绿 second green (the medium tint of the stone greens, used for painting the rocks and mountains of mineral green landscape)

三绿 third green (the lightest mineral green, used for garments in figure studies, and in landscape for dotting lichens on tree trunks and rocks, also for leaves)

石黄（雌黄） mineral yellow (prepared from orpiment 雌黄, used chiefly in butterfly painting and in painting of men and objects)

雄黄 cock yellow (prepared from realgar 雄黄)

朱砂 vermilion (prepared from a kind of cinnabar 朱砂, used

for the leaves of maple, also for temples, palaces and the railings of terraces)

朱标　the lighter form of vermilion (used for the garments of men)

银朱　a deeper vermilion (used chiefly in seal pigment)

赭石　umber (made from a variety of iron oxide called limonite 褐铁矿; extensively employed in flower and landscape painting)

铅粉　lead white (used for all subjects of painting)

珂粉　lime white (made by burning sea shells, better than lead white)

乳金　milk gold (used in garments and in Buddhist painting)

靛花(花青)　indigo blue; flower blue (one of the most common pigments and has many uses)

藤黄　rattan yellow; light bright yellow (used extensively for painting flowers, birds and landscapes)

胭脂　rouge (mainly used for painting flowers)

牡丹红　peony red; pink (used especially for painting peonies)

混合色　mixed colors

草绿　vegetation green (made by mixing 花青 and 藤黄)

老绿　old green (made by mixing six parts of 花青 and one of 藤黄)

嫩绿　fresh green (made by mixing three parts of 花青 and seven of 藤黄)

苍绿　gray green (made by mixing 草绿 and 赭石)

紫粉　purple pink (made by mixing 胭脂 and 白粉)

淡桃红　pale peach red (a pink compound of 胭脂 and 白粉)

老红　old red (a combination of 银朱 and 赭石)

赭黄　ochre yellow (a mixture of 藤黄 and 赭石)

赭墨　ochre ink (a mixture of 赭石 and 墨)

藤萝紫　wistaria purple (a compound of 洋红 and 花青)

画　式
FORMS OF PAINTING

图　a plan or map

画　a painting

壁画　wall painting; mural painting; mural; fresco

帛画　painting on silk or other fabric

卷轴　rolled paintings of all kinds (distinguished from murals, albums and fans)

卷　hand scrolls (specifically intended to be opened on a table)

轴　hanging scrolls (specially designed for hanging)

册页　album leaf

扇面　fan face

斗方　a square picture

屏条　sets of four, six, eight, twelve narrow vertical scrolls to be hung together

同景　combined scene (a set of scrolls that form one composition such as a large landscape)

横幅（披）　a horizontal scroll (designed and mounted to be hung horizontally)

直幅　a hanging scroll (designed and mounted to be hung vertically)

单条　a single vertical scroll; a tall and very narrow picture

孤轴　lonely scroll; independent scroll (pictures hung individually, as opposed to those hung in groups)

中堂　（参见 P180）

中条　medium-size hanging scroll

对联　a pair of scrolls; narrow antithetical scrolls

联句　（参见 P180）

画题
SUBJECTS OF PAINTING

山水　mountains and water; landscape

人物　portraiture; figures; men and objects

影像　ceremonial portrait (usually painted posthumously from the corpse, life portrait, or a photo)

行乐图　life portrait (This picture has a generous amount of setting or background)

道释图　Taoist and Buddhist subjects; religious painting

仕女图　women, especially beautiful women; classical lady

风俗画　genre painting (including local customs, manners, festivals)

史实画　paintings describing authentic historical events or incidents

故事画　illustrations of novels, fictions, romances, plays or legendary incidents

博古画　curios or antiques (including ancient bronzes, porcelains and similar objects)

出行图　procession scene

花卉　flowers and plants

折枝　broken branches; cut flowers; sprays or branches separated from the parent stalk

翎毛　birds and animals; feathers and fur

草虫　grasses and insects

鱼龙　fishes and dragons

界画　architectural drawing (refers to buildings in a landscape. These buildings should be correctly drawn according to dimension, and when such correctly drawn buildings are the chief feature of a picture, the picture is called Jie Hua.)

静物画　still-life painting

唐卡　Thangka (Buddhist painting of Tibet)

画　技
TECHNIQUES OF PAINTING

六法　six principles or canons

气韵生动　animation through vitality and rhythm; spirit harmony; spirit resonance

骨法用笔　bone-means use brush; "bony" brushstrokes (i. e. strong and economical)

应物形象　fidelity to the object in portraying forms

随类赋彩　conformity to kind in applying colors; correspondence to type (in color)

经营位置　proper planning in placing (of elements); composition (of picture); division and planning

传移模学　to copy (by tracing or transfering); transmission of the past by copying

凸凹法　convex-concave method

明暗法　shading

光影运用　the play of light and shadow

明暗对比　chiaroscuro

远近　perspective; far and near

合（不合）远近　in (out) perspective

合（不合）画法　in (out) drawing; (not) according to rules of painting

高（深、平）远　high (deep, level) distance

章法，构图　composition

布局　the process of planing a composition

天地　heaven and earth; open or blank space at the top and bottom of a picture

宾主　guest and host; the principle of balancing large mountains by smaller ones

写意　free sketch (or style); bold style; spontaneous expression

工笔　painting very carefully and precisely executed; elaborate and realistic style of painting

写生　to paint a subject exactly like the original; to paint from life

院体（官派）　academic painting (very precise with reference to rules and customs); "official school"

设色　arrange color

着色　apply color

青绿山水　blue and green landscape

金碧山水　gold and green landscape; landscape with gold outline

淡赭　faint umber; ink painting with very little color

浅绛　light purple-red; ink painting with a little more and deeper color

水墨　ink painting without color

破墨　broken ink (painting having an outline and the general configuration of rocks defined)

泼墨　spilled ink (painting with broad full strokes and no outline)

乾笔　dry brush (with little moisture in the brush)

飞白　flying white (In this method the hairs of the brush are al-

lowed to separate so that a stroke is not solid black but broken by streaks of untouched ground.)

白描 outline drawing without color or shading

没骨画 boneless painting; painting without outline (especially in color)

勾勒画 outlined painting (to be filled in with color)

指画 finger painting (using finger tips and nails in place of or in addition to the brush)

画法 style of painting; method

追 to follow or pursue (in the sense of searching out a true and pleasing likeness)

传 to make a portrait from a sitting model

摹 to copy (by tracing and transfering)

仿 to copy (used in colophons in the sense of "after" or "in the style of")

临 to copy (with the original before the artist as a model)

勾 to outline (referring chiefly to landscape)

描 to outline (referring chiefly to men and objects)

皴 Cun; wrinkles; shading; modelling; contour lines

染 to dye; to put on a wash or tint of ink or color

渲 to put on a wash shading from light to dark or from one color into another

点 to dot; dotting; to put dots of ink or color in landscape

用朽 to use charcoal for sketching the composition before painting

正笔 upright brush (held and used in a vertical position for writing, outlining and some forms of shading and dotting)

侧笔 brush on one side (held and used in oblique position for washes and certain types of shading and dotting)

兼工带写 elaborate style, with a touch of the impressionistic; the merging of the classic with the symbolic

破笔泼墨 broken brush strokes and splashed ink

枯笔焦墨 dry brush work and dark ink

线条粗浑 bold and rough lines

手法完美 perfection of execution

笔力浑厚 bold and vigorous strokes

笔墨简静　in a simplicity of brushwork and a tranquility of mood

笔工色丽　detailed brushwork and delicate coloring

细秀淡雅　refined and graceful style

清新俊逸　refreshing and innovative style

古风拙笔　deliberate archaic simplicity and child-like awkwardness

苍劲浑厚、气魄豪迈　a majestic style filled with strength and power

明暗对比、立体感强　light and shadow and the comparatively strong effect of the third dimension

奔放不羁　a bold and flowing style

工整写实　a style realistic and filled with grace

特　技
SPECIAL TECHNIQUES

树叶点　dots for leaves

大混点　large confused dots; large turbid dots

小混点　small confused dots; small turbid dots

柏叶点　cedar (cypress) -leaf dots

平头点　even (level) -head dots

仰头点　raised (uplifted) -head dots; dots with uplifted heads

垂头点　bowed-head dots; dots with bowed heads

"个"字点　dots in the shape of the character "个"

"个"字间双钩点　dots like the character "个", which are close together giving the effect of double-outlined leaves

"介"字点　leaves like the character "介"

杉叶点　like "介字点", but longer and with a tendency to curve inward

扁笔点　slanting brush dots

梧桐点　leaves of the Wu Tong tree

垂叶点　drooping leaves

攒三点　three converging dots, like "个字点" but inverted

小攒聚点　slightly converging collected dots

鼠足点　rat-foot dots; leaves like the print of a rat's foot

松叶点　pine-leaf dots

松针点　pine-needle dots
水藻点　water-grass dots
仰叶点　upright leaves
细叶点　fine slender leaves
菊花点　dots resembling chrysanthemum blossoms
梅花点　dots like plum blossoms
攒三聚五点　confused leaves (some of three, some of five strokes)
椿叶点　long pinnate leaves
细垂藤点　fine hanging-creeper dots
藻丝点　seaweed, delicate as silk
夹叶点　double leaves (usually arranged in a fan downward)
夹叶法　the method of outlining leaves (outlined in black and then filled in with colors such as green, blue and red)
陆地山脉点　dots for earth and mountains
尖头点　sharp-headed dots
雨雪点　rain-snow dots
破笔点　broken brush dots
胡椒点　tiny dots like black pepper
"一"字点　dots like the character "一"
垂藤点　hanging-creeper dots
树木岩石皴　texture wrinkles (or strokes) for trees and rocks
披麻皴　long, slightly wavy strokes (like spread-out hemp fibers)
麻皮皴　hemp-fiber wrinkle
短笔麻皮皴　short hemp-fiber wrinkle
米点皴　the dotting method of Mi Fu (米芾)
乱麻皴　confused-hemp wrinkle
乱柴皴　confused brushwood wrinkle
荷叶皴　lotus-leaf wrinkle
解索皴　unravelled-rope wrinkle
乱云（云头）皴　confused-cloud (thunder-head) wrinkle
卷云皴　rolling cloud wrinkle
牛毛皴　cattle hair wrinkle; Cun, like the hair of cattle
破网皴　torn net wrinkle; Cun, resembling a torn net
矾头皴　alum lump wrinkle

弹涡皴　pellet (as dropped into mud) -whirlpool (eddies) wrinkle

鬼面（皮）皴　ghost (devil) -face wrinkle

豆瓣皴　split-bean wrinkle

刺梨皴　pear-thorn wrinkle

雨点皴　raindrop wrinkle

芝蔴皴　sesame-seed wrinkle

小（大）斧劈皴　small (large) ax-cut wrinkle

斧凿皴　ax-split (cleavage) wrinkle (caused by striking with a hammer or the back of an axe)

拖泥带水皴　dragged-through-mud-and-water wrinkle

泥里拔钉皴　nail-extracted-from-mud wrinkle

马牙皴　horse-tooth wrinkle

铁线皴　iron-wire wrinkle

雨淋墙头皴　rain-soaked wall-top wrinkle

骷髅皴　skeleton wrinkle

松皮鱼鳞皴　pine-bark resembling fish-scale wrinkle

松皮如绳皴　cedar-bark resembling rope wrinkle

衣纹“十八描”　“eighteen outlines” in drawing garments

蚯蚓描　angle-worm line (stroke)

琴纹描　lute-string line (stroke)

曹衣描　Mr. Cao's clothing (stroke) from Cao Buxing (曹不兴)

春蚕吐丝描　spring-silkworm-spitting-silk line (stroke)

行云流水描　scudding-cloud and running-water line; drifting-cloud and flowing-water stroke

柳叶描　willow-leaf line (stroke)

竹叶描　bamboo-leaf line (stroke)

颤笔水纹描　quivering-brush water wave line (stroke)

蚂蜂描　wasp's body (waist) line

枣核描　date-stone (pit) line

橄榄描　olive-stone (pit) line

铁线描　iron-wire line

折芦描　broken (bent)-reed line

钉头鼠尾描　nail-head and rat-tail line

掘头钉描　driven-stake line

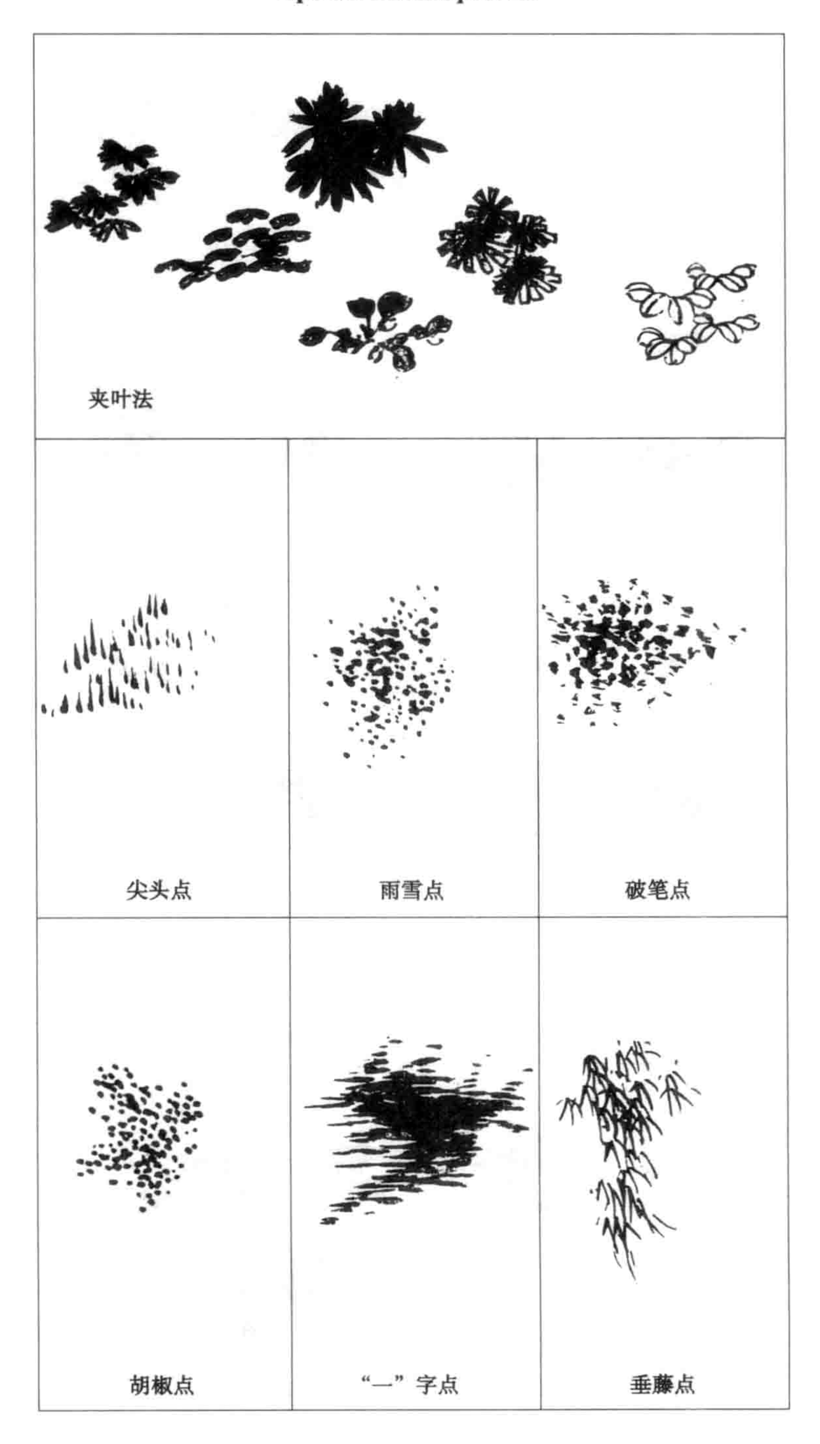
绘画技法图（一）
Special Techniques I

大混点	小混点	柏叶点	平头点
仰头点	垂头点	“个”字点	“个”字间双钩点
“介”字点	杉叶点	扁笔点	梧桐点
垂叶点	攒三点	小攒聚点	

绘画技法图(二)
Special Techniques Ⅱ

鼠足点	松叶点	松针点	水藻点
仰叶点	细叶点	菊花点	梅花点
攒三原五点	椿叶点	细垂藤点	藻丝点
夹叶点	夹叶法		

绘画技法图（三）
Special Techniques Ⅲ



减笔描　blunt-brush line

柴笔描（枯柴描）　brushwood（or kindling）line

金玉刀描　golden-jade-knife line

龙角描　dragon-horn line

凤尾描　phoenix-tail line

混描　mixed（or double）line

水云绘法　the method of representing water and clouds

水口　water openings；water sources

溪涧涟漪法　the method of representing the rippling waves of shallow water and the movement of little streams

江海波涛法　the method of representing the billows of deep water

大瀑布　a large waterfall，wide and high

悬崖挂泉法　the method of representing the overhanging cliffs

山口分泉法　the method of dividing a stream（as it comes through a valley to a fall）

云流泉断法　the method of interrupting a stream with scudding clouds

画泉两叠法　the method of drawing a stream in two sections

细泉法　the method of showing a narrow stream opening out as it emerges from a gorge or repids.

平泉法　the method of showing a stream in a comparatively level place

细勾云　fine hook（or outline）clouds

大勾云　large hook（or outline）clouds breaking by clouds

云断　breaking by clouds

吹云法　blown cloud method

钩粉法　white outline method

着　色
COLORS

红 （参见 P154）

深红　crimson

朱红　vermilion

粉红 （参见 P155）

鲜红　scarlet

暗红　buff
桃红　（参见 P155）
蕃红　saffron
赭红　umber
玫瑰红　rose
紫红　mauve
珊瑚红　（参见 P155）
黄　（参见 P154）
赭黄　sienna
桔黄　orange
金黄　golden
橙黄　salmon
杏黄　apricot
米黄　beige
褐黄　tan；ochre
柠檬黄　lemon
樱桃黄　cherry
蓝　（参见 P153）
碧蓝　azure
天蓝　（参见 P153）
紫罗兰　（参见 P154）
白　（参见 P152）
牙白　（参见 P152）
银白　silver
乳白　（参见 P153）
绿　（参见 P153）
翠绿　emerald
灰绿　sage green
铜绿　（参见 P117）
鹦鹉绿　parrot green
苹果绿　（参见 P153）
灰　gray
褐色　brown
灰褐色　taupe
栗色　maroon
古铜色　bronze

铅灰色　leaden
铅丹　minium
铅黄　massicot
雄黄　realgar
雌黄　orpiment
单色　monochrome
多色　polychrome
色彩鲜艳　in gay colors
对比强烈　in dazzling and strongly contrasting colors
青绿色　blue-and-green; bluish green
金碧色　gold-and-azure; goldish azure

印　款
SEALS AND SIGNATURES

引首（前幅）　frontispiece
款　the signature or colophon of the artist
款识　inscription
单款　a signature or colophon without reference to the name of the person, for whom the picture was painted
双款　a colophon containing the name of the person, for (or to) whom the picture was painted (or dedicated), and the signature of the artist
跋　inscription; postscript; epilogue
题跋　an annotation on a picture or its mounting. It may be written by the artist himself or by other persons.
另纸款识（后幅）　with colophons by sb. on paper separate from the painting
题诗　a poem inscribed on a painting or its mounting, usually in praise of, or inspired by the painting
签名　signature
印章　a seal or an impression
名章　a seal bearing the artist's surname and formal name
字（号）章　a seal bearing the artist's intimate name or pseudonym
图章　colloquial names for seals

印文 （参见 P295）

闲章　seals with mottos, etc., without the owner's name

连珠章　double or connected seals (one seal in the form of two, or giving the impression of two)

印色　vermilion pigment (used for seal impressions)

骑缝章　seal astride seams

白（朱）文　white (red) legends

阴（阳）文　negative (positive) legends

真迹　a genuine trace (or true work) of sb.

敬模　copied with respect by sb.

添补　interpolated by sb.

代笔　to paint on somebody's behalf; ghostly artist

某某画（笔）　pinxit (= he or she painted，常用于画家署名后，主格为复数时用 pinxerunt，略作 pinx. or pxt.)

某某作（画）　fecit (= he or she made it，用于画家署名后，略作 fec.)

摹某氏某画　copied after such-and-such a painting by sb.

拟（依、同）某氏法　in the style (or manner) of sb.

收藏印 （参见 P293）

假画真印　genuine seal impressed on false scroll

画的年代和出处　the date and provenance of painting

作者签名盖章　artist's signature and seal

印文不辨　unidentified seal (impression)

作者不详　artist unknown

装　裱
MOUNTING

裱法　style of mounting

裱褙　to mount a picture by pasting it on a paper backing

天地　heaven and earth; the upper and lower portions of a mounting

四镶　quadruple border; the border immediately surrounding the picture

养局　protectors (narrow strips of brocade or a special silk, one at the top and one at the bottom of a picture and immedi-

ately adjacent to it within 四镶)

风带 wind bands (two vertical strips at the top of a hanging scroll)

诗堂 poetry hall (a piece of silk or ornamental paper mounted directly above a picture, intended to be inscribed by the artist's friends or by collectors and connoisseurs)

纸裱 a front mounting of paper

绢裱 a front mounting of ordinary silk

绫裱 a front mounting of thin silk

蓑衣裱 rain-coat mounting

巾折裱 folded-cloth mounting

衬托纸 mounting paper

拖尾纸 towed-at-the-end paper (a long strip following the painting in a hand-scroll to receive annotations)

界绫 vertical strips of silk or paper (separating the picture from the superscription and the colophons)

本衬 mounted in the basic manner

云衬 mounted with a cloud pattern

文衬 mounted with figured silk

轴杆 the wooden rod around which the scroll is rolled

轴头 the ornamental butts of a scroll roller

标笺 labels (narrow strips gummed to the outsides of rolled pictures)

环 round eyes of copper (often provided with an ornamental clamp of copper plate)

绦 suspension loop (made of plain silk cord)

整装 uncut mounting

剪装 cut mounting

衬边 lining the borders

小托 adding the first backing

上壁 putting the scroll on the board

下壁 taking the scroll off the board

安轴 attaching the knobs to the roller

上杆 adding the roller to the scroll

上贴 adding the upper stave

贴笺 pasting the title label

揭　taking off the old backing

补　patching up holes

全　retouching

设色绢（纸）本　ink and color on silk（paper）

金笺纸本水墨册页八开　album of eight leaves, imk on gold-speckled paper

画家评论
COMMENTS ON ARTISTS

书画同源　Painting and calligraphy are of common origin.

诗书画合一　the combination of poetry, calligraphy and painting in one

绘画大师　master of painting

壁画家　muralist

收藏家　collector

鉴赏家　connoisseur

评论家　critic

杰作　masterpiece

原作　original; genuine

摹本　copy; reproduction

抄本　（参见 P180）

官本　government-owned scrolls

真迹　true specimen（or work）

赝品　fake; forgery; false

画院　Painting Academy

笔意　artistic conception revealed in the work of a calligrapher, painter or writer

笔势　style of brushwork

笔力雄健　powerful strokes

笔走龙蛇　dragons and snakes following the writing brush

行笔秀丽，布置茂密　in firm but supple brushwork and densely rich composition

善画墨竹，师法某某　be skilled in bamboo painting, following the style of sb.

善画花鸟，以水墨写意法见长　specializing in bird-and-flower

painting. sb. was renowned for his ink monochrome works in the free and spontaneous style.

善画翎毛草虫，学某某设骨法 sb. specialized in painting birds and insects, adopting as his model the Mogu (boneless) manner of sb.

画法主要继承南宋院体，兼师宋元各家之长，融汇变化，自成一家 Personal style was mainly evolved from the Southern Song acadimic tradition, but enriched by the study of the great masters of Song and Yuan periods.

自创新格，笔力浑厚，气势豪健，对后世影响颇为深远 Greating a personal style of his own which is marked by vigorous and powerful expression, he exerted tremendous influence on artists of later generations.

善画墨梅，笔力遒劲，与某某齐名 to be noted for one's prunus painting excecuted in vigorous manner, he enjoyed equal prominence with sb.

工笔写意二法兼精 equally adept in the Gongbi (detailed and meticulous) and Xieyi (free and spontaneous) manners

人物学某某白描法，山水师某某，笔墨愈加奔放 To take the Baimiao (plain drawing) manner of sb. as one's model for figure painting and the style of sb. for his landscapes, the personal style that he eventually evolved is characterized by greater freedom and more expressive brushwork.

山水宗某某，人物学某某，花鸟效某某，墨竹师某某亦善书 Sb. was his model for landscape painting while his figures followed the manner of sb. As for paintings of flower and bird and ink bamboo, sb. and sb. were his source of inspiration respectively. He was also proficient in calligraphy.

画法学某某，喜用枯笔焦墨 Basing his style on that of sb., he favoured the use of dry brushwork and dark ink.

尤长翎毛，豪放不羁，但多草率之笔 particularly noted for his representations of birds in a bold and spontaneous style, but worked in a more abbreviated and sketchy manner

善画山水，画法学某某，用笔纯熟，可与某某比肩 An ac-

complished landscape painter, sb. created a personal style in the tradition of sb.. His mastery of brushwork had been compared to that of the latter.

初师某某，后广学宋元名家，将南宋院体画精谨秀丽之画法与元人清隽淡雅之笔墨融为一体，形成自家面貌 Apart from studying with sb. in his early years, he also learned from the Song and Yuan masters. He shaped his own style by combining the refined and elegant style of the Southern Song Academy with the pure and subtle expressions of the Yuan masters.

被誉为"明四家"之一 to be hailed (or acclaimed) as one of the "Four Masters of the Ming Dynasty"

得某某法而稍变 He evolved his personal style from that of sb.

笔势纵横，设色浅淡，人物点缀极其潇洒 He combined a bold brush manner with light colors in his landscapes which were also enlivened by human figures.

当时极具影响 He exerted tremendous influence on contemporary artists.

长于泼墨法，于水墨写意画法上尤有创新 Best known for his skill in the Bomo (splashed ink) method he achieved important innovations in the free and spontaneous style.

画法集陈、陆二家之长，兼工带写，创"钩花点叶"派 Fusing the traditions of Chen and Lu, he created his personal style which combined the meticulous manner with a spontaneous expression, founding the so-called "Gouhua Dianye" school of flower painting.

中年用笔细秀，略近文、仇画法，晚年变为粗厚苍劲，自成一家 In his middle period, his style was meticulous and refined, showing the influence of Wen and Qiu. He came into his own as he grew older, and his work became rough and powerful.

画学分南北二宗，影响后世甚大 Through his paintings and writings on art, he elaborated the theory of Northern and Southern schools of painting, exerting tremendous influence on later generations.

与某某交往，所画山水风貌颇尽之，并时为某某代笔 He en-

joyed a close relationship with sb. His landscapes displayed stylistic affinities with the work of sb. It was believed that he sometimes painted on somebody's behalf.

其画格调清润明秀，甚有笔意 His work of painting was distinguished by competent brushwork and graceful expression.

活跃于 1607 - 1640 后，以卖画为生 Fl. ca. 1607 - after 1640, he earned his living by selling his paintings.

画风工细隽丽 His personal style is marked by technical virtuosity and delicacy of touch.

笔力清劲，以细密见长 His own style is characterised by density of composition and detailed brushwork.

历代名画选
SELECTED MASTERPIECES OF PAINTING THROUGH THE AGES

战国 Warring States Period（475 - 221 B. C.）

帛画 Painting on Silk（unearthed from a Chu tomb at Changsha, Hunan Province）

西汉 Western Han Dynasty（206 B. C. - 24 A. D.）

帛画 Painting on Silk（unearthed from a Han tomb at Mawangdui, Changsha, Hunan Province）

东晋 Eastern Jin Dynasty（317 - 420）

顾恺之《女史箴图》卷 The Admonitions of an Instructress; The Admonitions of an Imperial Preceptress（handscroll）by Gu Kaizhi

顾恺之《洛神赋图》卷 Ode to the Goddess of the River Luo; Nymph of Luo River; The Nymph Illustrates a Romance Poem（handscroll）by Gu Kaizhi

隋 Sui Dynasty（581 - 618）

展子虔《游春图》卷 Traveling in Spring; Spring Excursion; On a Spring Outing（handscroll）by（or attributed to）

Zhan Ziqian

唐 Tang Dynasty (618 - 907)

阎立本《历代帝王图》卷 Portraits of Emperors through the Ages; Portraits of Ancient Emperors (handscroll) by Yan Liben

阎立本《步辇图》卷 Imperial Carriage; Emperor Taizong Receiving an Envoy from Tibet; The Imperial Litter Carried on Feet (handscroll) by Yan Liben

阎立本《职贡图》卷 Foreign Envoy with Tribute Bearers (handscroll) by Yan Liben

韩滉《五牛图》卷 Five Oxen (handscroll) by Han Huang

韩幹《牧马图》卷 Horses and Groom (handscroll) by Han Gan

周昉《挥扇仕女图》卷 Ladies Whiling Away Summer Hours; Noble Ladies Fanning Themselves; Beautiful Women with Their Fans (Handscroll) by Zhou Fang

唐人《明皇幸蜀图》卷 Emperor Minghuang's Traveling in Shu (handscroll), anonymous, Tang Dynasty

五代 Five Dynasties (907 - 960)

关同《关山行旅图》轴 Travelers in the Mountaints; Travelers through Mountain Passes (hanging scroll) by Guan Tong

赵岩《八达春游图》卷 Eight Gentlemen on a Spring Outing (handscroll) by Zhao Yan

胡瓌《卓歇图》卷 Taking a Rest on the Way after Hunting (handscroll) by Hu Gui

顾闳中《韩熙载夜宴图》卷 Han Xizai's Night Revels; The Night Revelry at Han Xizai's; The Nocturnal Entertainments of Han Xizai (handscroll) by Gu Hongzhong

董源《山口待渡图》卷 Waiting for the Ferry at a Mountain Pass (handscroll) by Dong Yuan

董源《潇湘图》卷 The Rivers Xiao and Xiang (handscroll) by Dong Yuan

巨然《秋山问道图》轴 Asking the Tao (or Way) in the Autumn Mountains (hanging scroll) by Ju Ran

黄筌《写生珍禽图》卷 Birds, Insects and Turtles (handscroll) by Huang Quan

黄居寀《山鹧棘雀图》轴 Pheasant and Sparrows among Thorns and Bamboos (hanging scroll) by Huang Jucai

宋代 Song Dynasty (960 - 1279)

范宽《溪山行旅图》轴 Travelers among Mountains and Streams (hanging scroll) by Fan Kuan

许道宁《雪溪渔夫图》卷 Fishing on a Snowy River (handscroll) by Xu Daoning

郭熙《窠石平远图》轴 Rocky Lowland with Far Horizon (hanging scroll) by Guo Xi

崔白《双喜图》轴 Two Magpies and a Hare (hanging scroll) by Cui Bai

宋人《柳荫高士图》轴 Noble Scholar under a Willow (hanging scroll), anonymous, Song Dynarty

苏轼《古木怪石图》卷 Withered Tree and Grotesque Rock (handscroll) by Su Shi

王诜《渔村小雪图》卷 Fishing Village after Snow (handscroll) by Wang Shen

李公麟《摹韦偃牧放图》卷 Herding Horses, after Wei Yan (handscroll) by Li Gonglin

梁师闵《芦汀密雪图》卷 Quiet Islet in the Snow-capped Reed Pond (handscroll) by Liang Shimin

赵佶《柳鸦芦雁图》卷 Crows Perching on the Willows, Geese Dwelling by the Reeds (handscroll) by Zhao Ji, the Emperor Huizong

赵佶摹张萱《虢国夫人游春图》卷 Lady of the Guo State and Her Sisters Setting Forth on a Spring Outing (handscroll) by Zhao Ji, after that of Zhang Xuan of Tang Dynasty

张择端《清明上河图》卷 The Riverside Scene at the Qing-Ming Festival; Going Up-River at the Qing-Ming Festival (handscroll) by Zhang Zeduan

王希孟《千里江山图》卷 A Thousand Li of Mountains and Rivers (handscroll) by Wang Ximeng

赵伯驹《江山秋色图》卷　Autumn Scenery over (or on) Mountains and Rivers (handscroll) by Zhao Boju

米友仁《潇湘奇观图》卷　Rare Views of Xiao and Xiang; Wonderful Views of the Rivers Xiao and Xiang (handscroll) by Mi Youren

米友仁《云山得意图》卷　Mountains in Clouds and Mist (handscroll) by Mi Youren

扬无咎《四梅图》卷　Four Stages of Blossoming Plum (handscroll) by Yang Wujiu

马和之《后赤壁赋图》卷　Second Ode to the Red Cliff (handscroll) by Ma Hezhi

巨然《溪山兰若图》卷　Buddhist Retreat by Stream and Mountain by Ju Ran

李唐《万壑松风图》卷　Whispering Pines in the Mountains (or Myriad Ravines) (handscroll) by Li Tang

李唐《采薇图》卷　Gathering Ferns; Gathering Edible Wild Herbs (handscroll) by Li Tang

刘松年《四景山水图》卷　Landscapes of the Four Seasons (handscroll) by Liu Songnian

李迪《风雨归牧图》卷　Herdboys and Buffalos Returning Home in the Rainstorm (handscroll) by Li Di

马远《月夜拨阮图》卷　Playing the Lute in Moonlight (handscroll) by Ma Yuan

马远《踏歌图》卷　Peasants, Singing and Dancing, Returning from Work; Singing and Dancing in the Spring (handscroll) by Ma Yuan

夏圭《山水十二景图》卷　Twelve Views of Landscape (handscroll) by Xia Gui

梁楷《八高僧故事图》卷　Illustrations to the Historical Tales of Eight Eminent Monks (handscroll) by Liang Kai

梁楷《泼墨仙人图》轴　Ink-splash Recluse (hanging scroll) by Liang Kai

赵葵《杜甫诗意图》卷　Illustrations in the Spirit of Du Fu's Poem; Scenes Described in Du Fu's Poem (handscroll) by Zhao Kui

赵黻《江山万里图》卷　Ten Thousand Li of Rivers and

Mountains; Landscape of the Yangtze River (handscroll) by Zhao Fu

金代 Jin (Kin) Dynasty (1115 - 1254)

王庭筠《幽竹枯槎图》卷 Quiet Bamboo and Withered Tree (handscroll) by Wang Tingjun

武元直《赤壁夜游图》卷 Making a Journey to the Red Cliff at Night; A Night Trip at Chibi (handscroll) by Wu Yuanzhi

元代 Yuan Dynasty (1271 - 1368)

钱选《花鸟图》卷 Birds and Flowers (handscroll) by Qian Xuan

李衎《四清图》卷 Bamboo, Wutong Tree, Orchid and Rocks (handscroll) by Li Kan

高克恭《云横秀岭图》轴 Verdant Peaks above the Clouds (hanging scroll) by Gao Kegong

赵孟頫《渊明归去来辞》卷 After Tao Yuanming's Poem "Returning Home" (handscroll) by Zhao Mengfu

王振鹏《伯牙鼓琴图》卷 Boya Plucking the Strings of a Lute (handscroll) by Wang Zhenpeng

黄恭望《富春山居图》卷 Dwelling in the Fuchun Mountains; Mountain Hermitage by the Fuchun River (handscroll) by Huang Gongwang

吴镇《芦花寒雁图》轴 Reeds and Chilly Geese (hanging scroll) by Wu Zhen

盛懋《秋江待渡图》轴 Waiting for the Ferry at a River Bank in Autumn (hanging scroll) by Sheng Mao

倪瓒《渔庄秋霁图》轴 Fishing Village in Sunny Autumn (hanging scroll) by Ni Zan

王蒙《青卞隐居图》轴 Hermitage in Green Bian Mountain; Hermitage in the Summer Mountains (hanging scroll) by Wang Meng

王蒙《桃源春晓图》卷 Vernal Dawn in the Peach Blossom Spring (handscroll) by Wang Meng

张渥《临李公麟九歌图》卷　The Nine Songs, after Li Gonglin (handscroll) by Zhang Wo

方从义《武夷放棹图》轴　A Boat Going Downstream along the Mt. Wuyi (hanging scroll) Fang Congyi

王冕《墨梅图》轴　Ink Blossoming Plums (hanging scroll) by Wang Mian

张逊《双沟竹图》卷　Bamboos in Delineation Manner (handscroll) by Zhang Xun

王渊《竹石集禽图》轴　Birds in the Thick of Bamboo and Rock (hanging scroll) by Wang Yuan

明代　Ming Dynasty (1368 – 1644)

王履《华山图》册　Landscapes of Mt. Hua (album) by Wang Lu

边景昭《竹鹤图》轴　Two Cranes among Bamboo Grove (hanging scroll) by Bian Jingzhao

夏昶《湘江风雨图》卷　Wind and Rain on the Xiang River (handscroll) by Xia Chang

戴进《关山行旅图》轴　Travelers through Mountain Passes (hanging scroll) by Dai Jin

戴进《春游晚归图》卷　Returning Late from a Spring Outing (handscroll) by Dai Jin

刘珏《夏云欲雨图》轴　Mountain Rain Coming from Summer Clouds (hanging scroll) by Liu Jue

姚绶《秋江渔隐图》轴　Secluded Fisherman on an Autumn River (hanging scroll) by Yao Shou

沈周《西山纪游图》卷　Travels on Xishan Mountain; Landscape of Xishan Mountain (handscroll) by Shen Zhou

沈周《策杖图》卷　Walking with a Staff; The Staff-bearing Wanderer (handscroll) by Shen Zhou

吕纪《桂菊山禽图》轴　Laurel Blossoms, Chrysanthemum and Birds (hanging scroll) by Lu Ji

林良《灌木集禽图》卷　Birds in Shrubbery (handscroll) by Lin Liang

吴伟《渔乐图》卷　The Pleasure of Fishing (handscroll) by

Wu Wei

周臣《春山游骑图》轴　Horse-riders Traveling in the Spring Mountains (hanging scroll) by Zhou Chen

唐寅《落霞孤鹜图》轴　Sunset Clouds Flying with the Solitary Wild Dusk (hanging scroll) by Tang Yin

唐寅《毅庵图》卷　The Garden Retreat of Yi An (handscroll) by Tang Yin

文徵明《绿荫长话图》轴　Long Conversation under Leafy Shade (hanging scroll) by Wen Zhengming

文徵明《古木寒泉图》卷　Old Trees and Cold Waterfall (handscroll) by Wen Zhengming

仇英《莲溪渔隐图》轴　Hermit Fisherman in a Lotus Stream (hanging scroll) by Qiu Ying

仇英《桃源仙境图》轴　The Fairyland of Peach Blossoms Spring (hanging scroll by Qiu Ying)

文嘉《琵琶行图》轴　Illustration to the Song of the Lute (hanging scroll) by Wen Jia

陈洪绶《隐居十六观图》册　Sixteen Scenes from a Hermit's Life (album leaves) by Chen Hongshou

徐渭《杂花图》卷　Miscellaneous Flowers and Plants (handscroll) by Xu Wei

蓝瑛《白云红树图》轴　White Clouds around Red Trees on the Mountains (hanging scroll) by Lan Ying

清代　Qing Dynasty (1644 - 1911)

王时敏《浮岚暖翠图》卷　Verdant Peaks (handscroll) by Wang Shimin

程正揆《江山卧游图》卷　Dream Journey among Rivers and Mountains (handscroll) by Cheng Zhengkui

项圣谟《王维诗意图》册　Illustrations in the Spirit of Wang Wei's Poems (album) by Xiang Shengmo

原济《搜尽奇峰打草稿图》卷　Searching Everywhere for Wonderful Peaks (handscroll) by Yuan Ji

王鉴《长松仙阁图》轴　Tall Pines and Immortal Places on the Mountain (hanging scroll) by Wang Jian

王翚《重江叠嶂图》卷　Multipeaked Mountains with Flowing Streams (handscroll) by Wang Hui

王翚《千崖万壑图》卷　Countless Peaks and Vales; A Thousand Cliffs and Myriad Ravines (handscroll) by Wang Hui

弘仁《黄山天都峰图》轴　Tiandu Peak of Mt. Huangshan (hanging scroll) by Hong Ren

肖晨《杨柳归牧图》轴　Herdboy Returning Home via Willow Embankment (hanging scroll) by Xiao Chen

髡残《雨洗山根图》轴　Rain Washes the Foot of the Mountain (hanging scroll) by Kun Can

髡残《层岩叠壑图》轴　Cliffs and Ravines of Mountain (hanging scroll) by Kun Can

吴历《拟古脱古山水》轴　The Continuing and Rejecting the Classic Inheritance Landscape (hanging scroll) by Wu Li

龚贤《木叶丹黄图》轴　Sparse Woods on Autumn Mountain (hanging scroll) by Gong Xian

朱耷《河上花图》卷　Lotus Pond (handscroll) by Zhu Da

吴历《静深秋晓图》轴　A Quiet Dawn in Late Autumn (hanging scroll) by Wu Li

王原祁《为问亭作山水》册　Landscapes Made for Wen Ting (album) by Wang Yuanqi

禹之鼎《王士祯放鹇图》卷　Illustrations in the Spirit of Wang Shizhen's Poem of "Letting Silver Pheasant Fly Free" (handscroll) by Yu Zhiding

袁江《蓬莱仙岛图》轴　Penglai, Isle of Immortals (hanging scroll) by Yuan Jiang

华岩《白云松舍图》轴　Thatched Cottages in White Clouds and Green Pines (hanging scroll) by Hua Yan

罗聘《人物山水》册　Landscapes and Figures (album) by Luo Pin

郎世宁《平安春信图》轴　Tranquil Spring (hanging scroll) by Lang Shining (G. Castiglione)

冷枚《梧桐双兔图》轴　Two Rabbits Beneath a Wutong Tree

(hanging scroll) by Leng Mei

任熊《自画像》轴　Self-Portrait (hanging scroll) by Ren Xiong

任颐《苏武牧羊图》轴　Su Wu Herding Sheep (hanging scroll) by Ren Yi

十四　织绣
TEXTILES AND EMBROIDERY

织　物
TEXTILES

织品、织物　fabric
绸　silk; silk fabric
暗花绸　silk with veiled pattern
印花绸　silk with hand-printed pattern
花绸　figured silk
彩绸　colored silk
染色绸　dyed silk
夹缬绸　woven silk
织金绸　silk woven with gold thread
潞绸　Lu silk; silk of Luzhou
江绸　Jiang silk; silk of Nanjing
和田绸　Hetian silk; silk of Hetian
鸭江绸　Yajiang tussah pongee
缣　fine silk
绡　raw silk; raw silk fabric
锦、织锦　brocade; polychrome weaving
堆锦　brocade embossed with pattern
经锦　warp-patterned brocade
纬锦　weft-patterned brocade
织金锦　gold-woven brocade; gold-thread-woven brocade
织银锦　silver-woven brocade; brocade woven with silver thread
金宝地锦　brocade with design on a patterned ground woven with gold and silver thread
绒圈锦　pile-loop brocade

唐锦　brocade of the Tang Dynasty
宋锦　brocade of the Song Dynasty
宋式锦　Song-styled brocade
回回锦　Mohammedam brocade
云锦　Yun brocade; brocade of Nanjing; figured brocade
壮锦　Zhuang brocade; brocade of Zhuang
蜀锦　Shu brocade; brocade of Sichuan
缎　satin
花缎　figured satin
暗花缎　satin with veiled pattern
修花缎　broche satin
织金缎　satin woven with gold thread; gold-thread-woven satin
片金缎　gold-foiled satin.
二色缎　two-colored satin
鸳鸯缎　double-faced satin with pattern
织锦缎　tapestry satin
双面缎　reversible satin
妆花缎　satin woven with colored pattern
素面缎　plain satin
古香缎　Guxiang satin; Suzhou brocade
广缎　Guang satin; Satin of Guangdong
漳缎　Zhang satin; Satin of Zhangzhou
泰西缎　Taixi satin (a reversible fabric woven by imported machine in the late Qing Dynasty)
贡缎　Palace satin
缂丝　silk tapestry; "carved silk"
绨　bengaline; a kind of thick silk
绫　fairly stiff silk; thin silk; twill-weave silk; damask silk
板绫　thick damask
花绫　figured damask
暗花绫　thin silk with veiled pattern
堆绫　thin silk applique
罗　silk gauze; thick gauze
杭罗　Hang silk gauze; silk gauze of Hangzhou
二色罗　two-colored silk gauze
暗花罗　silk gauze with veiled design

纱　gauze

绮　figured woven silk material; damask; twilled silk cloth

纨　processed fine and light silk; fine silk fabrics

纳纱　petit-point gauze

片金纱　gold-foiled silk gauze

戳纱　silk taffeta

绛红纨　deep red silk

纨素　fine, white silk

绢　thin, tough silk; plain silk

绉　crape; crepe

帛（丝织品的总称）　silks (clothes made from silk)

丝绒、经绒、天鹅绒　velvet

棉绒、纬绒、平绒　velveteen

印花棉绒　velveret

驼绒　camel's-hair cloth

漳绒　Zhang velvet; velvet of Zhangzhou

铺绒　silk embroidered by "satin stitch" method

双层织物、改机　double woven jacquard

双面织物　reversible fabric

丝织物　silk fabric

缯　an ancient term for silk fabric

麻织物　hemp fabric

毛织物　woolens; woolen fabric

氆氇　a woolen fabric produced in Tibet

棉织物　cotton textile

平纹织物　plain cloth

斜纹织物　twill; drill

刺　绣
EMBROIDERY

绣品　embroidered works; embroideries

绣花　do embroidery; to embroider

挑花　cross-stitch work; hand stitch work

补花、贴花　applique; patchwork

线　thread

粗（细）线　thick（thin）thread

棉线　cotton thread

丝线　silk thread

绒线　floss for embroidering

绣线　embroidery thread

彩线　colored thread

金线　gold thread

金银线　gold and silver thread

绣花丝线　filoselle; floss silk

绣工、刺绣活　needlework

绛绣　cut embroidery

织绣　tapestry and embroidery

苏绣　Suzhou embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries

湘绣　Hunan (or Changsha) embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries

蜀绣　Sichuan (or Chengdu) embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries

粤绣　Guangdong (or Guangzhou) embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries

汴绣　Kaifeng (or Bian) embroidery

瓯绣　Wenzhou (or Ou) embroidery

鲁绣　Shandong (or Lu) embroidery in the Ming Dynasty

顾绣　Gu's embroidery; embroidery of Gu (Gu Minshi) family in the Ming Dynasty

京绣　Beijing embroidery

衣线绣　needlepoint embroidery

丝绣　silk embroidery

绒绣　woolen embroidery; crewelwork

发绣　hair embroidery

珠绣　glass-beaded embroidery

锁绣　chain-stitch embroidery

贴刺绣　applique embroidery

手工绣　hand embroidery

机绣　machine embroidery

盘金绣　cord-stitch embroidery

平绣　plain embroidery

双面绣　double-faced embroidery; embroidery on both sides

十字绣　cross-stitch embroidery

长寿绣　embroidery of longevity pattern

彩绣　colored embroidery

金银线绣　embroidery done with gold and silver threads

纹　饰
DECORATIONS

暗花　（参见 P158）

素花　plain pattern

浮花　embossed pattern

通花　figured on both sides

满花　all-over pattern

格子花　checker pattern

锦字　characters embroidered on brocade or tapestry

十二章　the twelve imperial emblems

十二章纹（日、月、星辰、山、龙、华虫、宗彝、藻、火、粉米、黼、黻）　the Twelve Ornaments embroidered on imperial dragon robes conventionally representing the sun, the moon, a constellation, a mountain, the dragon, the pheasant, two ritual vessels, an aquatic grass, flames of fire, grains of rice or millet, an axe, and a device of doubtful origin. The emperor wore all twelve, other persons wore only those appropriate to their rank.

八宝平水纹　design of Eight Treasures and smooth waves

八宝立水纹　design of Eight Treasures and twilled waves

龙纹　dragon design

正龙纹　front-viewed dragon design; design of facade view of dragon

侧龙纹　profile image of dragon

行龙纹　flying dragon design

蟠龙纹　（参见 P161）

团龙纹　（参见 P242）

二龙戏珠纹　two dragons playing with a pearl; two dragons pursuing a pearl

百花撵龙纹　design of dragon following with flowers

暗夔龙凤纹　veiled design of Kui-dragon and phoenix

龙凤穿花纹　design of dragon and phoenix among flowers

云龙纹　（参见 P258）

海水云龙纹　design of dragon among clouds above the sea

蟒纹　python design

寸蟒纹、金钱蟒纹　medallion of python

如意纹　"S"-shaped design

如意云纹　（参见 P242）

万福万寿纹　auspicious design of bats and character Shou (longevity)

吉祥纹　design of auspicious symbols

百蝶彩纹　design of butterflies of various colors

四合如意纹　design of headpieces of Ruyi-sceptre in checks

八仙图　design of Eight Immortals

八仙庆寿图　design of Eight Immortals on birthday celebration

天鹿纹　rabbit design

天鹿桂月图　design of rabbit and laurel in the moon

龟背纹　tortoise-shell design

流云纹　design of drifting clouds

对饮纹　design of a drinking pair

回纹　（参见 P129）

联珠纹　pearl-bordered medallion

博古纹　design of antiques

杂宝纹　design of miscellaneous treasures

冰梅纹　design of ice-crack and plum blossom

瑞花纹　design of auspicious flowers

团花纹　floral medallion; rosette

宝相纹　rosette design; design of composite flowers

灵芝纹　Lingzhi fungus design; mythic fungus design

牡丹纹　peony design

暗梅兰松竹纹　veiled design of plum blossom, orchid, pine and bamboo

海水江崖纹　design of stylized waves and mountain peaks

曲水纹　design of meandering water

寿山福海纹　design of longevity as mountains and happiness as

the sea

八团喜相逢纹　eight medallions of two colored butterflies facing each other

花鸟（蝶）纹　design of birds (butterflies) and flowers

对鸟纹　confronting bird design

寒雀纹　design of wintery magpies

鸳鸯戏莲纹　design of mandarin duck playing with lotus

勾莲纹　delineated lotus design

方格朵花纹　design of flowers in checks

卷草纹　（参见 P260）

蔓草纹　trailing grass design

竹石纹　design of bamboo and rocks

云鹤纹　design of cranes and clouds

缠枝纹　design of interlocking sprays; design of winding branches

串枝纹　design of trailing branches

折枝纹　design of disconnected sprays

连枝纹　design of linking sprays; design of connected branches

兰桂齐芳纹　design of magnolia and sweet-scented osmanthus

万字菊纹　design of swastika and chrysanthemum

葫芦双喜纹　design of calabash and the character "Shuangxi" (double happiness)

汉瓦纹　design of Han-styled tile

岁寒三友纹　design of the "three cold-weather friends" — pine, bamboo and plum blossom

三羊开泰纹　design of three rams symbolizing the auspicious beginning of a New Year

九羊消寒图　design of nine rams chasing away the cold

青碧山水图　design of blue and green landscape

色彩　color; hue

本色、自然色　natural color

色调　color tone

素色　plain color

多种色　multicolor; many hues

染色　dye; coloration

配色　color matching

补色　complementary colors

底色　color of ground

浓色　rich in color

淡色　light color; undertone; tint

古代服饰
ANCIENT COSTUMES AND ACCESSORIES

服装　costume; dress; clothing; clothes; attire

服饰　dress and personal adornment; costumes and accessories

古装　ancient costume

中装　traditional Chinese clothing

满装、旗装　Manchu attire; Manchu dress

清宫服饰　costumes and accessories of the Qing court

上衣　upper clothes

下裳　lower skirt

礼服　ceremonial dress worn by emperor at solemn occasions

朝服　court dress

朝袍　court robe worn by emperor, empress and imperial concubines

朝褂　court vest (a sleeveless garment worn by the empress over the court robe)

朝裙　court dress (a one-piece dress worn by the empress)

吉服　formal dress worn by the emperor for occasions of less importance

龙袍　dragon robe; imperial robe

五爪龙袍　imperial robe embroidered with five-clawed dragon

皇帝龙褂　dragon gown worn by the emperor over the formal dress

后妃龙褂　dragon garment worn by the empress and imperial concubines

常服　ordinary dress (worn by the emperor for ordinary occasions)

皇帝常服袍（褂）　ordinary robe (gown or jacket) worn by the emperor

后妃常服袍（褂）　ordinary robe (garment) worn by the empress and imperial concubines

行服　travelling dress worn by the emperor for making inspection

tours

行服袍（褂） travelling robe (jacket)

行裳 travelling skirt

端罩 fur overcoat (a winter overcoat made of purple marten or black fox fur, with the hair on the outside)

戎服 martial attire

大阅胄甲 a suit of armour worn by the emperor for reviewing troops

便服 informal dress

马褂 mandarin coat; mandarin dress

紧身 close-fitting undergarment

氅衣 cloak

衬衣 undercoat

褂襕 long vest

帔领 shoulder cape; collar drape

品官礼服 high official's ceremonial dress

蟒袍 python robe; robe embroidered with python design

五爪九蟒蟒袍 robe embroidered with nine five-clawed pythons

四爪八蟒蟒袍 robe embroidered with eight four-clawed pythons

四爪五蟒蟒袍 robe embroidered with five four-clawed pythons

补服 official vestment embroidered with a patch of pattern marking the rank; official vestment embroidered with insignia badge

补子 Bu Zi, a patch of pattern marking the rank; a decorative plaque; a rank badge

圆补 round plaque with dragon design used by the imperial clansmen over the rank of Bei Zi

方补 square plaque with bird or animal design used by officials

黼 square patch on official's costume embroidered with white and black axes

文官补子 a patch of bird design used by the civil official

一品文官补子（仙鹤） patch of crane design for civil official of the 1st grade

二品文官补子（锦鸡） patch of gold pheasant design for civil official of the 2nd grade

三品文官补子（孔雀） patch of peacock design for civil official

of the 3rd grade

四品文官补子（云雁） patch of wild goose design for civil official of the 4th grade

五品文官补子（白鹇） patch of silver pheasant design for civil official of the 5th grade

六品文官补子（鹭鸶） patch of egret design for civil official of the 6th grade

七品文官补子（鸂鶒） patch of mandarin duck design for civil official of the 7th grade

八品文官补子（鹌鹑） patch of quail design for civil official of the 8th grade

九品文官补子（练雀） patch of paradise flycatcher design for civil official of the 9th grade

武官补子 patch of animal design used by the military officer

一品武官补子（麒麟） patch of unicorn design for military officer of the 1st grade

二品武官补子（狮子） patch of lion design for military officer of the 2nd grade

三品武官补子（豹子） patch of leopard design for military officer of the 3rd grade

四品武官补子（虎） patch of tiger design for military officer of the 4th grade

五品武官补子（熊） patch of bear design for military officer of the 5th grade

六品武官补子（彪） patch of young tiger design for military officer of the 6th grade

七、八品武官补子（犀牛） patch of rhinoceros design for military officers of the 7th and 8th grades

九品武官补子（海马） patch of sea horse design for military officer of the 9th grade

霞帔 embroidered tasselled cape worn as part of ceremonial dress by noblewomen

袄裙 fur-skirt worn by official's wife

冠帽 headgear

朝冠 court hat; crown; hat of ceremony

皇帝朝冠 emperor's court hat decorated with gold dragons

皇后朝冠　empress' court hat decorated with gold phoenixes

帝（后）冬（夏）朝冠　court hat worn by the emperor (empress) in winter (summer)

吉服冠　formal hat; hat worn with formal dress

常服冠　ordinary hat; hat worn with ordinary dress

如意帽（皇帝便服冠）　informal hat; hat worn with informal dress

行服冠　travelling hat; hat worn with travelling dress

喜字冠　imperial bride's hat decorated with the character "Shuangxi" (double happiness)

品官朝冠　official's court hat with different top decoration and feather streamer which diverses according to the rank

官吏冬朝冠　winter court hat for the official

官吏夏纬帽　summer court hat for the official

帽顶　hat finial; hat top

朝冠顶　court hat finial

吉服冠顶　formal hat finial

便服冠顶　informal hat finial

帽顶装饰　hat top decoration; hat finial decoration

红宝石帽顶（一品官）　hat with ruby finial for officials of the 1st grade

珊瑚帽顶（二品官）　hat with coral finial for officials of the 2nd grade

蓝宝石帽顶（三品官）　hat with sapphire finial for officials of the 3rd grade

青金石帽顶（四品官）　hat with lapis lazule finial for officials of the 4th grade

水晶帽顶（五品官）　hat with crystal finial for officials of the 5th grade

砗磲帽顶（六品官）　hat with white shell finial for officials of the 6th grade

素金帽顶（七品官）　hat with gold finial for officials of the 7th grade

镂花阴文金帽顶（八品官）　hat with gold openwork finial with inscription in intaglio for officials of the 8th grade

镂花阳文金帽顶（九品官）　hat with gold openwork finial with

inscription in relief for officials of the 9th grade

顶戴　rank button (bead) worn on official's hat as a sign of rank

花翎　peacock feather worn on the back of the official's hat

顶戴花翎　ruby and coral buttons and peacock feathers worn on officials' hats

无眼蓝翎　blue pheasant feather streamer without eye

单眼花翎　peacock feather streamer with single eye; single-eyed peacock feather streamer

双眼花翎　peacock feather streamer with two eyes; double-eyed peacock feather streamer

三眼花翎　peacock feather streamer with three eyes; three-eyed peacock feather streamer

翎管　feather fastener; plume-holder

乌纱帽　black gauze hat worn by officials

缨帽　ceremonial hat with red tassel

凤冠　phoenix coronet for a woman of noble rank; a headgear for a lady or bride

帽正　a badge made of precious stone placed on the front center of the band of a hat

帽花、帽饰　hat ornaments; ornaments on the front of a hat

帽顶算盘结　red silk knot in the shape of an abacus bead on the hat top

帽顶红绒结　red knotted floss on the hat top

帉　hanging streamer

腰带　belt; girdle

饰带　decorative belt

珠饰带　beaded belt

朝带　court belt

龙纹金方（圆）版饰带　court belt decorated with square (round) gold plaque with dragon design

吉服带　formal belt; belt worn with formal dress

行服带　travelling belt; belt worn with travelling dress

带饰　belt ornaments

带板　belt plaque

带钩　（参见 P128）

龙首带钩　dragon-head-shaped belt hook

带扣　（参见 P128）
带环　belt ring
带瓦　belt ornament in the shape of a tile
带头　belt-end ornament
凉带　summer belt
流苏　tassel
饰件　accessory
朝珠　a string of court beads；court necklace；court rosary containing 108 pearl beads
东珠朝珠　a string of court beads made of pearls from northeastern China
凤眼菩提朝珠　court beads of Bodhi seeds
背云　Beiyun，an ornament of a string of court beads
挂刀、腰刀　a knife carried at the waist；a knife worn on the girdle
罗盘　compass
牙签筒　toothpick case
火镰套　purse for flint steel
鼻烟壶　（参见 P151）
方形腰包　square waistbag
荷包　small embroidered handbag；pouch；purse
香囊　sachet；perfume bag；pomander
烟丝袋　embroidered tobacco leaves bag
旱烟袋　long-stemmed Chinese pipe
玉烟咀　jade mouthpiece of a long-stemmed Chinese pipe
手串　rosary-bracelet；a string of beads
十八子手串　a string of 18 beads
手镯　（参见 P173）
软镯　bracelet of pearls
耳饰　ear ornaments
耳环　earring
耳珰　eardrop
佩　pendant
坠角　pendant-end
彩帨　a kind of silk kerchief
遮眉勒　crocheted headband

发勒　hair clasp
簪笄、发钗　hairpin
扁方　hair crosspiece; flat square hairpin
钿子　headdress
钿花　headdress flowers
钿口　headdress accessory
头花　hair ornaments
步摇　dangling hairpin
挖耳钗　earpick-hairpin
金约　Jinyue (court hat band)
领约　Lingyue (neckpiece; neckband; neck-ring)
鞋袜　footgear
鞋类　footwear
朝靴　court boots
花盆底鞋　shoes with flower-pot-shaped sole
元宝底鞋　shoes with silver-ingot-shaped sole
高底鞋　high-soled shoes
绣花鞋　embroidered shoes
珠饰鞋　beaded shoes
袜类　hosiery
高鞠袜　stockings
中鞠袜　half stockings
矮鞠袜　socks
民间服装　folk costumes
男装　men's clothing; menswear
女装　women's clothing; women's costume
旗袍　a close-fitting woman's dress with high neck and slit skirt; a Chinese-style gown; cheongsam
袍　robe; long gown
褂　a short gown with round callar and center buttonholes
大褂、长衫　long garment; unlined long gown
马褂　mandarin jacket worn over a gown
布袍　cotton robe
丝绸袍　silk robe
锦袍　embroidered robe
单袍　unlined robe

夹袍　lined robe

棉袍　cotton-padded garment; cotton-quilted garment

皮袍　fur-lined garment

丝棉袍　silk-floss-padded garment

大氅　cloak

大襟袄（袍）　a Chinese-style jacket (garment) with buttons on the right forepart

对襟袄　a Chinese-style center-buttoned jacket; a Chinese-style jacket with buttons down the front

小袄　a short close-fitting jacket

夹袄　a lined jacket or coat

棉袄　cotton-padded jacket

棉裤　cotton-padded trousers

皮袄　fur-lined jacket

坎肩、背心、马甲　waistcoat; vest; sleeveless jacket

男装坎肩　male vest

女装坎肩　shoulder cape shaped like the male vest

大襟坎肩　long-front vest

对襟坎肩　center-vented vest

琵琶襟坎肩　side-vented vest

棉坎肩　cotton-padded waistcoat

裙　skirt

凤尾裙　phoenix-tail skirt

百褶裙　pleated skirt

布鞋　cotton shoes; cloth shoes

皂鞋　black cloth shoes

皂靴　black cloth boots

毡靴　felt boots

棉鞋　cotton-padded shoes

云头棉鞋　cotton-padded shoes of silk damask with cloud-patterned toe

尖足绣花小脚鞋　tiny embroidered shoes worn on bound feet

布袜　cloth stockings

线袜　thread socks

瓜皮帽　a small round skullcap; skullcap; a kind of skullcap resembling the rind of half a watermelon

风帽　wind hat; wind bonnet; hood

瓦楞帽　common man's hat with depression in middle; corrugated man's hat

方巾　kerchief (worn by male scholars of the Ming Dynasty); a kind of hood (worn by intellectuals in the Ming Dynasty)

头盖、头巾　head-cover; scarf; kerchief

地毯　carpet; rug

壁毯　tapestry

花毯、挂毯　arras

毛毯　woolen blanket

床帷　bed curtain

椅披　slipcover for a chair

绣垫　embroidered cushion

织绣画　picture embroidered on silk

织锦画　picture woven in silk

风景织锦　landscape woven in silk

裱片　mounted cloth fragment

经皮　Buddhist sutra cover

包首　wrapper

疋料　a bolt of cloth; a roll of cloth

衣料　clothing material; material for clothing; dress material

成衣　ready-made clothes

衣领　collar

圆领　round collar

花边领　lace collar

襟　front of a garment

衽　lapel of a garment

大襟　the front of a Chinese garment with buttons on the right

对襟　a kind of Chinese-style jacket with buttons down the front

衩　slit; vent

裾　overlap of a robe; the full front and back of a Chinese gown

下摆　hem-line

袖　sleeve

无袖　sleeveless

长袖　long sleeve

短袖　short sleeve

宽袖　loose sleeve
紧袖　tight sleeve
箭袖　horsehoof-shaped cuff
马蹄袖　horseshoe cuff
钮扣　button
鎏金扣　gilt button
金（银、翡翠、珊瑚）扣　gold（silver，jadeit，coral）button
小石粒铜扣　small bead-shaped copper button
衣服下摆（下幅）　the lower hem of a gown，jacket or shirt
布　cloth
粗布　coarse cloth
细布　fine cloth
棉布　cotton cloth
色布　dyed cloth
花布　figured cloth
夏布　grass cloth
土布　handwoven（or handloomed）cloth；homespun cloth
质地　texture
质量　quality
规格　specification
幅宽　width
幅面　breadth
单幅　single breadth
双幅　double breadth
衣服尺寸　measurements of a dress
衣服身长　length of a dress
肩宽　width of shoulder
两袖通长　overall length of two sleeves
袖口宽　width of cuff
腰围　waistline
裙长　length of skirt
开叉　vent（or slit）in the sides of a dress
左（右）开叉长　length of the left（right）slit
前（后）开裾长　length of the full front（back）of a Chinese gown
下摆宽　width of the lower hem of a dress

披领长（宽） length (width) of collar drape

垂带长 length of streamer

工艺 technology; craft

织造技艺 weaving technology

手工织造法 hand-woven techniques

手工镂空 hand-crochet

绞缬法 tie-and-dye method

（布）绞缠法 twined textile

织结 knot

捻、搓 twist

经线 warp

纬线 woof (or weft)

纬线起花 weft-patterned

压金银线 couched gold and silver threads

金（银）累丝 in gold (silver) filigree; gold or silver filigreed

缝 sew; stitch

缀 sew on

补缀 patch

缉 sew in close stitches

缉米珠 sew seed pearls in close stitches on

钉珊瑚珠 sew coral beads on

手工缝纫 hand sewing

缝纫技巧 sewing skill

蜡染 wax printing; batik

印染 printing and dyeing

织绣精品选
SELECTED WORKS OF EMBROIDERY

宋沈子蕃缂丝《梅花寒鹊图》 Silk tapestry with pattern of plum blossom and wintry magpies, by Shen Zifan, Song Dynasty

宋朱克柔缂丝《鹡鸰图》 Silk tapestry with wagtail pattern, by Zhu Kerou, Song Dynasty

元缂丝《八仙图》轴 Silk tapestry with pattern of the Eight Immortals, hanging scroll, Yuan Dynasty

元缂丝《赵孟頫书早朝诗》 Silk tapestry with the calligraphy of the poem "Early Morning Court" by Zhao Mengfu, Yuan Dynasty

明韩希孟绣《宋元名迹册》 Album of masterpieces of the Song and Yuan dynasties, embroidered by Han Ximeng, Ming Dynasty

明缂丝《瑶池集庆图》轴 Silk tapestry with pattern of the Assembly of Immortals in Fairyland, hanging scroll, Ming Dynasty

明杏黄祥云蟒妆花纱袍 Apricot gauze robe with pattern of four-clawed dragons and clouds, Ming Dynasty

明大红地龟背如意瑞华锦大氅 Cloak of brocade with pattern of tortoise-shell, Ruyi-sceptre and auspicious flowers over a red ground, Ming Dynasty

清明黄地纳纱彩云金龙朝袍 Petit-point gauze court robe with pattern of colored clouds and golden dragons over a bright yellow ground, Qing Dynasty

清蓝纱地描金云龙单朝袍 Unlined court robe of blue gauze with pattern of dragons among clouds in gold tracery, Qing Dynasty

清明黄缎绣彩云金龙夹朝袍 Lined court robe of bright yellow satin embroidered with design of colored clouds and golden dragons

清黄色暗八宝纹绸棉袍 Cotton-padded robe of yellow silk with veiled design of the eight Buddhist sacred emblems, Qing Dynasty

清明黄地云蝠团寿妆花缎棉袍 Cotton-padded robe of bright yellow satin with design of clouds, bats and medallions of character "Shou" (longevity), Qing Dynasty

清蓝缎织彩云金龙纹皮朝袍 Fur-lined court robe of blue satin woven with design of colored clouds and golden dragon, Qing Dynasty

清黑狐皮端罩 Winter overcoat of black fox fur, Qing Dynasty

清大红缎绣花卉夹氅衣 Lined cloak of bright red satin embroidered with floral design, Qing Dynasty

清绿纱绣折枝梅花金团寿单衬衣 Unlined undercoat of green

gauze embroidered with pattern of plum blossom sprays and golden medallions of character "Shou" (longevity), Qing Dynasty

清月白缎织彩花蝶夹衬衣　Lined undercoat of bluish white satin woven with polychrome flowers and butterflies, Qing Dynasty

清湖色缂丝竹石纹坎肩　Waistcoat of light blue silk tapestry with bamboo and rock pattern, Qing Dynasty

清湖色缎绣藤萝夹马褂　Lined mandarin jacket of light blue satin embroidered with design of Chinese wistaria, Qing Dynasty

清康熙帝锁子金叶锦盔甲　A suit of brocade armour decorated with herringbone pattern and gold foils worn by Emperor Kangxi, Qing Dynasty

清乾隆明黄缎绣五彩云金龙盔甲　A suit of bright yellow satin armour embroidered with polychrome clouds and golden dragons, Qianlong period, Qing Dynasty

清黄缎绣金龙皇帝大阅甲　Yellow satin helmet and armour embroidered with golden dragon pattern worn by the emperor for reviewing troops, Qing Dynasty

清皇帝夏行服冠　Travelling hat worn by the emperor in summer, Qing Dynasty

清皇贵妃冬朝冠　Winter crown for the imperial honourable concubine, Qing Dynasty

清蓝漳绒串珠云头朝靴　Court boots of blue Zhang Velvet with a toe decorated with beaded pattern of clouds, Qing Dynasty

清明黄缎珠绣朝靴　Court boots of bright yellow satin with beaded embroidery, Qing Dynasty

清红缎绣花蝶高底鞋　High-soled shoes of red satin embroidered with pattern of flowers and butterflies, Qing Dynasty

清红缎绣金鱼元宝底鞋　Red satin shoes with silver-ingot-shaped sole embroidered with golden fish pattern, Qing Dynasty

清蓝缎织金龙凤高腰棉袜　Cotton-padded stockings of blue satin woven with golden dragon and phoenix design, Qing Dynasty

清白绫画花蝶短夹袜　Lined socks of thin white silk painted with design of flowers and butterflies, Qing Dynasty

清金地几何花卉纹丝毯　Silk blanket with geometric and floral pattern against a golden ground, Qing Dynasty

清金线地“玉堂富贵”壁毯　Tapestry with auspicious floral design over a gold-thread-woven ground, Qing Dynasty

十五　漆器
LACQUER WARE

类　别
CLASSIFICATION

单色漆　monochromatic lacquer ware
黑漆　black lacquer ware
朱漆　cinnabar lacquer ware
紫漆　purple lacquer ware
黄漆　yellow lacquer ware
绿漆　green lacquer ware
褐（栗）色漆　brown lacquer ware
金漆　golden lacquer ware
素漆　plain lacquer ware; undecorated lacquer ware
罩漆　coated with transparent lacquer ware
罩朱漆　cinnabar lacquer ware coated with transparent lacquer
罩黄漆　yellow lacquer ware coated with transparent lacquer
罩金漆　golden lacquer ware coated with transparent lacquer
描金罩漆　lacquer ware with gold-painted design, coated with transparent lacquer
描金漆　lacquer ware with gold-painted design; gold-painted lacquer ware
洒金漆　monochromatic lacquer ware sprinkled with gold foils
戗金漆　lacquer ware incised and filled with gold dust
泥金画漆　gold-paste-painted lacquer ware
彩漆　polychrome painted lacquer ware; colored design painted on monochromatic lacquer ware
堆漆　embossed lacquer ware
填漆　filled-in with lacquer ware

雕漆　carved lacquer ware

剔红　carved red lacquer ware

剔黑　carved black lacquer ware

剔黄　carved yellow lacquer ware

剔绿　carved green lacquer ware

剔彩　carved polychrome lacquer ware

剔犀（又称云雕）　carved marbled lacquer ware (also known as "cloudy-carving")

款彩（俗称刻灰）　polychrome intaglio lacquer ware; carved and painted polychrome lacquer ware (commonly known as "carved ash")

镶嵌漆器　lacquer ware with inlays

嵌螺钿漆器　lacquer ware inlaid with mother-of-pearl; lacquer ware with shell inlays

百宝嵌漆器　lacquer ware inlaid with jewels

嵌银丝漆器　silver-inlaid lacquer ware

犀皮漆（虎皮漆或菠萝漆）　mottled flat lacquer ware; lacquer ware with streaks (also known as "tiger-skin lacquer or pineapple lacquer")

形　制
SHAPES

匣、盒　small box; casket; case

提匣　portable casket; handled box

攒盒　box with fit-in trays; container for holding various foods simultaneously

捧盒　domed box for containing food; food comtainer

套盒、屉盒　tiered box; nested boxes

二层套盒　two-tiered box set; two-layered nested boxes

三撞盒　three-tiered box

方胜盒　box in the shape of intersecting lozenges; intersecting-lozenge-shaped box

春寿字盒　box with characters Chun (spring) and Shou (longevity)

仿古铜簠式盒　box in the style of ancient bronze Fu (food container)

带座磬式盒　box in the shape of a Qing (sonorous stone) with a stand

双桃式盒　twin-peach-shaped box

瓜式盒　melon-shaped box; box in the shape of a melon

菱花式盒　water-caltrop-shaped box

双缘宝盒　double-circle-shaped box

书函式匣　box in the shape of a slipcase

漆砂砚盒　lacquer-sand box for containing inkstone

委角方盒　square box with flattened angles

碗　（参见 P148）

靶碗、高足碗　stem-bowl

圆耳杯　round ear-cup; round cup with a handle

攒盘　（参见 P152）

双圆盘　twin-disk plate

葵瓣盘　mallow-petal-shaped plate; plate with foliaged rim

梅花式盘　plum-blossom-shaped plate

荷叶式盘　lotus-leaf-shaped plate

菱花式盘　water-chestnut-flower-shaped plate; water-caltrop-shaped plate

银锭盘　silver-ingot-shaped plate

八瓣盘、莲瓣盘　eight-lobed plate

瓜楞式执壶　melon-shaped ewer

钵式盒　alms-bowl-shaped box

寿字形盒　box in the shape of a character "Shou" (longevity)

戥子盒　box for small steelyard

花觚　flower goblet

笔筒　（参见 P176）

宝座式笔架　brush stand in the shape of a throne

舟式洗　boat-shaped washer

经箱　case for containing sutra

奁　toilet case; dressing case

座屏、插屏　table screen; portable screen

挂屏　hanging panel; hanging screen; wall plaque

纹　饰
DECORATIONS

八宝纹　design of the eight Buddhist sacred emblems; design of the Eight Auspicious symbols

七珍纹　design of the Seven Buddhist Treasures

龙纹　（参见 P222）

飞龙纹　flying dragon design

翔龙纹　design of dragon hovering over the surging waves

海水游龙纹　design of dragon swimming in the water

团龙纹　dragon roundels; medallion of dragon

龙凤纹　（参见 P259）

夔龙纹　Kui-dragon design; archaic dragon design; formalized dragon design

麒麟纹　design of Kylin (Chinese unicorn)

狮子戏球纹　design of lion playing with a ball

宝珠纹　fiery ball design

百鹿纹　hundred-deer design

洗象图　design of elephant-bathing

职贡图　design of the Envoy with Tribute Bearers

雅集图　design of scholars gathering

问渡图　design of asking the ferry at a river bank

步月图　design of strolling under the moon

佛教故事图　design of Buddhist story

洗桐图　design of washing the Chinese parasol tree

松竹梅纹　design of pine, bamboo and prunus

灵芝纹　（参见 P223）

香草纹　sweet-smelling grass design

卷草纹　（参见 P260）

缠枝纹　（参见 P224）

格饰团花纹　posy design and latticed pattern

花蝶纹　flower-and-butterfly design

锦鸡纹　golden pheasant design

仙鹤纹　crane design

勾连云纹　design of cloud scrolls

如意云纹　S-shaped cloud design

波带纹　broad wave design

观瀑图　design of enjoying the sight of waterfall

抚琴图　design of playing the zither

携琴访友图　design of carrying zither to call on a friend
庭院高士图　design of noble scholar in a courtyard
烹茶图　design of brewing (or making) tea
赏花图　design of enjoying flowers
献花图　design of presenting flowers
五贤图　five worthies design
五老献寿图　design of five aged men offering birthday congratulations
群仙祝寿图　design of immortals celebrating someone's birthday
松鹤延年图　design of pine and crane symbolizing the long life
西园雅集图　design of scholars gathering in Xiyuan garden
竹林七贤图　design of the seven worthies retired to the bamboo grove
月下独酌图　design of a man drinking alone in the moonlight
书亭待鹤图　design of looking at a distant crane from the pavilion
文会图　design of scholars gathering
仙山洞府图　design of cave-dwelling on the mountain of the immortals
问道图　design of seeking for the doctrine of Taoism
芦雁图　design of reeds and wild geese
泛舟图　design of boating on a river
垂钓图　fishing design
松竹梅虫纹　design of insects amid pine, bamboo and plum blossom
茶花绶带纹　design of paradise flycatcher amid camellia
双层牡丹纹　two-layered design of peony
莲实纹　design of lotus seed
龙凤寿字纹　design of dragon, phoenix and character "Shou" (longevity)
开光云龙纹　design of dragon and cloud within a reserved panel
五伦图　design of five birds symbolizing five human relations
重环纹　（参见 P129）
网纹　reticulated design; mesh design; netlike design
锥画纹　needle-incised design
百子图　a hundred children design
卍字饰　swastika; swastica

暗八仙纹　the Eight Immortals emblems; emblems of the Eight Immortals; attributes of the Eight Immortals

御制耕织图　Imperial Edition of the Pictures of Tilling and Weaving

饕餮纹　（参见 P129）

雷纹　thunder and lightning design

胎　骨
BODIES

泥子、膏子　lacquer putty

木胎　wooden core; wooden-body

竹胎　bamboo-body; core made of bamboo strips

藤胎　rattan core; rattan-body

皮胎　leather core

夹纻　fabric core

泥胎　mud core; clay body

瓷胎、窑胎　porcelain core; porcelain-body

金属胎　metal core; metal-body

金（银）胎　gold (silver) core

铜丝胎　core made of copper wire

脱胎　bodiless; hollow-bodied dried lacquerwork

工　艺
TECHNIQUES

髹漆之术　technique of using lacquer

髹　to paint or lacquer articles; to coat with lacquer

直髹　direct lacquering; application of lacquer directly to any material without a fabric (or wood, bamboo, brass, etc.) base

刀法　carving technique

刻、剔　V- and V-shaped carving; used in making decorative lines of carving

毛雕　incision technique; incising in a bird-peck-like pattern

平雕　carve

凸（浮）雕 emboss; carved in relief

针刻、锥刻 carved with needle; needle-carving

锥画 an innovative decoration technique; awl-incision

雕镂 openwork-carving; carved in openwork

大雕填 bold carving and filling

雕填和填彩 incising and filling-in with colored lacquer

填漆 （参见 P239）

磨显填漆 polished filled-in with lacquer

镂嵌填漆 inlaid filled-in with lacquer

戗金细钩填漆 incised and filled-in with gold and colored lacquer

戗金细钩描漆 painted with gold and colored lacquer

戗金、镂金 Qiangjin technique; inlaid-gold; incising and filling with gold dust

戗金钻犀 incising and filling with gold dust against a mesh-design ground with a dot drilled in the center of each square of mesh

戗银 incising in lines and filling with silver; inlaid-silver

戗彩 incising in lines and filling the lines with colored lacquer

描金 design drawn in thin gold; design in gold tracery; painted in gold; painted with gold lines; design traced in gold

描金花边 rimmed in gold

识文描金 embossed with design in gold tracery

洒金 sprinkle with gold foils

洒金地 a gold-sprinkled ground

泥金 design drawn in thick gold; gold dust used as surface material; coating material made of glue and powered gold

鎏金 gold-plating; gilt; gilded

帖金或金箔 application of gold foil to lacquer

平脱 submerged and polished-out design

金银平脱 burnished works with gold or silver inlay; appliquing with gold or silver

金银错 （参见 P268）

镶嵌 （参见 P267）

嵌螺钿 mother-of-pearl inlay; inlaid with mother-of-pearl

衬色螺钿 mother-of-pearl design set off by colored pattern

百宝嵌 hundred-treasure inlay; design inlaid with jewels; inlaid

with gems forming design of

桂浆　use of cassia juice for coloring lacquer

攒生　lacquer-soaked-cloth technique

钻犀　drilled texture

堆彩　embossed colored lacquer

堆红或罩红　piled red lacquer; red-coated lacquer; the built-up red lacquer

款彩　Kuancai, polychrome carving (also known as Kehui)

刻灰　Kehui, carving sandlike putty that is painted with lacquer and filling the carving with colored lacquer

八宝灰　eight precious ashes (the ash applied to the body beneath the lacquer)

乌间朱线　crimson lines amid raven-black

红间黑带　black bands among red

夹纻　Jiazhu technique: fabric was to be used as the body over which many layers of lacquer were painted; use of fabric in the body of wares; wrapped-linen

印板刻平　pasted-on design with carving

彩绘　coloring

制胎　(参见 P268)

搽漆　application of transparent lacquer

编漆　lacquered basketwork

打蜡　technique of applying wax

磨光　polishing; burnishing

款识
REIGN MARK AND INSCRIPTION

年款　(参见 P143)

御铭　imperial inscription

书刻铭款　adding inscription to a lacquer ware

暗款　semi-concealed reign mark

双钩暗款　semi-concealed reign mark with double outline

大字戗金横列永乐款　a horizontal Yongle reign mark in large gold-etched characters

"大明永乐年制"直行款　inscription of six characters "Made in

Yongle Reign, Ming Dynasty" in a vertical line

四字双行戗金楷款 inscription of four gold-etched characters in regular script in two lines

描金六字三行篆款 inscription in three vertical lines of six characters in seal-script drawn in gold

楷书单行款 inscription of regular script in a single line

康熙癸丑款 Kangxi reign mark in Gui Chou (1673)

乾隆铭识 inscription by Emperor Qianlong

盖内铭识 inscription inside lid

口沿款识 inscription on vessel rim

腹部款识 inscription on vessel body

颈部款识 inscription on vessel neck

底款 inscription on vessel base; reign mark on underside of vessel

加书干支的横款 a horizontal mark with the date added in Chinese cyclical characters

干支纪年 the year-date in cyclical characters

漆器精品选
SELECTED WORKS OF LACQUER WARE

晚唐花鸟纹嵌螺钿黑漆经箱 Black lacquer sutra case inlaid with floral and bird design in mother-of-pearl, the late Tang Dynasty

宋花瓣形黑漆碗 Flower-petal-shaped bowl of black lacquer, Song Dynasty

元张成造剔红栀子纹圆盘 Round dish of carved red lacquer with Cape jasmine design, made by Zhang Cheng, Yuan Dynasty

元杨茂剔红花卉尊 Carved red lacquer vase with floral design, made by Yang Mao, Yuan Dynasty

元张敏德剔红赏花图圆盘 Round dish of carved red lacquer with design of enjoying the sight of flowers, made by Zhang Minde, Yuan Dynasty

元剔黑孔雀牡丹八瓣盘 Eight-lobed plate of carved black lacquer with peacock and peony design, Yuan Dynasty

元剔红双层海棠花圆盘 Round plate of carved red lacquer with

two-layered design of begonia, Yuan Dynasty

元黑漆嵌螺钿花鸟舟式洗　Black lacquer boat-shaped washer with mother-of-pearl inlays of birds and flowers, Yuan Dynasty

明剔红婴戏图靶碗　Stem-bowl of carved red lacquer with playing children pattern, Ming Dynasty

明剔彩云龙捧盒　Domed box of carved polychrome lacquer with cloud and dragon design, Ming Dynasty

明剔红鹦鹉牡丹葵瓣盘　Carved red lacquer plate with foliated rim decorated with parrot and peony design, Ming Dynasty

明剔红抚琴图八方盒　Octagonal box of carved red lacquer with design of playing lute, Ming Dynasty

明剔红杜甫诗图圆盒　Round box of carved red lacquer with design described in Du Fu's poem, Ming Dynasty

明戗金彩漆花卉寿字形盒　Polychrome lacquer box in the shape of character "Shou" (longevity) with floral design incised and filled-in with gold dust, Ming Dynasty

明剔犀云头纹二层盒　Two-tiered box of carved marbled lacquer with S-shaped cloud pattern, Ming Dynasty

明黑漆百宝嵌梅蝶圆盒　Round box of black lacquer inlaid with jewels design of plum blossom and butterfly, Ming Dynasty

明剔红松鹤延年图圆盘　Round plate of carved red lacquer with pine and crane design symbolizing long life, Ming Dynasty

明剔红三桃福禄寿字圆盘　Round plate of carved red lacquer with characters "Fu" (happiness), "Lu" (official position) and "Shou" (longevity) on three peaches separately, Ming Dynasty

明填彩漆梵文荷叶盘　Lotus-leaf-shaped plate decorated with Sanskrit and design filled-in with colored lacquer, Ming Dynasty

明剔黑开光花鸟纹梅瓶　Prunus vase of carved black lacquer with flower and bird pattern within reserved panels, Ming Dynasty

明剔红龙凤纹瓜楞式执壶 Carved red lacquer ewer in the shape of a melon with dragon and phoenix design, Ming Dynasty

明黑漆百宝嵌花卉方笔筒 Square brush holder of black lacquer inlaid with jewels forming floral design, Ming Dynasty

明填彩漆八宝小圆盒 Small round box filled-in with polychrome lacquer with design of the eight Buddhist sacred emblems, Ming Dynasty

明剔黑多宝碗 Carved black lacquer bowl with design of precious objects, Ming Dynasty

清绿地剔红诗句笔筒 Brush holder with verses of carved red lacquer over a green ground, Qing Dynasty

清葵生款漆砂砚盒 Rectangular black lacquer box for containing a lacquer-sand inkstone, with a mark of Kuisheng, Qing Dynasty

清剔犀如意云纹凤尾尊 Phoenix-tailed jar of carved marbled lacquer with S-shaped cloud design, Qing Dynasty

清剔彩葵瓣式三撞盒 Three-tiered box of carved polychrome lacquer in the shape of mallow petal, Qing Dynasty

清彩漆戗金寿春束腰盘 Rectangular wasp-waisted plate of polychrome lacquer with design of god of longevity and character "Chun" (spring) incised and filled with gold dust, Qing Dynasty

清填彩漆锦纹方胜式盒 Lacquer box in the shape of intersecting lozenges with brocaded design filled-in with polychrome lacquer, Qing Dynasty

清红漆描金龙凤纹手炉 Hand warmer of red lacquer with dragon and phoenix design in gold tracery, Qing Dynasty

清描油折枝花卉长方匣 Rectangular case with design of disconnected sprays of flowers in Tung oil, Qing Dynasty

清识文描金团花攒盒 Lacquer box with fit-in trays embossed with medallion-flower design in gold tracery, Qing Dynasty

清识文描金银桃式盒 Lacquer peach-shaped box with a raised decoration in gold and silver tracery, Qing Dynasty

清罩金漆荷花诗句盘 Rectangular gold lacquer plate with design of lotus and verses coated with transparent lacquer, Qing

Dynasty

清洒金地嵌玉瓜纹漆唾盂　Lacquer spittoon with melon design of jade inlay over a gold-scattered ground, Qing Dynasty

十六　古代家具
ANCIENT FURNITURE

材　质
MATERIALS FOR MAKING FURNITURE

硬木　hard wood

软木　soft wood

楠木　Nanmu wood; Persian cedar

樟木　camphor wood

花梨木　rosewood

黄花梨木　Huanghuali wood

铁力木　ferrous mesua wood; Tielimu

乌木、乌檀　ebony

檀香木、白檀　sandalwood; white sandalwood

紫檀　red sandalwood; padauk

杉木　fir wood; China fir

紫杉　yew

黄杨木　boxwood; Chinese littleleaf box tree

红木　mahogany; red wood

鸂鶒木　Xichimu wood

榉木　beech

桦木　birch; birch wood

楸木　Chinese catalpa

榆木　elm

椴木　basswood; linden

枣木　jujube wood

黄柏　golden cypress; yellow cypress

酸枝木（即红木）　mahogany

瘿木　gnarled wood; burl wood

天然木　natural wood

各类家具
CLASSIFICATION

几、案、桌类　Tables

几　low table or side table

圆几　round low table

方几　square low table

香几　incense-burner table; incense stand

折角香几　censer table with flattened angles

大理石面香几　marble-topped incense table

高束腰五足香几　high-waisted five legged incense stand

兽足圆几　round low table with claw-shaped legs

六足高几　tall six-legged table

卷书式几　small scrolled-end table; low table with scroll-shaped ends

茶几　tea table; teapoy; side table

双环几　small double-ring-shaped table; small table with a double-interlocking-circle-shaped top

翘头条几　narrow table with everted flanges

案　long and narrow table; old-fashioned long, narrow table

御案　imperial table

条案　long narrow side table

书案　studio table; library table; writing desk

大画案　large painting-table

香案　censer table

神案　altar table

平头案　plane-ended narrow table; table with flat ends; table with plane ends; flat-topped side table

折叠式大平头案　large portable narrow table

带屉板小平头案　small recessed-leg table with shelf

翘头案　long table with up-turned ends; long table with everted ends

卷头案　long table with down-turned ends; scroll-ended long table

卷书式脚案　long narrow table with a turn in feet

杯案　small cup table

架机案、搁板桌　trestle table

桌　table; a table of regular height

方桌　square table; square corner-leg table

喷面式方桌　square table with overhanging top

两用方桌　square table with removable legs

铜包角长桌　rectangular table of wood with copper-coated corners; rectangular wooden table with copper corner sheathings

宴桌　dining table

折叠式带屉酒桌　wine table with drawers and demountable legs

八仙桌　old-fashioned square table for eight people; square dining table for eight persons

半桌　half table; a table of half size of an old-fashioned square table

半圆桌　semi-circular table

瓷心半圆桌　semi-circular table with a porcelain top

月牙桌　crescent-shaped table

梯形桌　trapezoidal table

书桌　desk; writing desk

琴桌　Chinese lute table; oblong table

鼎式桌　table in the shape of a quadripod

独腿桌、支柱式桌　pedestal table

圆转桌　round turning table

折面桌　pembroke table

宝塔桌　tiered table

供桌　altar table; sacrificial table

棋桌　chess table; a square games table

梳妆桌　toilet table; dressing table

炕桌　small short-legged table on a kang (heatable brick bed); bedtable; bedtable with folding legs

矮桌　low table

两屉桌　table with two drawers; two-drawer table

座椅类　Chairs and Stools

宝座　throne; throne chair; settee

御座　imperial throne

七屏风式靠背扶手横方形宝座　imperial throne with a rectangular seat surrounded by a seven-leaf-screen-shaped back and armrests

宝座台　throne dais

椅　chair

靠背椅　high-back chair; side chair; chair with a high back

无靠手直椅　lounge chair

扶手椅　armchair

安乐椅　easy chair

罗汉椅　Arhat settee

双人椅　double chair; double seated chair

玫瑰椅　low-backed armchair

圈椅　round-backed armchair; horseshoe-shaped-back armchair

透雕靠背圈椅　armchair with curved rests and openwork splat

束腰圈椅　round-backed and wasp-waisted armchair

卷书式圈椅　low-backed armchair with a scroll shaped backrest

席心椅　chair with cane seat

木梳背椅　chair with the arched back of a comb; chair with a back shaped like an old-type comb

官帽椅　yoke-backed armchair; "official's hat"-shaped chair; winged hat-shaped chair

四出头官帽椅　yoke-backed armchair with four decorative ends to its back and armrest; official's hat-shaped chair with four protruding ends

四出头藤编官帽椅　caned yoke-back armchair with four decorative ends to its back and armrest

南官帽椅　southern yoke-backed armchair

扇面形南官帽椅　fan-shaped southern official's-hat-shaped armchair

灯挂式椅　chair with decorative ends to its back; yoke-backed side chair; lamphanger side chair

禅椅　seat for meditation

贵妃椅　Gui-fei style settee

太师椅　old-fashioned wooden armchair; armchair with a carved back; Grand tutor's armchair

摇椅　rocking chair

躺椅　couch; reclining chair

交椅式躺椅　folding reclining chair

交椅　an ancient folding chair

交杌　large campstool; folding stool

有踏床的交杌　folding stool with footrest

凳　stool; backless chair

方凳　square stool

圆凳　round stool

梅花式凳　lobe-shaped stool

长凳、条凳　bench

小凳子　tabouret

春凳　an old-fashioned bench

五腿梅花式凳　five-legged stool in the shape of plum blossom

海棠式凳　stool with a begonia-shaped seat

墩、坐墩　round stool; barrel stool

绣墩　garden stool; ceramic stool with an embroidered cover

鼓式敦　drum-shaped stool; circular stand in the form of a drum

四开光绣墩　garden stool with four openings

六角墩　hexagonal stool

瓜楞墩　melon-shaped stool

床榻类　Beds and Couches

床　bed

榻　couch; plain couch; daybed

竹（藤）榻　bamboo (cane) couch

束腰马蹄足榻　wasp-waisted daybed with hoof-shaped feet

木板床　plank bed

罗汉床　Arhat bed; Luohan bed; railed couch

三屏风式罗汉床　Luohan bed with three-panel-screen-shaped railings

连方围子罗汉床　railed couch with mesh-enclosure

曲尺式围子罗汉床　Luohan bed with lattice railings

独板围子罗汉床　Luohan bed with solid railings

大理石围子罗汉床　railed couch with marble panels

架子床　four-posted wooden bed; canopy bed

带门围子架子床　canopy bed with lattice railings; canopy bed with open-carved railings
六柱门围子架子床　six-posted canopy bed
万字纹围子架子床　four-posted bed with swastika pattern on the surrounding railings
月洞式门罩架子床　four-posted bed with a circular entrance
围床　bed enclosed with curtains
天蓬床　canopied bed
六腿折叠床　folding bed with six feet; six-legged folding bed
禅床　meditation bed; bed for meditation
木胎红漆床　wood-bodied red lacquer bed
榻凳　stepping stool
脚踏、脚凳　footstool; foot rest
束腰圆脚踏　wasp-waisted footstool with circular ends
宝座脚踏　footstool attached to the throne
滚凳　footstool with roller

橱柜类　Cabinets

橱　cabinet; closet; wardrobe; coffer
联二橱　two-drawer coffer
联三橱　three-drawer coffer
闷户橱　coffer with drawers and a hidden compartment
玻璃橱　glass-fronted cabinet
柜　cupboard; cabinet; sideboard; chest
方角柜　square-cornered cabinet
圆角柜　round-cornered cabinet;
透格门圆角柜　tapered cabinet with latticework doors
龙柜　huge cabinet with dragon design
古玩柜　curios cabinet
画柜　chest for storing paintings
书柜　bookcase; book cabinet
图书行柜　travelling scholar's bookcase
橱柜　compound cabinet in two parts
顶柜　cabinet
四件柜　compound cabinet in four parts; compound wardrobe
双层柜格　cabinet with two shelves above

顶箱立柜　cabinet with removable top section

顶竖柜　cabinet in two sections; two-sectioned cabinet

联三（四）柜　cabinet with three (four) drawers

衣柜　wardrobe

药柜　drug casket

茶柜　tea chest

食柜　cupboard; ambry

餐具柜　sideboard

柜格　cabinet with open upper compartment; open-style wooden cabinet

格　shelf

架格　shelving

棂格架格　shelving decorated with latticework

栏架格　bookcase with drawers and lattice panels

品字栏杆架格　shelves with alternating-square-opening lattice railings

十字栏杆书格　bookcase with shelves and railings

书格　simple bookcase without panels; bookshelf

多宝格（槅）　wooden curio stand with many sections; antique shelves; multi-tiered treasure boxes; treasure shelves

箱　chest; box; case

衣箱　storage chest

官皮箱　table-top chest

轿箱　sedan chair document case

屏风及其他　Screens and Others

屏风　screen; standing screen

折式屏风　screen of folding type

围屏　folding screen

单扇立屏　single-panel screen

四扇屏　four-leaf screen

六扇可移动屏风　six-leaved movable screen

六扇折屏　six-paneled folding screen

十二扇大屏风　large twelve-paneled screen; large screen with twelve leaves

插屏　table screen; table plaque; portable screen; a miniature

screen for ornamental purpose

双面插屏　double-faced table screen

插屏式小座屏风　table screen with decorative panel

挂屏　（参见 P241）

炕屏　bed screen

花柗、花几　flower stand

高足花台　tall flower stand

鼓形花台　drum-shaped flower stand; flower stand in the shape of a drum

树围　wooden apron for protecting trees

盆架　washbasin stand

高面盆架　washbasin stand with towel rack; towel rack and wash-basin stand

火盆架　brazier stand

三足灯台　lampstand with three legs

升降式灯台　adjustable lampstand

冠架　hat-stand; hatrack

衣架　clothes rack; dress hanger

穿衣镜　a dressing glass; a cheval-glass; full-length mirror

镜奁　toilet case; dressing case

镜台　dressing table; mirror stand

折叠式镜台　dressing case with folding mirror stand

五屏风式镜台　dressing table in the shape of a five-leaf screen

纹饰
DECORATIONS

龙纹　（参见 P222）

正龙纹　（参见 P222）

行龙纹　（参见 P222）

升龙纹　rising dragon design

云龙纹　design of dragon among clouds

龙戏珠纹　design of two dragons sporting with a pearl

双龙献宝纹　design of two dragons presenting a treasure

五龙捧寿纹　design of five dragons supporting a round character "Shou" (longevity)

龙凤纹　dragon and phoenix design

双凤朝阳纹　design of two phoenixes facing the sun

夔纹、拐子纹　Kui pattern; a legendary animal design; design of one-legged monster in fable

夔龙纹、拐子龙纹　Kui-dragon design; formalized dragon design; design of stylized dragon

夔凤纹　design of Kui-phoenix

螭纹　hydra design; hornless dragon design

团螭纹　medallion of hydras

云螭纹　hydra and cloud design

麒麟纹　unicorn design; design of fantastic animal

异兽纹　rare animal design

兽面纹　animal mask motif

兽面衔环纹　design of animal mask holding a ring in its mouth

朵云纹　embossed cloud design

海兽海水纹　design of sea animals and waves

浪涛纹　design of billowing waves

云纹　cloud design

瑞云纹　design of fortuitous clouds; auspicious cloud design

卷云纹　cirrus cloud design

云头纹　cloud cluster design; design of cloud scrolls

卍字饰　（参见 P243）

寿字纹　stylized character "Shou" (longevity)

万蝠纹　design of bat and swastika

蝠磬图　design of bat and sonorous stone

三羊开泰纹　（参见 P224）

绳璧纹　design of an ancient coin with a cord

双钩回纹　key-fret design in double outline

盘纹　fanciful knot design

乳丁纹　（参见 P129）

方胜纹　intersecting lozenge design

团花纹　（参见 P223）

四季花卉纹　design of flowers in four seasons; design of four-season-flower

宝相花纹　rosette design

双钩描金花卉　design of flowers outlined in gold tracery

蕉叶纹　banana leaf design

卷叶纹　design of leaf scrolls

卷草纹　design of grass scrolls; twisted-grass design; curly grass design; scrolled grass design

番莲纹　passion flower design; dahlia pattern

西洋花草纹　design of Western flowers and grasses

枯槎嫩桠纹　design of new sprouts growing out of old branches

工艺及其它
TECHNIQUES AND OTHERS

浮雕、凸雕　emboss; relief; carved in relief

透雕、镂空　openwork; carved in openwork

嵌　deeply inlay

镶　shallow inlay

镶嵌　（参见 P267）

包镶　coated with

包镶竹黄　coated with sheathless bamboo

包镶竹丝　coated with bamboo slips

嵌螺钿　（参见 P245）

洒螺钿　sprinkled with mother-of-pearls

嵌牙　inlaid with ivory; with ivory inlay

嵌瓷　inlaid with porcelain; with porcelain inlay

嵌玉　inlaid with jade; with jade inlay

嵌云石　inlaid with marble; with marble inset

嵌银片　inlaid with silver foils

嵌珐琅　inlaid with enamel

百宝嵌　inlays of precious stones; inlaid with precious stones; inlaid with gems forming design of

彩绘　painted with design of

描金　（参见 P245）

错银线　silver-wire inlays

点翠花卉　flowers of kingfisher feathers

纹理　grain pattern

对称木纹　matching wood grain pattern

黄花梨鬼面木纹　Huanghuali wood showing characteristic grain pattern of "ghost face"

刀法　knife-usage; carving skill

雕工　carving work

漆工　lacquer work

打磨　polishing work

卯眼　mortise

榫　tenon

榫法　joinery

榫卯结构　structure of mortise and tenon

榫卯连接　mortise-and-tenon joint

活榫结构　structure of movable tenons at joints

鸠尾结合　dovetail joint

燕尾榫　swallow-tailed tenon

夹头榫　elongated bridle joint

插肩榫　inserted shoulder joint

栽榫　planted tenon

枨　stretcher; brace; rail; strut

角枨　corner brace

横枨　transverse brace; side stretcher

霸王枨　giant's arm brace; curvilinear arm brace; struts supporting the tabletop

罗锅枨　hump-back-shaped brace; arched brace

双罗锅枨　double humpbacked stretcher

鸠尾榫枨　dovetailed stretcher

锁（管）脚枨　base stretcher; braces jointing four feet of a table

两卷枨　stretcher with scrolls

两卷相抵圆枨　round stretcher curved with two abutting curls

矮老　pillar-shaped strut

罗锅枨加矮老　humpbacked braces with pillar-shaped struts

卡子花　decorative struts

双钱卡子花　double-coin brace

桌档　table stretcher

椅档　chair stretcher

前档　front stretcher

横档　transverse stretcher

足部横档　transverse stretchers between legs of a chair
底部横档　transverse stretchers below a seat of a chair
档板　fender; inset panel
单支穿戴　single transverse brace
托泥　pad; floor stretcher
亮脚　a "brightening-the-feet" opening
牙板　serrated board
牙条　apron
素牙条　plain apron
四面牙条　aprons on all four sides
牙头　apron-head spandrel
素牙头　plain apron-head spandrel
牙子　serrated edge; spandrel
挂牙　hanging spandrel
龙形角牙　dragon-shaped spandrel
托角牙子　supporting spandrel
阳线牙条　beaded apron
券口　arch-shaped inner frame
券口牙条　arch-shaped inner frame apron
券口牙子　arch-shaped inner frame apron and spandrel
直牙条券口　straight apron with an arch-shaped inner frame
壸门　ornamental opening with cusped upper edge
壸门券口　ornamental opening with an arch-shaped inner frame
线脚　molding; beading
拦水线　a water-stopping molding
皮条线　a leather strap molding
"两柱香"线　"two incense-stick" beading
双洼线　two lines of concave molding
腰板　waist board
束腰　contracted waist; waisted; wasp-waisted
高束腰　high waist; high wasp-waisted; tall-girt up waist
无束腰　waistless; non-waisted
洼堂肚　crescent frame work (the upper section of the frame bulges in the center)
全身打洼　the whole frame is inset
边框打洼　the frame of the inset panel has concave molding

椅靠背　backrest

椅靠背板　back splat

向外弯曲的C靠背板　outward curving "C" -shaped back splat

搭脑　top rail；crest rail；backrest

直形搭脑　straight protruding crest rail

扶手　armrest；arm

直棂　spindle

鹅脖　"gooseneck" extensions（posts）；armrest post；supporting post

联帮棍　arm side post

立柱　post

床面　bed surface

床靠背　bed rest

桌面　tabletop

桌面饰漆心　table with a lacquer top

桌面嵌瘿木　table with a gnarled wood top

桌前沿　front apron of a table

椅（凳）面　seat

椅盘　seat frame

凳周沿　the outer edge of a stool

座面独板　a solid board top

圆柱形独腿　a single cylinder leg

直腿　straight leg

一腿三牙　three spandrels to one leg

牛腿　leg shaped like with sigmoid curves and carved with climbing veins

裹腿　rounded leg；encircling leg；leg-encircling

展腿　extended leg

束腰直腿　wasp-waisted and ending in straight legs

三弯腿　cabriole leg

矮腿三弯　short cabriole leg

四腿三弯　four cabriole legs；four curved legs

高拱罗锅腿　tall-arched leg

八字形腿　splayed leg

无束腰圆八字形腿　waistless with round splayed leg

撇足　flared feet

四腿带撇足　four legs with flared feet
外翘转足　everted feet
外翻云纹足　outward-curving feet with cloud-scroll design
内翻云纹足　inward-curving feet with cloud-scroll design
内卷球足　inward-scrolling ball feet
卷鼻足　scroll-nose-shaped feet
马蹄足　hoof-shaped feet
内翻矮马蹄足　short inward curving horse-hoof feet
兽爪足　claw-shaped feet
狮爪足　lion-claw-shaped feet
鹰爪足　eagle-claw-shaped feet

古代家具精品选
SELECTED WORKS OF FURNITURE

明代家具　Ming Dynasty (1368 – 1644)

黄花梨束腰方桌　Square wasp-waisted table of Huanghuali wood

黄花梨喷面式方桌　Square table of Huanghuali wood with overhanging top

黄花梨铜包角长桌　Rectangular Huanghuali wood table with copper corner sheathings

黑漆嵌螺钿花蝶纹翘头案　Black lacquered table with up-turned ends, inlaid with mother-of-pearl design of flowers and butterflies

紫檀雕荷花纹宝座　Red sandalwood throne decorated with lotus flower carvings

花梨木四出头官帽椅　Rosewood yoke-backed armchair with four protruding ends

紫檀藤心矮圈椅　Round-backed chair of red sandalwood with rattan seat cover

洒螺钿珐琅面圆凳　Round lacquered stool with an enamel top sprinkled with mother-of-pearl

黄花梨双螭纹玫瑰椅　Huanghuali wood low-backed armchair decorated with a carving of twin hydras

黄釉三彩瓷双龙纹绣墩　Yellow glazed porcelain barrel stool decorated with twin dragons pattern in three colors

黄花梨六足折叠式榻　Huanghuali wood six-legged folding couch bed

里漆嵌螺钿花鸟纹罗汉床　Black lacquered Arhat bed inlaid with mother-of-pearl design of birds and flowers

黄花梨万字纹围架子床　Huanghuali wood four-post bed with swastika pattern on the surrounding railings

黑漆款彩百鸟朝凤图八扇屏　Black lacquered, eight-leaf, folding screen decorated with a multicolored carving of a hundred birds paying homage to the phoenix

黑漆洒螺钿百宝嵌石榴纹插屏　Black lacquered table screen sprinkled with mother-of-pearl dust, featuring a pomegranate tree pattern made of gems

填漆戗金云龙纹立柜　Lacquered wooden cabinet with dragon-and-cloud design in gold relief and filled-in with colored lacquer

黄花梨百宝嵌顶竖柜　Huanghuali wooden cabinet in two sections inlaid with gems

清代家具　Qing Dynasty (1644 – 1911)

金漆龙纹宝座　Gold lacquered throne carved with dragon design

紫檀嵌玉花卉纹宝座　Red sandalwood throne inlaid with jade floral design

紫檀云龙纹海棠式凳　Red sandalwood stool with a begonia-shaped seat, decorated with dragon and cloud design

紫檀龙纹香几　Red sandalwood censer table carved with dragon design

紫檀雕勾莲纹长桌　Rectangular red sandalwood table carved with delineated lotus pattern

紫檀条桌　Long, narrow table of red sandalwood

红漆嵌螺钿寿字炕桌　Red lacquered bedtable inlaid with mother-of-pearl characters "Shou" (longevity)

红木边框嵌玉插屏　Table screen with mahogany frame, inlaid with jade fish

红雕漆兰亭雅集图挂屏　Hanging panel of carved red lacquer with design of scholars gathering in Lanting

黑漆边框点翠万花献瑞图围屏　Folding screen with black lac-

quered frame, decorated with flowers in kingfisher feather applique

黑漆描金百宝嵌屏风 Black lacquered screen painted with gold and inlaid with gems

紫檀嵌珐琅九龙榻 Red sandalwood couch bed inlaid with nine dragons in enamel

楠木云龙纹灯挂式椅 Nanmu wood chair with decorative ends to its back, decorated with dragon and cloud design

花梨木狮爪椅 Rosewood chair with lion-claw-shaped legs

楠木嵌青花瓷心凳 Nanmu wood stool with a blue-and-white porcelain seat

黄花梨座面鹿角椅 Chair made of antlers with a seat of Huanghuali wood

十七　宫廷器物
UTENSILS IN THE IMPERIAL COURT

珐琅器
ENAMEL WARE

工艺　Techniques

掐丝珐琅（俗称景泰蓝）　cloisonne enamel; filigreed enamel

画珐琅　painted enamel

錾胎珐琅(又称内填珐琅)　champleve enamel; embossed enamel

锤胎珐琅　hammered enamel

铸胎珐琅　cast enamel

金属胎珐琅　enamelware with a metal body; metal-bodied ware with enamelled design; metal-bodied ware with design in enamel

银胎软珐琅（俗称银烧蓝）　silver bodied ware with design in soft enamel

透明珐琅　translucent（or transparent）enamel

广珐琅　Guangzhou enamel ware

仿欧洲画珐琅　painted enamelware after European style; copy of European painted enamelware

珐琅工艺　enamelling technique

珐琅料　enamel ingredients; enamel pigments

烧蓝、烤蓝　enamelling

点蓝　enamel-filling

掐丝　（参见 P119）

镶嵌　inlay work; applique work; inset work; inlaid with; with inlay of; inset with

錾花　engraved with patterns; embossed with design of; chisel carving

锤揲　hammered in repoussé work
贴金　inlaid with gold foil；overlaid with gold leaf；gold-overlaid
镀金　gilt；gilded；plated with gold；gold-plating
描金　（参见 P245）
金银错　gold and silver inlay work；inlaid with gold and silver
镂金错彩　gilt and colored
制胎　body-making；base-making；mold-casting
金属胎　（参见 P244）
焙烧　bake；fire
烧焊　soldering；welding
打磨　polish；burnish
珐琅作　the enamel workshop in the Imperial Palace

珐琅器精品选　Selected Works of Enamelware

掐丝珐琅甪端　Cloisonne enamel Luduan（a mythical animal-shaped censer）

掐丝珐琅仙鹤烛台　Cloisonne enamel candlestick in the shape of a crane

掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹兽耳三环尊　Cloisonne enamel Zun（wine vessel）with three animal-shaped ears holding a ring, decorated with design of interlocking sprays of lotus

掐丝珐琅狮戏纹藏草瓶　Cloisonne enamel bottle for holy herbs, decorated with design of lions at play

掐丝珐琅荷塘白鹭图缸　Cloisonne enamel vat with design of egret and lotus pond

掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹多穆壶　Cloisonne enamel pot in the shape of the Mongolian milk teapot with design of interlocking sprays of lotus

掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹贲巴壶　Cloisonne enamel pot in the Tibetan style decorated with interlocking lotus pattern

掐丝珐琅夔龙纹暖砚盒　Cloisonne enamel box for warming ink-slab decorated with Kui-dragon pattern

掐丝珐琅兽面纹石榴尊　Cloisonne enamel pomegranate-shaped Zun（wine vessel）with animal mask motif

金胎掐丝珐琅开光仕女图执壶　Cloisonne enamel gold-bodied ewer inlaid with design of ladies within reserved panels

掐丝珐琅蟠螭纹四轮香车　Cloisonne enamel censer in the shape of four-wheeled chariot decorated with interlaced hydra design

掐丝珐琅勾莲纹瑞兽　Cloisonne enamel auspicious animal with delineated lotus design

掐丝珐琅天鸡尊　Cloisonne enamel Zun（wine vessel）on the back of an auspicious bird

掐丝珐琅仿古铜狮戏纹尊　Cloisonne enamel vase in the style of ancient bronze Zun with lion-at-play design

掐丝珐琅镂空云龙纹转心瓶　Cloisonne enamel revolving vase with dragon and cloud design in openwork

錾胎珐琅缠枝莲纹圆盒　Champleve enamel box with design of interlocking sprays of lotus

錾胎珐琅勾云纹牺尊　Champleve enamel ox-shaped Zun（wine vessel）with cloud cluster design

錾胎珐琅四友图屏风　Champleve enamel screen with design of pine，bamboo，orchid and plum blossom

錾胎珐琅蟠螭纹碗　Champleve enamel bowl with interlaced hydra design

錾胎珐琅折枝花果纹双耳瓶　Champleve enamel vase with two handles，decorated with fruit and floral design

錾胎珐琅双凤纹大圆盘　Large champleve enamel dish with double-phoenix design

錾胎珐琅瓜棱西番莲三足薰炉　Champleve enamel melon-shaped censer with three legs，decorated with passion-flower pattern

錾胎珐琅缠枝莲纹双连提柄罐　Champleve enamel twin jar with loop handle，decorated with interlocking lotus design

画珐琅玉堂富贵图直颈瓶　Painted enamel long-necked vase with magnolia，begonia and peony design

画珐琅“大吉”葫芦瓶　Painted enamel gourd-shaped vase with characters “Da Ji”（great luck）

画珐琅桃式洗　Painted enamel peach-shaped brush washer

画珐琅开光山水花鸟提梁壶　Painted enamel loop-handled teapot with design of landscape，birds and flowers within reserved panels

画珐琅福寿双耳活环瓶 Painted enamel vase with two ears holding movable rings, decorated with design of bats around character "Shou" (longevity)

画珐琅开光山水人物鱼缸 Painted enamel fish bowl with design of landscape and figures within reserved panels

画珐琅饕餮纹提梁卣 Painted enamel You (wine vessel) with loop handle, decorated with gluttonous ogre mask motif

画珐琅开光海马椭圆手炉 Painted enamel oval hand warmer with seahorse design within reserved panels

画珐琅海棠花式瓶 Painted enamel vase in the shape of begonia-flower

画珐琅西洋人物风景六棱瓶 Painted enamel hexagonal vase with design of Western figures in landscape

画珐琅缠枝花卉纹攒盒 Painted enamel box with fit-in trays, decorated with interlocking flowers

画珐琅莲托杂宝纹筒炉 Painted enamel cylindrical censer with design of lotus supporting miscellaneous treasures

画珐琅缠枝花卉五福捧寿罩炭盆 Painted enamel brazier with an openwork cover decorated with design of five bats supporting character "Shou" (longevity)

画珐琅花鸟纹镂空天球式冠架 Painted enamel globular hat-stand with bird and flower design in openwork

锤揲起线珐琅太平有象尊 Repoussé enamel elephant with a vase on its back

锤揲起线珐琅五伦图屏风 Enamel screen with repoussé design of flowers and birds symbolizing the five human relationships

广珐琅贴金锦袱纹瓶 Guang enamel vase with brocaded buckle design in gold applique

广珐琅贴金八宝纹攒盒 Guang enamel box set with design of Eight Buddhist Emblems in gold foils

广珐琅贴金银花卉纹洗 Guang enamel brush washer with floral design in gold and silver foils

广珐琅描金夔龙纹双耳高足碗 Guang enamel stem bowl with two ears, decorated with Kui-dragon design in gold tracery

蓝透明珐琅贴金片八宝纹面盆 Blue translucent enamel basin

decorated with design of Eight Buddhist Emblems in gold foils

蓝透明珐琅贴金银花五供　Blue translucent enamel altar set (a censer, a pair of candlesticks, and a pair of beakers) with floral design in gold and silver foils

银烧蓝五福捧寿八方盒　Octagonal silver box with enamel design of five bats supporting character "Shou" (longevity)

珐琅小陈设　Enamel knacks on desk

银胎内填珐琅梅花指甲套　Silver bodied finger guard with plum blossom design in champleve enamel

雕刻品
CARVINGS

竹雕　Bamboo Carving

竹根　bamboo root

竹筒　bamboo stem

竹丝　bamboo strips; bamboo filament

棕竹　bamboo palm; a variety of black bamboo

文竹（竹黄）　Zhu Huang; bamboo with its green covering removed; skin of bamboo below the green covering; the inner skin of a bamboo stem; bamboo-on-wood ware

贴黄（竹黄刻）　bamboo veneer (where strips of bamboo are cut to form design and then stuck on to a wooden base often used on boxes or paperweights)

留青　Liuqing low relief; bamboo skin reserved

留青雕刻　Liuqing low relief carvings (in which portions of bamboo skin were retained to produce a contrasting color in the finished work)

毛雕　scratch incising

浅刻　shallowly carve; lightly engrave

深刻　deeply carve

陷地浅刻　sunken ground shallow carving

陷地深刻　sunken ground deep carving

薄地阳文　thin ground relief; thin ground positive carving design

圆雕　carving in the round; fully three-dimensional carving

竹雕精品选　Selected Works of Bamboo Carving

竹雕松树形笔筒　bamboo brush holder carved in the shape of a pine tree

竹根雕卷心式刘海戏蟾图笔筒　scroll-shaped brush holder of bamboo-root carved with design of Liu Hai playing with a toad

竹雕留青携琴访友图笔筒　bamboo brush holder carved with a design of figure having a zither to visite a friend in Liuqing low relief

竹雕荷花图香筒　bamboo incense holder carved with lotus design

竹雕寒蝉葡萄式洗　grape-leaf-shaped brush washer of bamboo carved with a cicada

竹雕兰花图臂搁　bamboo arm-rest carved with orchid design

竹雕夔龙纹活环提梁扁壶　bamboo flask carved with loop handle and Kui-dragon design

竹雕松树形小壶　small bamboo ewer carved in the shape of a pine tree

竹雕荷叶式杯　bamboo cup carved in the shape of lotus leaf

竹根雕寿星　God of Longevity, bamboo-root carving

竹雕和合二仙乘舟　He He Er Xian (the twin immortals of Harmony and Union) on a boat, bamboo carving

竹根雕麻姑献寿槎　raft with the female immortal Ma Gu offering birthday congratulations, bamboo-root carving

竹根雕松树罗汉　an Arhat under a pine tree, bamboo-root carving

竹雕勾莲纹提梁花篮　bamboo basketwork with delineated lotus design

棕竹雕题诗七佛钵　bamboo palm bowl carved with seven Buddhas and inscribed with a poem

棕竹水浪莲纹盒　bamboo palm box carved with lotus and waves design

棕竹丝嵌文竹方屉盒　square box with sectional trays of bamboo palm strips inlaid with bamboo veneer

文竹方胜式屉盒　bamboo-veneered box in the shape of double rhombus with removable trays

贴黄蝉纹方鼎 bamboo-veneered quadripod with cicada design

镶两色竹丝贴黄冠架 bamboo-veneered hatstand inlaid with bamboo strips in two colors

文竹刻春寿字盒 bamboo-veneered box carved with characters "Chun" (spring) and "Shou" (longevity)

文竹双莲蓬式盒 bamboo-veneered box in the shape of double seedpod of lotus

竹丝编嵌文竹龙戏珠纹笔筒 brush holder woven with bamboo strips decorated with pattern of dragon playing with a pearl of bamboo veneer

竹雕东方朔 bamboo carving of Dongfang Shuo (a writer of the Western Han Dynasty)

木雕 Wood Carving

雕刻 carve; engrave; incise

透雕 openwork; reticulated work

浮雕 relief; to emboss; to enchase

圆雕 (参见 P271)

镶嵌 (参见 P267)

嵌螺钿 (参见 P245)

百宝嵌 (参见 P245)

镶铁钗金 design in gold-damascened iron work

木雕精品选 Selected Works of Wood Carving

紫檀木雕会昌九老图笔筒 Red sandalwood brush holder engraved with design of the Gathering of Nine Elders in Huichang period

黄杨木雕董其昌题诗笔筒 Boxwood brush holder inscribed with a poem by Dong Qichang

沉香木雕山行图笔筒 Brush holder of eaglewood carved with design of figures travelling in mountains

硬木雕仙山问道图笔筒 Hardwood brush holder carved with design of seeking doctrine in fairy mountains

紫檀木雕荷叶枕 Red sandalwood pillow carved in the shape of a lotus leaf

黄杨木雕枫叶洗　Boxwood washer carved in the shape of maple leaf

紫檀木嵌宝石花果笔筒　Red sandalwood brush holder inlaid with flowers and fruits of gems

木雕天然笔筒　Brush holder carved in its natural form

桦木百宝嵌玉堂富贵纹盒　Birch box inlaid with gems forming design of magnolia, begonia, peony and butterfly

红木百宝嵌九狮图香料盒　Mahogany box for containing perfumes inlaid with gems forming design of nine lions

黄杨木雕三螭海棠式盒　Begonia-shaped case of boxwood carved with design of three hydras

黄杨木雕仕女　A classical lady, boxwood carving

黄花梨木百宝嵌石榴绶带纹盒　Huanghuali wood box inlaid with gems forming design of pomegranate and paradise flycatcher

黄杨木雕活环链葫芦　Boxwood calabash carved with a movable chain of rings

伽楠香木雕花佩　Agalloch eaglewood pendant carved with floral design

椰壳雕双龙戏珠纹圆盒　Round case of coconut shell carved with design of two dragons playing with a pearl

椰壳雕松竹梅纹银里碗　Coconut shell bowl mounted with silver inside and carved with pine, bamboo and plum blossom design

椰壳雕蟠龙碗　Coconut shell bowl carved with design of twining dragon

橄榄核刻诗人物小舟　Light boat with figures, olive-nut carving

橄榄核雕寿星　God of Longevity, olive-nut carving

檀香木雕八仙庆寿像　Sandalwood statues of Eight Immortals celebrating birthday

木雕彩绘观音像　Avalokitesvara, painted wood-carving

彩绘木俑　Painted wood figurine

牙雕、角雕　Ivory Carving, Horn Carving

象牙　ivory

大象牙　elephant tusk

牙丝　ivory strips

牙牌（片）　ivory panel；ivory chip

染牙　stained ivory；tinted ivory

染色　color staining

象牙本色　the natural color of ivory

雕刻　（参见 P273）

镂花　openwork design；carved design in openwork

镂钻　carved with openwork

镂镂　pierced with openwork

拨镂　relief carving

起突雕刻（高浮雕）　carved in high relief

浅浮雕　low relief carving

毛刻　scratch incising

装饰技法　technique of decoration

牙雕绝品　a unique piece of ivory carving

防尘防潮　protect from dust and dampness

牙雕精品选　Selected Works of Ivory Carving

象牙笏　Ivory Hu-sceptre（or court tablet）

象牙斋戒牌　Abstinence plaque of ivory

象牙雕月曼清游册　Ivory carving of Pleasures of Court Ladies in Twelve Months（There are twelve interconnected tablets in an album and each tablet has one side carved with a picture and the other side with a poem by the Qing emperor Qian-long.）

象牙雕柳荫奕棋图笔筒　Ivory brush holder carved with design of figures playing chess under the shade of a willow tree

象牙雕渔樵耕牧图笔筒　Ivory brush holder carved with design of fisherman，woodcutter，farmer and buffalo boy

象牙雕海水双龙纹笔架　Ivory brush rest carved with design of double dragon and waves

象牙雕葵花笔掭　Ivory ink-pallet carved in the shape of mallow

象牙雕十八罗汉渡海图臂搁　Ivory arm-rest carved with design of eighteen Arhats crossing the sea

象牙雕松荫雅集图臂搁　Ivory arm-rest carved with design of the gathering of scholars under a pine tree

象牙雕竹节草虫花插　Ivory flower receptacle in the shape of bamboo joint carved with grass and insect design

象牙镂雕双喜大吉字葫芦形花薰　Ivory calabash-shaped perfumer carved with characters "Shuangxi" (double happiness) and "Da Ji" (great luck) in openwork

象牙雕染色花卉纹香囊　Stained ivory pomander carved with floral design

象牙丝编织玉堂富贵图宫扇　Palace fan woven with ivory strips forming design of magnolia, peony and birds

象牙编凉席　Summer sleep mat woven with ivory strips

象牙雕山村别墅图插屏　Ivory table screen carved with design of mountain villa

象牙雕渔家乐图插屏　Ivory table screen carved with a scene of the fishermen's happy life

象牙雕松鹤挂屏　Ivory hanging panel carved with design of pine and crane

象牙雕海市蜃楼景屏　Ivory screen carved with mirage

象牙雕群仙祝寿龙舟　Ivory dragon boat carved with a scene of immortals celebrating birthday

象牙雕福寿宝相花套球　Ivory pendant of concentric balls engraved with rosette design and characters Fu (well-being) and Shou (longevity) in openwork

象牙镂雕花鸟火镰套　Stained ivory purse for flint steel carved with bird and flower design in openwork

象牙雕云龙花鸟纹镜奁　Ivory toilet case carved with design of dragons, clouds, birds and flowers

象牙雕镂空染色花卉纹八方盒　Octagonal ivory box engraved with colourful flower design in openwork

象牙雕染色佛手式盒　Stained ivory box in the shape of a finger citrus

象牙雕抚琴图金里碗　Ivory bowl mounted with gold inside and carved with design of a figure playing the zither

角雕精品选　Selected Works of Horn Carving

犀角镂雕螭柄兽面纹杯　Rhinoceros horn cup carved with a hydra-shaped handle and animal mask design in openwork

犀角雕仿古莲纹爵杯　Rhinoceros horn cup carved in the style of an ancient Jue (wine vessel) with lotus design

犀角雕鹰熊纹合卺杯　Nuptial cup of rhinoceros horn carved with eagle and bear design

犀角雕仙人乘槎杯　Raft-like cup of rhinoceros horn carved with an immortal

犀角雕双螭纹执壶　Rhinoceros horn ewer carved with double hydra design

犀角雕松鹿纹笔架　Rhinoceros horn brush rest carved with pine and deer design

犀角嵌金银丝夔纹搬指　Rhinoceros horn ring of an archer inlaid with gold and silver filigrees and decorated with Kui-dragon pattern

鹿角椅　Chair of deerhorn

羚羊角鞘刀　Knife with antelope horn sheath

羚羊角柄犀角雕云龙嵌石鞘刀　Knife with an antelope horn hilt and a rhinoceros horn sheath carved with dragon and cloud design and inlaid with precious stones

鼻烟壶
SNUFF BOTTLES

一般用语　Terminology

金属胎珐琅鼻烟壶　metal-bodied enamel snuff bottle; metal snuff bottle with enamelled decoration

画珐琅鼻烟壶　painted enamel snuff bottle

掐丝珐琅鼻烟壶　cloisonne enamel snuff bottle; enamel-filigreeing snuff bottle

银胎软珐琅鼻烟壶（俗称银烧蓝）　silver-bodied snuff bottle with soft enamel decoration; silver snuff bottle with decoration in enamelling

玻璃鼻烟壶　glass snuff bottle

单色玻璃鼻烟壶　monochrome glass snuff bottle

套色玻璃鼻烟壶　glass snuff bottle with overlay decoration

搅色玻璃鼻烟壶　glass snuff bottle in twisted colors

金星玻璃鼻烟壶　aventurine snuff bottle

洒金星玻璃鼻烟壶　snuff bottle of glass sprinkled with golden spots

玻璃胎画珐琅鼻烟壶　glass snuff bottle with painted enamel decoration

玉石鼻烟壶　snuff bottle of jade or other precious stones

瓷鼻烟壶　porcelain snuff bottle

竹木牙角鼻烟壶　snuff bottle of bamboo, wood, ivory and horn

漆制鼻烟壶　lacquer snuff bottle

内画鼻烟壶　snuff bottle with inside painting

宫廷制作鼻烟壶　snuff bottle produced by the imperial workshop

官办作坊造鼻烟壶　snuff bottle made by state-run workshop

民办作坊造鼻烟壶　snuff bottle made by civilian-run workshop

地方入贡宫廷的鼻烟壶　snuff bottle paid as a tribute to the throne by local officials

传世品　an article handed down from ancient times

精品　an article of fine quality; art treasure

绝品　superb work of art; art rarity

传统工艺　traditional crafts

工艺水平　technological level

鼻烟碟　snuff saucer; snuff dish

鼻烟勺　snuff scoop

鼻烟漏斗　snuff funnel

鼻烟壶盖　stopper of snuff bottle

鼻烟壶精品选　Selected Works of Snuff Bottles

白玉凸雕开光人物鼻烟壶　White jade snuff bottle embossed with figure design within reserved panels

白玉双夔捧寿图鼻烟壶　White jade snuff bottle with design of double Kui-dragon surrounding character "Shou" (longevity)

青玉双连光素鼻烟壶　Plain twin snuff bottle of sapphire

碧玉结绳纹鼻烟壶　Jasper snuff bottle carved with design of knotted cord

玛瑙"马上封侯"鼻烟壶　Agate snuff bottle with design of a monkey on a horse

花玛瑙行舟捕鱼图鼻烟壶　Floral agate snuff bottle with design of a fishing boat

茶晶葫芦形鼻烟壶　Calabash-shaped snuff bottle of tea-colored crystal

紫晶瓜形鼻烟壶　Amethyst snuff bottle in the shape of a melon

孔雀石鼻烟壶　Malachite snuff bottle

绿松石雕填金扁圆鼻烟壶　Oblate turquoise snuff bottle carved with floral design filled-in with gold

琥珀光素鼻烟壶　Plain snuff bottle of amber

铜胎画珐琅开光花卉鼻烟壶　Painted enamel snuff bottle with a copper body decorated with floral design within reserved panels

银胎珐琅山水人物鼻烟壶　Silver bodied snuff bottle with enamelled design of figure in landscape

金胎画珐琅孔雀尾形鼻烟壶　Gold bodied snuff bottle of painted enamel in the shape of peacock's tail

画珐琅蟹菊纹荷叶式鼻烟碟　Painted enamel snuff dish in the shape of a lotus-leaf with design of crab and chrysanthemum

掐丝珐琅宝相花纹鼻烟壶　Cloisonne enamel snuff bottle with rosette design

掐丝珐琅勾莲纹双连式鼻烟壶　Cloisonne enamel twin snuff bottles with delineated lotus design

白玻璃浮雕荷花鼻烟壶　White glass snuff bottle carved with lotus pattern in relief

搅色玻璃罐式鼻烟壶　Pot-shaped snuff bottle of glass in twisted colors

椭圆仿翠玻璃鼻烟壶　Elliptic snuff bottle of jadeite-imitating glass

洒金星玻璃葫芦式鼻烟壶　Calabash-shaped snuff bottle of glass sprinkled with golden spots

白玻璃套粉红龙凤纹扁圆鼻烟壶　Oblate white glass smuff bottle overlaid with design of dragon and phoenix in pink

蓝玻璃套两色蔬果纹鼻烟壶　Blue glass snuff bottle with overlay design of vegetables in two colors

玻璃胎画珐琅花鸟纹鼻烟壶　Glass boided snuff bottle with bird and flower design in painted enamel

青花釉里红寒江独钓图鼻烟壶　Blue-and-white porcelain snuff

bottle with design of a fishing boat on a wintry river in underglaze red

青花加紫携杖出行图鼻烟壶　Blue-and-white porcelain snuff bottle mixed with purple, decorated with pattern of an old man walking with a staff

绿地开光粉彩婴戏图鼻烟壶　Snuff bottle with design of children at play in famille rose within reserved panels over a green ground

染牙苦瓜形鼻烟壶　Stained ivory snuff bottle in the shape of six-lobed bitter melon

匏制狮纹鼻烟壶　Molded gourd snuff bottle with lion design

红雕漆羲之爱鹅图鼻烟壶　Red lacquer snuff bottle carved with design of Wang Xizhi with his favorite goose

赭漆描金波浪鱼跃图鼻烟壶　Reddish brown lacquer snuff bottle with design of fish jumping out of waves in gold tracery

玻璃内画风雨归舟图鼻烟壶　Glass snuff bottle with inside picture of a boat returning in wind and rain

金银珠宝
GOLD, SILVER AND JEWELLERY

一般用语　Terminology

金银器　gold and silver ware

珠宝饰物　jewellery

珠宝　jewels; pearls and gems

赤金（纯金）　pure gold; solid gold

金箔　goldleaf; gold foil

金（银）丝　gold (silver) wire

金（银）累丝　（参见 P235）

纯银　fine (pure; refined) silver

天然银　native silver

银锭　silver ingot

镀金　gold-plating; gilding

镀银　silver-plating; silver-coating; silvering

银镀金　gilt silver; silver plated with gold

银镀金累丝　gilt silver filigree

银错金　silver inlaid with gold
贴金　（参见 P268）
镶嵌　（参见 P267）
錾花　embossed design
刻花　engraved（carved）design
透花　openwork；carved in openwork

金银珠宝精品选 Selected Works of Gold, Silver and Jewellery

金嵌珠天球仪　Gold celestial globe inlaid with pearls
金嵌珠立佛　Standing Buddha of gold inlaid with pearls
金嵌珠“金瓯永固”杯　Gold cup inscribed with characters “Jin Ou Yong Gu”（impregnable territorial integrity）and inlaid with pearls
崇庆皇太后金发塔　Gold pagoda for containing hairs of Empress Dowager Chongqing（Qing Emperor Qianlong's mother）
金嵌珍珠宝石塔　Gold pagoda inlaid with pearls and gems
金累丝錾花嵌松石坛城　Gold filigree mandala inlaid with turquoises
金嵌珍珠松石楼式龛　Gold tower-shaped niche for Buddha inlaid with pearls and turquoises
金嵌珍珠宝石佛窝　Gold casket of Buddha inlaid with pearls and gems
金嵌珍珠藏经匣　Gold case for keeping Buddhist sutra, inlaid with pearls and gems
金亭式香筒　Gold pavilion-shaped incense holder
金云龙纹提炉　Gold portable censer with cloud and dragon design
金鹤式香薰　Gold crane-shaped perfumer
金累丝镶珠松石香囊　Gold filigree sachet inlaid with pearls and turquoises
金甪端香薰　Gold perfumer in the shape of Luduan
金双耳四足炉　Gold incense burner with two ears and four legs
金鹤鹿同春挂屏　Hanging panel inlaid with gold crane and deer
金錾花八宝双凤盆　Gold basin embossed with design of Eight Treasures and double phoenix
金嵌蓝宝石葫芦式盒　Gold calabash-shaped box inlaid with sapphire

金镂空扳指盒　Gold box carved in openwork for containing archer's ring

金镶翠碧玺四孔花插　Gold flower receptacle with four holes, inlaid with jadeites and tourmaline

金錾云龙葫芦式执壶　Gold calabash-shaped ewer embossed with design of dragons among clouds

金胎画珐琅执壶　Gold-bodied ewer of painted enamel

金胎珊瑚桃式盒　Coral box with gold body in the shape of peach

金龙凤双喜四字盘　Gold dish carved with four characters "Long" (dragon), "Feng" (phoenix), "Shuang" (double), "Xi" (happiness)

御用嵌珠金杯金盘　Gold cup and plate inlaid with pearls for the emperor's daily use

金錾双喜团寿纹茶碗　Gold tea cup engraved with design of Shuangxi (double happiness) and Tuanshou (longevity)

金胎绿珐琅嵌红宝石高足盖碗　Gold-bodied green enamel stem bowl with cover decorated with ruby inlays

金盖白玉藏文碗　White jade bowl with a gold cover engraved with Tibetan writings

金云鹤纹盖罐　Gold covered jar with crane and cloud design

金编钟一套　A set of gold Bianzhong (chime bells)

金册　Gold album (it was used as the evidence to crown an empress and imperial concubines)

金成嫔满汉文册　Gold album for Cheng Pin (Concubine Cheng) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

铜镀金嵌珐琅套筒式千里镜　Gilded copper telescope of the interlocking sleeve type inlaid with enamel plaques

银槎杯　Silver cup in the shape of a raft

银累丝花瓶　Silver filigree vase

银龙柄奶茶壶　Silver pot with a dragon-shaped handle

银梅花瓣酒壶　Silver wine ewer in the shape of plum petals

带巧妙开关的银酒壶　Silver wine pot with a lid shut with trick lock

银暖碗　Silver covered bowl for warming food

银錾云龙纹盖罐　Silver covered jar engraved with dragon and cloud design

银胎花梨木食盒　Silver-bodied food box of rose wood

银嵌珊瑚项圈　Silver necklace with coral inlay

珊瑚双喜字朝珠　Court necklace of coral beads carved with characters "Shuangxi" (double happiness)

翠十八子手串　Rosary-bracelet of 18 jadeite beads

翠手镯　Jadeite bracelet

金镶珠翠手镯　Gold bracelet with pearl and jadeite inlays

金镶祖母绿钻石戒指　Gold ring inlaid with emerald and diamond

金镶红蓝宝石戒指　Gold ring inlaid with ruby and sapphire

银镀金指甲套　Silver-gilt long nail protector

翠嵌珍珠耳珰　Jadeite eardrop with pearl inlay

金镶珠翠蝙蝠耳钳　Gold eardrop with a gold filigree bat inlaid with pearl and jadeite

金嵌红宝石蜻蜓簪　Gold dragonfly-shaped hairpin inlaid with ruby

金镶珠石兰花蝈蝈簪　Gold hairpin with a katydid on gold filigree orchid inlaid with pearls and gems

碧玺松鼠葡萄佩　Tourmaline pendant decorated with squirrel and grape

玛瑙螭耳杯　Agate cup with hydra-shaped handle

水晶天鸡瓶　Crystal chicken-shaped vase

红宝石佛手　Ruby fingered citron

红珊瑚狮　Red coral lion

青玉描金题诗碗　Green jade bowl with a poem in gold tracery

红白玛瑙双鱼花插　Red and white agate flower-receptacle in double fish shape

孔雀石山水人物插屏　Malachite table plaque with landscape and figures

青金石松泉人物山子　Miniature hill of lapis lazuli with pines, figures, and a small stream

钟　表
DECORATIVE TIMEPIECES

一般用语　Terminology

钟　clock

表　watch
计时器　timepiece
传统计时器　traditional timepiece; traditional timekeeping devices
日晷　（参见 P48）
圭表　an ancient Chinese sundial consisting of an elongated dial and one or two gnomons
漏壶（水钟）　clepsydra; water clock
天文钟　astronomical clock
机械钟（表）　mechanical clock (watch)
老式机械钟（表）　old-fashioned mechanical clock (watch)
自鸣钟　striking clock
摆钟　pendulum clock
落地大座钟　grandfather clock
座钟　table clock; desk clock; bracket clock
挂钟（壁钟）　wall clock
更钟　night watches
日历钟表　calendar clock marked with the date and the week
双面钟　double-faced clock
三套钟　tri-function clock; clock with three functions
时乐钟　musical clock; clock with a musical box
手表　wrist watch
怀表（挂表）　pocket watch
座表　desk watch
袖珍表　miniature watch
明摆表　watch with a visible pendulum
计时　to reckon time
走时　to keep goodtime; time-giving
报时　to give the correct time
报时、报刻　to give the correct hours and quarters
打点　to sound the hours; hour-telling
打时、打刻　to sound the hours and quarters
钟表读数　clock indication
打更　sound the night watches
打乐　play music
钟表装置　clockwork
钟表零部件　parts and accessories of clocks and watches

钟（表）面、表盘　dial；clock dial；dial plate
白珐琅罗马数字钟盘　white enamel dial plate with Roman numerals
钟表指针　clock hand；indicator；pointer
时针　hour hand
分针　minute hand
秒针　second hand
时分按纽　hour and minute button
日秒按纽　date and second button
表蒙子　watch glass；watch crystal
表壳　clock case；cover of watch；watchcase
机芯　inner works
钟摆　pendulum
钟摆轴承　pendulum bearing
打点重锤　striking weight
齿轮　watch gear
发条　spiral power；spring；clockwork spring
发条传动装置　spring motor
链条　chain；watch chain
钟碗　bell
八音盒　musical box
乐箱　musical box
活动装置　movable devices
跑人（转人、活动人）　moving figure；rotating figure；animated figure
翻伞转八仙　automatic umbrella and mechanical Eight Immortals
转八宝　revolving eight Buddhist sacred emblems
转花　revolving flower；spinning flower
变花（字）　changeable flowers（characters）
活动鸟兽　moving birds and animals
鸟鸣　birds sing
禽嬉　birds sport
转天鹅（鸭）　swimming swan（duck）
四马喷水　four horses spurting water
人打钟　figure striking bell
变戏法　perform conjuring tricks

水法　glass waterfall
奏乐　music plays
自开门　automatic door
装饰　decoration；decorated with
錾花　（参见 P267）
嵌钻石（料石、玻璃）　inlaid with diamond（paste，glass）
嵌珍珠(玛瑙、螺钿）　inlaid with pearl（agate，mother-of-pearl）
料石花　colored pastes
群仙祝寿　immortals offering birthday congratulations
三猿献宝　three monkeys presenting treasures
福禄寿三星　three-star gods of happiness，official position and longevity
太平有象　an elephant with a vase on its back，symbolizing peace
祥禽报瑞　the singing of an auspicious bird heralding good luck
孔雀开屏　a peacock in his pride
渔樵耕读　figures in fishing，wood-cutting，ploughing and reading
重檐楼阁　a double-eaved pavilion
清宫造办处做钟处　the Clockmaking Factory of the Imperial Workshops of the Qing Dynasty
做钟　clock-making
钟表制造学　horology
钟表专家（技师）　horologist
钟表匠　watchmaker；clockmaker
钟表世家　a famous family making clocks for generations
名匠精品　elegant works of famous artisans
钟表检验仪器　instrument for checking clocks

钟表精品选　Selected Works of Decorative Timepieces

经纬赤道式日晷　Copper equatorial sundial
铜壶滴漏　Copper clepsydra（water clock）
鼓式漏壶　Drum-shaped clepsydra
铜风车式钟　Clock with a copper windmill
紫檀木楼阁式大更钟　A red sandalwood tower with a large night clock
硬木雕花楼式自鸣钟　Striking clock with a hardwood pavilion carved with floral design

铜镀金荷花缸钟　Clock on a copper gilt lotus-pot

铜镀金写字人钟　Gilt copper clock with a robot writing Chinese characters with a brush

铜镀金孔雀开屏钟　Gilt copper clock decorated with a peacock in his pride

铜镀金象拉战车表　Gilt copper clock inlaid on a chariot drawn by an elephant

铜镀金嵌珐琅楼渔樵耕读钟　Gilt copper clock with an enamel pavilion decorated with figures in fishing, woodcutting, ploughing and reading

铜镀金翻伞转八仙钟　Gilt copper clock decorated with an automatic umbrella and revolving Eight Immortals

铜镀金珐琅转花活动人物钟　Gilt copper clock fitted with enamel and decorated with mechanical figures and flowers

铜镀金嵌珐琅围屏式钟　Gilt copper clock on a screen inlaid with enamel

黑漆木楼嵌铜花大座钟　Large desk clock with a black lacquered pavilion inlaid with copper patterns

铜镀金镶银片八角奁盒表　Clock with an octagonal dressing case of gilt copper inlaid with silver foils

铜镀金饰玛瑙望远镜表　Watch with a gilt copper telescope inlaid with agates

铜镀金皇帝腰带带扣表　Watch on the emperor's gilt copper belt buckle

铜灯塔式座表　Watch with a copper lighthouse-shaped stand

铜火车头模型表　Watch on a copper model of locomotive

金镶钻石蝉别针表　Watch on a gold cicada-shaped brooch inlaid with diamonds

扇形银镶珐琅怀表　Pocket watch in the shape of a fan with a silver watchcase inlaid with enamel

铜镀金嵌珠料钻如意式表　Watch on a gilt copper Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with pearls and diamonds

盆　景
POTTED LANDSCAPES

盆　pot; basin

盆景　miniature landscape; potted landscape

盆景精品选　Selected Works of Potted Landseape

铜镀金盆红宝石梅花盆景　Potted landscape of ruby plum blossom in a gilt copper pot

青玉盆水仙花盆景　Potted landscape with narcissus in a green jade pot

铜镀金錾花盆翠竹盆景　Potted landscape with jadeite bamboo in a gilt copper basin engraved with floral pattern

金瓶珍珠梅花盆景　Potted landscape of pearl plum blossom in a gold vase

铜镀金海棠式盆红珊瑚盆景　Potted landscape of red coral in a begonia-shaped basin of gilt copper

画珐琅长方盆碧桃盆景　Potted landscape of flowering peach branches in a rectangular painted enamel basin

银镀金累丝长方盆梅花天竺盆景　Potted landscape of plum blossom and sacred bamboo in a gilt silver filigree pot

掐丝珐琅盆桃树盆景　Potted landscape of peach branches in a cloisonne enamel basin

红雕漆盆灵芝万年青盆景　Carved red lacquer pot with miniature landscape of Lingzhi-fungus and evergreen

画珐琅菱花式盆琥珀佛手盆景　Potted landscape of amber fingered citron in a rhombic basin of painted enamel

银累丝盆菊花盆景　Miniature landscape of chrysanthemum in a silver filigree pot

天然木山子嵌玉石人物花卉盆景　Potted landscape of natural wood hill inlaid with jade figures and flowers

白玉嵌红宝石菊花式盆染牙水仙花盆景　Potted landscape of stained ivory narcissus in a white jade pot inlaid with ruby chrysanthemum

群仙祝寿大盆景　Large potted landscape of immortals offering birthday congratulations

铜镀金錾寿字长方盆梅花盆景　Potted landscape with plum blossom in a rectangular gilt copper pot engraved with character "Shou" (longevity)

珊瑚麻姑献寿盆景　Potted landscape of coral female immortal Ma

Gu presenting a peach as birthday gift

银镀金累丝长方盆穿珠梅花盆景 Miniature landscape with plum blossoms of pearls and gems in a rectangular pot of gilt silver filigree

嵌松石双耳活环瓶松树花卉盆景 Miniature landscape with a pine tree and flowers in a two-handled pot inlaid with turquoises

银六方盆金铁树盆景 Miniature landscape of gold cycas in a hexagonal silver pot

玛瑙凸雕桃盆料石花卉盆景 Potted landscape of flowers in an agate basin embossed with peach pattern

银累丝珐琅盆珊瑚桃树盆景 Miniature landscape of coral peach tree in an enamel pot inlaid with silver filigree

青玉碗玉石灵芝盆景 Miniature landscape of jade-inlaid Lingzhi-fungus in a green jade basin

掐丝珐琅桃式盆红珊瑚盆景 Potted landscape of red coral in a cloisonne enamel peach-shaped basin

银累丝海棠式盆珊瑚牡丹盆景 Miniature landscape of peony and coral beads in a begonia-shaped pot covered with silver filigree

孔雀石嵌珠宝蓬莱仙景盆景 Miniature landscape with Penglai fairyland of malachite inlaid with pearls and gems

铜镀金长方盆三星献寿盆景 Potted landscape of Three Gods offering birthday gifts in a rectangular gilt copper pot

五彩瓷盆白珊瑚盆景 Potted landscape of white coral in a polychrome porcelain basin

嵌玻璃盆琥珀刘海戏蟾盆景 Potted landscape with amber Liu Hai teasing a toad in an octagonal basin inlaid with glass

木胎海棠式盆翠竹盆景 Miniature landscape of green bamboo in a begonia-shaped pot of wood body

木灵芝海石菌盆景 Potted landscape of natural Haishijun and Lingzhi

银镀金累丝珐琅盆红珊瑚盆景 Miniature landscape of red coral in a gilt silver filigree pot inlaid with enamel

金委角长方盆红宝石梅花盆景 Potted landscape of ruby plum blossom in a rectangular gold basin

如意
RUYI-SCEPTRE

一般用语 Terminology

如意 Ruyi-sceptre（an “S” -shaped ornamental object symbolizing auspiciousness and good luck）

如意头 headpiece of Ruyi-sceptre

如意尾 endpiece of Ruyi-sceptre

如意柄 handle of Ruyi-sceptre

如意托 mount of Ruyi-sceptre

如意精品选 Selected Works of Ruyi-Sceptre

翠雕螭纹如意 Jadeite Ruyi-sceptre carved with hydra design

墨玉嵌石三多如意 Dark jade Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with peach, pomegranate and fingered citron of precious stones

紫檀雕松竹梅嵌玉如意 Red sandalwood Ruyi-sceptre carved with design of pine, bamboo and plum blossom and inlaid with jades

金“宜子宜孙”双喜小如意 Gold Ruyi-sceptre engraved with characters “Shuangxi” （double happiness） and “Yi Zi Yi Sun” （good for posterity）

黄地粉彩雕松竹如意 Yellow porcelain Ruyi-sceptre with design of pine and bamboo in famille-rose

掐丝珐琅夔龙宝相花如意 Cloisonne enamel Ruyi-sceptre with design of rosette and Kui-dragon

黄杨木嵌金蝠珠石如意 Boxwood Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with gold bats, pearls and precious stones

铜镀金八仙如意 Gilt copper Ruyi-sceptre carved with design of Eight Immortals

水晶雕云龙如意 Crystal Ruyi-sceptre carved with dragon and cloud design

水晶灵芝如意 Crystal Ruyi-sceptre in the shape of Lingzhi-fungus

金錾花如意 Gold Ruyi-sceptre engraved with floral pattern

铜镀金累丝嵌翠三镶如意 Ruyi-sceptre of gilt copper filigree

with three jadeite inlays

铁错银龙纹嵌松石如意 Ruyi-sceptre of iron inlaid with silver dragon design and inset with turquoises

白玉雕三星纹如意 White jade Ruyi-sceptre carved with design of the three gods of well-being, official position and longevity

青玉镶荷鸟如意 Sapphire Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with decoration of lotus and birds

青玉浮雕百合柿子如意 Sapphire Ruyi-sceptre carved with persimmon and lily flowers in relief

木雕嵌玉石染牙石榴如意 Wooden Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with jades and pomegranates of stained ivory

紫檀嵌玉八卦如意 Red sandalwood Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with jade design of the Eight Diagrams

金累丝万年如意 Ruyi-sceptre of gold filigrees with characters "Wan Nian Ru Yi" (May everything forever turn out as you wish)

木雕各式花卉如意 A set of nine wooden Ruyi-sceptres carved in the shape of flowers

天然竹根灵芝如意 Ruyi-sceptre of bamboo-root in the shape of Lingzhi-fungus

文竹雕暗八仙寿字如意 Ruyi-sceptre of bamboo veneer carved with character "Shou" (longevity) and emblems of the Eight Immortals

红珊瑚云蝠纹如意 Ruyi-sceptre of red coral carved with bat and cloud design

木柄嵌金饰如意 Wooden Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with gold decoration

木柄嵌宝石九九如意 Nine wooden Ruyi-sceptres inlaid with gems

松石嵌宝石三镶如意 Turquoise Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with three gems

翡翠三镶如意 Ruyi-sceptre with three jadeite inlays

铜镀金镂空如意 Gilded copper Ruyi-sceptre carved in openwork

十八　古玺印
ANCIENT SEALS

类型
TYPES OF SEALS

玺　the imperial (or royal) seal; the seal of an emperor

国玺　the seal of the state; the great seal; the formal seal of a state; the seal used as the emblem of the imperial power

传国玺　succession seal; the imperial seal handed down by the founder of the dynasty to his heirs as a symbol of imperial authority

玉玺（宝玺）　the seal used in the emperor's collection and appreciation of calligraphy, paintings and books

印章　seal; signet

戳记　chop; stamp

朱记　Zhu Ji, another name for the seal

官印　official seal

职官印　official seal during one's tenure of office; seal inscribed with one's official title

挂帅将军印　commanding general's seal; chief commander's seal

官署印（官府公章）　official seal of a government agency

关防　government or army seal

私印　personal seal

姓名印　personal name seal

花押印（元押）　seal inscribed with the personal name in cursive hand, also called seal of the Yuan Dynasty

吉语印　seal engraved with propitious sayings

闲章　leisure seal; unofficial seal, usually containing an idiom, epigram, motto or quotation from poems

肖形印　pictorial seal; portrait-seal
人物肖形印　pictorial seal engraved with figure pattern
走兽肖形印　pictorial seal engraved with quadruped pattern
飞禽肖形印　pictorial seal engraved with bird pattern
虫鱼肖形印　pictorial seal engraved with insect and fish pattern
其它肖形印　pictorial seal engraved with vase, ewer, censer, tree, or pavilion pattern
收藏印　collector's seal; seal used on collections of painting, calligraphy or books
宫殿印　an imperial seal inscribed with the name of a hall of the imperial palace; palace seal

形制
SHAPES

方形　square
长方形　rectangular
六方形　hexagonal
八方形　octagonal
圆形　round
椭圆形　oblong; oval
双圆形　double ring shaped
三连形　triplet
盾形　shield-shaped
银锭形　silver-ingot-shaped
琵琶形　in the shape of Pipa (a musical instrument)
爵杯形　in the shape of Jue (an ancient bronze wine vessel)
龟形　tortoise-shaped
鱼形　fish-shaped
鸟形　bird-shaped
虎爪形　tiger-claw-shaped
葫芦形　calabash-shaped
叶形　leaf-shaped
花形　flower-shaped
莲花玉兔形　in the shape of lotus and rabbit
子母印（大小两印套合而成）　a pair of interlocking seals (two

seals set with the smaller seal encased in the larger)

套印（大小数印套合而成） a set of several seals with the smaller ones encased in the larger

穿带（式）印 seal with two tape holes

纽式
KNOB STYLES

印纽（印鼻） knob (or handle) of a seal

龙纽 dragon-shaped knob

交龙纽 entwining-dragon-shaped knob

蹲龙纽 squatting-dragon-shaped knob

盘龙纽 coiling-dragon-shaped knob

卧龙纽 crouching-dragon-shaped knob

行龙纽 flying dragon-shaped knob

云龙纽 knob shaped like cloud and dragon

螭纽 hydra-shaped knob; hornless-dragon-shaped knob

盘螭纽 coiling-hydra-shaped knob

蹲螭纽 squatting-hydra-shaped knob

螭虎纽 hydra-tiger-shaped knob

虎纽 tiger-shaped knob

狮纽 lion-shaped knob

麒麟纽 unicorn-shaped knob

瑞兽纽 auspicious-animal-shaped knob

异兽纽 strange-animal-shaped knob

辟邪纽 Pixie, fabulous-animal-shaped knob

熊纽 bear-shaped knob

象纽 elephant-shaped knob

卧象纽 crouching-elephant-shaped knob

驼纽 camel-shaped knob

龟纽 tortoise-shaped knob

鱼纽 fish-shaped knob

蛇纽 snake-shaped knob

马纽 horse-shaped knob

羊纽 ram-shaped knob

鹰纽 eagle-shaped knob

雁纽　wild-goose-shaped knob
鸟纽　bird-shaped knob
蛙纽　frog-shaped knob
人物纽　human-figure-shaped knob
舞人纽　dancer-shaped knob
随形山水纽　knob shaped like landscape
鼻纽　nose-shaped knob
直纽（柱纽）　cylindric knob; column-shaped knob
柄纽　handle-shaped knob
橛纽　knob shaped like a shaft
覆斗纽　inverted-cup-shaped knob
竹节纽　bamboo-joint-shaped knob
钱纽　coin-shaped knob
桥纽　knob shaped like a bridge
亭纽　pavilion-shaped knob
坛纽　knob shaped like an altar
瓦纽　tile-shaped knob
环纽　ring-shaped knob

印文书体
STYLES OF SCRIPTS OF THE SEAL

印文　script of a seal; impression of a seal
书体　script type; style of script
阳文　characters cut in relief; positive legend
朱文　characters carved in relief; red legend
满红文　full red script
阴文　characters cut in intaglio; negative legend
白文　intagliated characters; white legend
满白文　full white script
飞白文　flying white script
象形文　pictographic script
古文　（参见 P177）
篆书　seal script; seal character
大篆　Da Zhuan, large seal script, an ancient style of calligraphy, current in the Zhou Dynasty

小篆　Xiao Zhuan, small seal script or the lesser seal character, a simplified form of Da Zhuan, adopted in the Qin Dynasty

秦篆　Qin Zhuan, another name for Xiao Zhuan (small seal script)

玉箸篆　Yuzhu Zhuan, known as small seal script

汉篆　Han Zhuan, Han seal script (the Xiao Zhuan found on seals of the Han Dynasty, sometimes referred to as Han Zhuan)

摹印篆　Moyin Zhuan, a special script for seal cutting in the Han Dynasty

缪篆　Mou Zhuan, the variation of small seal script; winding seal script

叠篆　Die Zhuan, reduplicated seal script; overlapping seal script

九叠篆　Jiudie Zhuan, nine-layered seal script

叠文　double script

殳文　Shu script, a style of script in the Qin Dynasty

汉瓦当文　Han tile script

蝌蚪文　(参见 P177)

柳叶文　willow-leaf script

鹄头文　swan-head script

玉筋文　jade strip script

悬针文　upright needle script

垂露文　dewdrop script

龙书　dragon script

虎书　tiger script

鸾凤书　phoenix script

鸟书　bird script; bird-foot-shaped script;

虫书　insect script

鸟虫书　bird and insect script

穗书　grain-ear script

汉文　Han script; Chinese character (or script)

满文　Manchu script

满汉合璧印书　inscription in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

蒙文　Mongolian

八思巴文　Phags-pa script

印文待考　scripts of the seal remaining to be verified

印材
MATERIALS FOR SEAL CARVING

金　gold
银　silver
铜　copper；bronze
铁　iron
玉　（参见 P169）
白玉　white jade
黄玉　（参见 P169）
青玉　sapphire
碧玉　（参见 P169）
墨玉　dark jade；black jade
鸡血石　Jixie stone；heliotrope；chicken-blood-colored stone
青田石　（参见 P170）
昌化石　Changhua stone
寿山石　Shoushan stone
田黄石　（参见 P170）
巴陵石　Baling stone
竹根　（参见 P271）
檀木　sandalwood
黄杨木　（参见 P251）
象牙　（参见 P274）
骨质　bone
犀角　rhinoceros horn
琥珀　（参见 P170）
玛瑙　agate
水晶　（参见 P170）
紫晶　amethyst
墨晶　smoky quartz；black crystal；opague crystal
红晶　garnet

其　他
OTHERS

印章学　sigillography；sphragistics；studies of seal

篆刻　seal cutting
篆刻流派　schools of seal cutting
浙派　Zhejiang school of seal-engraving
皖派　Anhui school of seal-engraving
莆田派（也称闽派）　Putian school (also known as Min school) of seal-engraving
西泠印社　The Xiling Seal Society
篆刻刀法　engraving technique; knife work
刻刀（铁笔）　burin; graver
单（双）刀　single (double) graver
印床　tool for seal cutting
治印　seal-making; seal-engraving
治印人　seal-engraver
封泥时期　the Clay Impression Period
朱印时期　the Vermilion Impression Period
泥封　clay sealing; clay impression
泥封技术　clay sealing technique
印记　impression of a seal
朱榻　vermilion impression of a seal
印谱　a collection of impressions of seals by famous seal-engraver; a book of ancient seals
宝谱　album of impressions of imperial seals
印体　volume of seal; the style of the whole seal
印面　surface of a seal
印背　back of a seal
印面布局　composition of seal surface
边款侧款（边跋）　side colophon on a seal
边饰　border decoration of a seal; side view of a seal
印绶　seal and its silk ribbon; seal and tassels
玺绶　the imperial seal and the attached cordon
钤印　affix a seal to; affix one's seal to; stamp a seal
印泥　red ink paste used for seals; red ink for imprinting of seals; Chinese vermilion seal paste
印油　stamp-pad ink
印池　seal ink-pad well
印台　ink pad; stamp pad

印盒　seal box

清宫玺印选
THE IMPERIAL SEALS SELECTED FROM THE QING COURT

二十五宝　TheTwenty-Five Imperial Seals symbolizing the imperial power were selected by Emperor Qianlong from the seals of successive reigns of the Qing Dynasty in 1746. They were made of jade, gold or sandalwood with knobs in different shapes of dragon, and used for different purposes in politics, military affairs, law, culture and education, imperial clan, and foreign affairs, in order to show directly the supremacy of imperial authority.

天子之宝（金质、交龙纽、玺文为满文篆书）　Gold seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with "Tian Zi Zhi Bao" (seal of the Son of Heaven) in Manchu script

皇帝之宝(檀木质、盘龙纽、玺文为满汉文合璧)　Sandalwood seal with a coiled-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with "Huang Di Zhi Bao" (seal of the emperor) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

皇后之宝（金质、交龙纽、玺文为满汉文合璧）　Gold seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with "Huang Hou Zhi Bao" (seal of the empress) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

康熙"育德勤民"宝玺（檀木质、瑞兽纽、玺文为汉文篆书）　Emperor Kangxi's seal made of sandalwood with an auspicious-animal-shaped knob inscribed with Chinese characters "Yu De Qin Min" (cultivating the virtue and diligently attending to people's welfare) in seal script

雍正帝"尊亲之宝"（青玉质、卧象纽、汉文篆书）　Emperor Yongzheng's seal made of sapphire with a squatting-elephant-shaped knob inscribed with Chinese characters "Zun Qin Zhi Bao" (seal for honoring one's parents) in seal script

乾隆帝田黄三连玺　Emperor Qianlong's tri-connected seal carved

out of one piece of honey-colored stone

太上皇帝之宝（碧玉质、交龙纽、满汉文合璧） Jasper seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with "Tai Shang Huang Di Zhi Bao" (seal of the super-emperor) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

青玉交龙纽"古稀天子之宝" Sapphire seal with entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with characters "Gu Xi Tian Zi Zhi Bao" (seal of the Son of Heaven at the age of seventy) The seal was carved in celebration of Emperor Qianlong's 70th birthday in 1780.

青玉交龙纽"八徵耄耋之宝" Sapphire seal with entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with characters "Ba Zheng Mao Die Zhi Bao" (seal of an octogenarian) The seal was carved in celebration of Emperor Qianlong's 80th birthday in 1790.

碧玉交龙纽"十全老人之宝" Jasper seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob and the inscription of "Shi Quan Lao Ren Zhi Bao" (seal of the perfect old man)

青玉虎螭纽"三希堂精鉴玺" Sapphire seal with a tiger-and-hydra-shaped knob and the inscription of "San Xi Tang Jing Jian Xi" (appreciation seal of Three Rarities Study)

宝典福书印章 A set of 60 seals of Qingtian stone presented by a high official to Emperor Qianlong in celebration of his 80th birthday

碧玉辟邪纽"抑斋"印 Jasper seal with a knob in the shape of Pixie (evil-exorcising-mythical animal) and the inscription of "Yi Zhai" (Yi Lodge)

铜镀金龟纽"珍妃之印"满汉合璧印文 Gilt copper seal with a tortoise-shaped knob inscribed with "Zhen Fei Zhi Yin" (seal of Imperial Concubine Zhen) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

十九　古乐器
ANCIENT CHINESE MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

石乐器
STONE INSTRUMENTS

特磬　（参见 P172）
编磬　（参见 P172）

金乐器
METAL INSTRUMENTS

钟　bell
编钟　（参见 P124）
甬钟　（参见 P124）
铃　bell similar in form to bell but much smaller
锣　（参见 P124）
韵锣　gong chimes
钹　cymbals
镈　bell with plane opening and circular knob
号筒　trumpet
铙　a big bell with hollow handle
錞于　a military musical instrument
钲　bell-like but slender with short hollow handle
铎　（参见 P124）

皮乐器
SKIN INSTRUMENTS

楹鼓　large barrel-drum
搏附　small barrel-drum
鞉鼓　rattle-drum
梆鼓　flat-drum

弦乐器
STRINGED INSTRUMENTS

琴　lute
瑟　pealtery
琵琶　balloon guitar
二弦　two-stringed violin
三弦　three-stringed guitar
月琴　moon guitar
胡琴　four-stringed violin
洋琴　harpsichord

竹乐器
BAMBOO INSTRUMENTS

箫　ceremonial vertical flute
排箫　pandean pipes
笙　reed （mouth） organ
篪　Chi （flute, specially played for an orchestra）
笛　common horizontal flute
管　small flute
锁呐　clarinet

木乐器
WOODEN INSTRUMENTS

柷　Zhu （sonorous box, played at the start of an orchestra）
敔　Yü （musical tiger, played at the end of an orchestra）
拍板　castanets
木鱼　（参见 P337）

泥乐器
CLAY INSTRUMENTS

埙　Xun (ocarina shaped like an egg)

明清宫廷音乐
COURT MUSIC OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

丹陛大乐　Danbi Dayue — a great music consisting of metal, bamboo, skin, wooden, and stringed instruments played at grand ceremonies when ministers and officials saluted the emperor

中和韶乐　Zhonghe Shaoyue — a ceremonial music consisting of metal, stone, silk, bamboo, clay, skin, gourd and wooden instruments played at grand ceremonies or when offering sacrifices to gods or ancestors

卤簿乐　Lubu Yue — a protocol music in imperial procession, which instruments consisting of different materials were played when the emperor went on an inspection tour

大驾卤簿　Dajia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor offered the sacrifice to Heaven and prayed for rain and bumper harvest year.

法驾卤簿　Fajia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor offered the sacrifices to Earth, altars and temples.

銮驾卤簿　Luanjia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor gave an inspection tour within the imperial city.

骑驾卤簿　Qijia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor gave an inspection tour away from the capital.

二十　古书籍
ANCIENT BOOKS

一般用语
TERMINOLOGY

普通书　ordinary books

善（珍）本书　rare books

孤本书　unique（only extant copy of a rare book）; unica（L.）

殿本书　palace edition books

版本　edition（in different forms, bindings, etc. or by different publishers）

刻本　block-printed edition

宋刻本　a Song Dynasty block-printed edition

线装本　thread-bound edition

线装书　thread-bound Chinese book; a book bound in traditional Chinese style

廉价版　a cheap edition

豪华版　a deluxe edition

原（手）稿　manuscript（MS; MSS pl.）

缮（抄）本　transcription

木版印刷　blockprinting

雕版印刷　engraved printing

摹真本　facsimile

丛书　collectanea（L.）; collections

会典　documents on rules, regulations and systems（of the governmental institutes of the whole empire）

通典　（参见 P309）

汇考　the principle series of extracts from standard works

集注　variorum

总论　disquisitions of a general character
图书集成　the encyclopedia
图书文献　rare books and historical documents
纪事本末　recording events from beginning to end
纪年（本纪）　annals；chronicles
轶事　anecdotes
实录　fragments of the official annals；veritable（true）records
类志　topical topography
方志　local gazetteers
方略　military expeditions
兵略　military history
掌故　historical documents
经、史、子、集　classics, history, philosophy, belles-letters
类目　category
类书　reference books with entries according to subjects
总目　general synopsis
表　statements；memorial；report
志　records
传记　biography
列传　biographies of prominent persons；series of biographies
帝纪　annals of the emperors
外纪　extra records
游记　travels
正史　national history
稗史　legend
外史（传）　romances
野史　unofficial history
纪事　a multifarious collection of notes（minor historical and other passages）
艺文　elegant compositions（especially pieces in the poetical prose）
考工　handicraft
杂录　miscellaneous extracts from the classics and general literature
杂著　miscellanea；miscellaneous literary works
补编　supplements

续编　sequels
外编　passages of fantasy
起居注　diaries of activities and repose
史料　historical materials
圣训　（参见 P71）
诏书　imperial mandates
廷寄　（参见 P72）
宫中奏折　palace memorials
丝纶　imperial instruction book
古书装帧　binding forms of ancient books
卷轴装　writing reels binding
旋风装　fringed binding
经折装　folded binding
梵夹装　clamped binding
包背装　wrapped-ridge binding
线装　thread binding
蝴蝶装　butterfly binding

经、史、子、集
CLASSICS, HISTORY, PHILOSOPHY, BELLES-LETTERS

四书　Si Shu. Four Books (a general title for the four books — Lun Yu 论语, Meng Zi 孟子, Da Xue 大学 and Zhong Yong 中庸)

论语　Lun Yu. Analects of Confucius (a collection of Confucius' sayings that appear to have been remembered and passed along by his disciples)

大学　Da Xue. The Great Learning (one of the Confucian classics attributed to Zeng Zi 曾子)

孟子　Meng Zi. The Book of Mencius (the book in which Mencius' thought is preserved was probably compiled by Mencius himself)

中庸　Zhong Yong. The Golden Mean; Doctrine of the Mean (one of the Confucian classics attributed to Zi Si 子思)

五经　Wu Jing. Five Classics (works originally designated in this way and esteemed by Confucians as the literary cornerstone of Chinese civilization)

诗经　Shi Jing. Classic of Songs; Book of Odes; Book of Songs (a collection of China's earliest poetry; more than half of its bulk is made up of folk songs; the remainder consists of formal odes or hymns that were used on ceremonial occasions in the feudal courts)

书经、尚书　Shu Jing, Shang Shu. Classic of Writings; Classic of Documents (or Ancient Writing); Book of Historical Documents (a collection of disjointed documentary pieces, mostly harangues and exhortations, which are attributed to kings and ministers from the ages of the legendary rulers Yao 尧 and Shun 舜 down through the first three centuries of the Zhou Dynasty)

易经　Yi Jing. Classic of Changes (originated as a cryptic diviner's handbook but by early imperial times had acquired commentaries that lent it mystical cosmological significance)

春秋　Chun Qiu. Spring and Autumn Annals (a chronicle of events from 722 to 481 B. C., written from the point of view of the State of Lu 鲁 and believed by traditional Chinese to be compiled and edited by Confucius to indicate his valued judgments about historical events and personages)

礼经、礼记　Li Jing, Li Ji. Classics of Rituals; Book of Rites (This is not in fact a single work but three books in one category. One in Zhou Rituals 周礼, which is an elaborately detailed description of how government was organized in early Zhou times; the second is Propriety and Ritual 仪礼, supposedly a description of the Zhou Code of gentlemenly conduct; the third is Ritual Records 礼记, a heterogeneous collection of treatises on funerals, mourning, sacrifices, weddings, banquets and similar matters)

孝经　Xiao Jing. Classic of Filial Piety (Unknown authorship. It

extols filial piety as the root of all other virtues. From early Han times it became the traditional introduction to classical learning for all Chinese youth.)

山海经 Shan Hai Jing. Classic of Mountains and Rivers; Book of Mountains and Seas (a book dealing with geography as known to the ancient Chinese, written in the Warring States, but author unknown)

水经注 Shui Jing Zhu. The Commentary on Waterways Classic (the oldest recorded description of the rivers and the natural beauties of ancient China together with historical anecdotes; the author is Li Daoyuan 郦道元 of the Northern Wei Dynasty)

三传 San Zhuan. Three Commentaries (These are: Commentary of Gong Yang 公羊传; Commentary of Gu Liang 谷梁传; Commentary of Zuo 左传)

史记 Shi Ji. Historical Records; Historical Memoirs (a monumental work in 130 chapters compiled by Sima Qian 司马迁 of the Han Dynasty, organized in five main sections: basic annals, 12 chapters; chronological tables, 10 chapters; treaties or monographs, 8 chapters; hereditary families, 30 chapters; biographies, 70 chapters)

二十四史 Er Shi Si Shi. The Twenty-Four Dynastic Histories (It covers 4,000 years of China's history up to the Qing Dynasty and runs into 3259 (or 3254) volumes with 40,000,000 Chinese characters.)

前汉书 Qian Han Shu. History of the Former Han Dynasty (compiled by Ban Gu 班固 of the Latter Han Dynasty, and after his death his work was compiled by his sister Ban Zhao 班昭, the outstanding female intellectual of early Chinese history)

三国志 San Guo Zhi. History of the Three Kingdoms (in 65 volumes, telling about the history of the three kingdoms of Wei, Shu and Wu, was compiled by Chen Shou 陈寿 of the Western Jin Dynasty)

唐荟要 Tang Hui Yao. Important Documents of the Tang Dynasty (in 100 volumes divided into 514 categories, was com-

piled by Wang Pu 王溥 of the Song Dynasty; it includes the evolution of various institutions of the Tang Dynasty)

资治通鉴　Zi Zhi Tong Jian. Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Governance (a compendious, integrated chronicle of Chinese history from 402 B. C. to the establishment of the Song Dynasty in 960 compiled by Sima Guang 司马光)

资治通鉴纲目　Zi Zhi Tong Jian Gang Mu. A Condensation of the Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Governance (written by the Southern Song philosopher Zhu Xi 朱熹 and his disciples, who gave their episodic summaries "headlines" to facilitate skimming)

永乐大典　Yongle Dadian. Great Canon of the Yongle Era; Encyclopedia Sinica of the Yongle Era; Yongle Encyclopedia (left in manuscript form in 1407; two additional manuscript copies were made in the 1560's, but various disasters scattered or destroyed all three sets, so that now fewer than 400 volumes are known to exist. It is the largest one of its kind in the world)

通典　Tong Dian. Comprehensive Canons (a voluminous treatise on the various departments of official administration, compiled by Du You 杜佑 about 800 A. D. , and divided into nine sections: political economy 食货; literary degrees 选举; government offices 职官; ceremonies 礼; music 乐; the army 兵; punishments 刑; political geography 州群; national defenses 边防)

文献通考　Wen Xian Tong Kao. Comprehensive Historical Compendia (By Ma Duanlin 马端临 this book was published in 1919. It is based on the Comprehensive Canons 通典, but the nine sections of the earlier work are expanded into 24, and the bulk of the matter proportionately increased.)

通鉴辑览　Tong Jian Ji Lan. General History of China (was compiled in 1767 by imperial command; it contains 116 volumes)

太平御览　Tai Ping Yu Lan. Taiping Imperial Encyclopedia (was compiled by Li Fang 李昉 and others in 977 A. D. ; it

contains 1,000 books grouped under 55 categories, each of these being divided into further subcategories)

四库全书 Si Ku Quan Shu. Encyclopedia of the Four Categories; Complete Collection of Writings from the Four Categories (A great imperial manuscript collection that came in the 1770's. The four categories are classics, histories, philosophical writings and bells-lettres. Seven complete sets of roughly 36,000 volumes each were eventually made; some of these sets have been preserved to the present.)

四库全书荟要 Si Ku Quan Shu Hui Yao. Selections from the Encyclopedia of the Four Categories; Essentials of the Imperial Library

荀子 Xun Zi. Master Xun (shows enormous erudition and broad interests in practical matters; Xun Zi set down his philosophy in very systematic detail in this book.)

墨子 Mo Zi. Master Mo (In this book Mo Zi analyzes and offers solutions for the problems of world in highly logical, systematic essays.)

道德经 Dao De Jing. Classic of the Way and of Virtue; Canon of the Tao and Its Virtue; Ethics Scripture (Another title of Master Lao 老子. It has only about 5000 words written by Li Er 李耳 in the Zhou Dynasty. This is a philosophic writing of Taoism on the universe, society, political ideology, socialization and principles of self-cultivation.)

庄子 Zhuang Zi. Master Zhuang (Attributed to Zhuang Zhou 庄周, the book is a longer prose work of parables, parodies and fantasies rather than exposition.)

列子 Lie Zi. Master Lie (Attributed to a shadowy figure named Lie Yukou 列御寇, this book is a short one that has the same rambling, anecdotal, whimsical spirit as the Master Zhuang, but it is certainly a later production than the Master Zhuang.)

管子 Guan Zi. Master Guan (It is a dull, eclectic collection of narratives, dialogues, and essays, some of which deal in the fashion of the later legalist writers with problems of state administration and interstate competition.)

商君书、商子 Shang Jun Shu, Shang Zi. The Book of Lord Shang; Master Shang (This is a short series of topical essays on aspects of government. It is ascribed to Shang Yang 商鞅. The book heavily emphasizes the necessity of government by law rather than by human caprice.)

韩非子 Han Fei Zi. Master Han Fei (This is a stylish, sophisticated, often witty book written by Han Fei, a noble man of the State of Han 韩. He wrote his book as a guide for his own ruler.)

淮南子 Huai Nan Zi. Master Huai Nan; King of Huai Nan (This is a book on philosophy by Liu An 刘安, King of Huai Nan 淮南王 of the Han Dynasty. It was compiled in the 2nd century B. C.)

孙子 Sun Zi. Master Sun (The book deals analytically with total war. Its most fundamental principles are that deception is the key to success in war, and that the greatest generals are those who can overcome the enemy without fighting. It was written by Sun Wu Zi 孙武子 or Sun Wu 孙武, a famous Chinese military scientist in the 5th century B. C.)

战国策 Zhan Guo Ce. Records of the Warring States; Intrigues of the Warring States (This book written by Liu Xiang 刘向 of the Western Han Dynasty contains rhetorical exercises that were apparently used in the preceding centuries to train men in the subtle skills of diplomatic intercourse. Its anecdotes take the form of historical narratives, in which regional lords are advised how to survive or succeed in critical situations hypothetically confronting their states.)

渊鉴类函 Yuan Jian Lei Han. A Magnificent Thesaurus (Compiled by Zhang Ying 张英 and others of the Qing Dynasty and published in 1710. Primarily designed as a collection of phraseology for the purposes of poetic composition, it outgrew its original conception, and forms a magnificent thesaurus of extracts from the best classes of literature. It is divided into 450 volumes, beginning with Heaven and ending with the Animal Kingdom.)

古今图书集成　Gu Jin Tu Shu Ji Cheng. Chinese Encyclopedia; Synthesis of Books and Illustrations of Ancient and Modern Times; Collection of Ancient and Modern Books (This encyclopedia was designed to provide a comprehensive survey of all that was the best in the literature of the past, dealing with every branch of knowledge. The scheme of the work had been conceived and formulated by the Emperor Kangxi and Chen Menglei 陈梦雷 was the man chosen to execute it.)

说文解字　Shuo Wen Jie Zi. Words Explained; Analytical Dictionary of Characters (The book was compiled by the lexicologist Xu Shen 许慎 of the Han Dynasty. It is China's first real dictionary which explained the pronunciations and presumed meanings of more than 9,000 characters. It is a particularly noteworthy landmark in the history of Chinese cultural development.)

古典文学
CLASSICAL LITERATURE

楚辞　Chu Ci. The Elegies of Chu; The Songs of Chu (As the title indicates, the poems represent a South China tradition. About half of them are attributed to Qu Yuan 屈原, whose own poems are thought to have been written during his exile.)

离骚　Li Sao. Encountering Sorrow (This is the longest and most famous poem in Chu Ci. Speaking entirely in the first person and in mystical language, the poet sings of his virtues, his ruination by slanders, his hatred of wickedness, his travels to a variety of heavens and fairy-lands in quest of goodness and appreciation, and his anguished frustrations.)

世说新语　Shi Shuo Xin Yu. New Specimens of Social Talk; A New Account of Tales of the World (An especially famous anthology of wit and humor reflecting the "pure conversation" escapist frivolities of the immediate post-Han

years. It was compiled by Liu Yiqing 刘义庆 of the Southern Dynasty.)

尔雅　Er Ya. Literary Exposition (Compiled by the scholars of the early Han Dynasty, this is the earliest book containing commentaries on classics, names, etc.)

文心雕龙　Wen Xin Diao Long. The Literary Mind and the Carving of Dragons (By Liu Xie 刘勰 of the Southern Dynasties, a comprehensive analysis in parallel prose of literary theories and critiques up to the author's time)

西厢记　Xi Xiang Ji. Romance of the West Chamber (It is a Za Ju 杂剧 composed early in the thirteenth century by Wang Shifu 王实甫. This famous Chinese drama tells of a love affair between a young student Zhang Junrui 张君瑞 and a young girl Cui Yingying 崔莺莺.)

全唐诗　Quan Tang Shi. Complete Tang Poetry (An eighteeth century anthology of poetry from the Tang reproduced 48, 900 poems by almost 2, 300 poets)

窦娥冤　Dou E Yuan. Injustice Suffered by Dou E (A poetic drama written by Guan Hanqing 关汉卿 of the Yuan Dynasty. It depicts a case in which a widow Dou E was unjustly sentenced.)

三国演义　San Guo Yan Yi. Romance of the Three Kingdoms; History of the Three Kingdoms Fictionalized (a book normally attributed to Luo Guanzhong 罗贯中, a very popular novel mixing facts with fiction about the Three-Kingdoms period)

水浒传　Shui Hu Zhuan. Water Margin; Tales of the Marshes; All Men Are Brothers (A popular fiction by Shi Nai'an 施耐庵. It is a rambling account of how 108 outlaws, 36 of whom must be reckoned major characters, separately get into trouble with the authorities and make their way to a mountain hide-out surrounded by marshes in Shandong Province.)

西游记　Xi You Ji. A Record of Pilgrims to the West (It is one of the most popular novels, telling the adventures of a Buddhist monk and his three disciples on their way to In-

dia in search of new Buddhist texts. It is attributed to Wu Cheng'en 吴承恩.)

金瓶梅 Jin Ping Mei. The Golden Lotus (A Ming Dynasty novel by an anonymous author. It is a well-plotted novel about a merchant named Ximen Qing 西门庆, his relations with his six wives, and his affairs with neighbors' wives, maids, and prostitutes. Its pornographic qualities easily obscure its literary merits, which are numerous.)

封神演义 Feng Shen Yan Yi. A Historical Romance of Chinese Gods and Heroes (a long historical novel compiled by Xu Zhonglin 许仲琳 of the Ming Dynasty, describing a state of chaos in the late Shang and the early Zhou Dynasties)

牡丹亭 Mu Dan Ting. Peony Pavilion (Written by the famed Ming literator Tang Xianzu 汤显祖, it is probably China's most celebrated Chuan Qi 传奇. Its heroine Du Li'niang 杜丽娘, the daughter of a Southern Song Provincial official, is visited and loved by a young student Liu Mengmei 柳梦梅 in a dream, who travelled to Hangzhou for the civil service examination.)

古今奇观 Gu Jin Qi Guan. Marvels Old and New (A collection of 40 best stories by Feng Menglong 冯梦龙 and Liang Mengchu 梁梦初. This work drove its predecessors into oblivion and became the classic anthology of colloquial short stories down to the present.)

聊斋志异 Liao Zhai Zhi Yi. Strange Stories from an Eccentric's Studio; A Collection of Bizarre Stories (Compiled by Pu Songling 蒲松龄 of the Qing Dynasty, its tales deal with earnest young scholars who are beguiled into danger, humiliation and destruction by fox-fairies disguised as alluring maidens.)

儒林外史 Ru Lin Wai Shi. An Unofficial History of the Confucian Literati; The Scholars (A sarcastic novel lampooning Chinese scholars of the late Ming and early Qing dynasties by Wu Jingzi 吴敬梓)

红楼梦 Hong Lou Meng. The Red Chamber Dream; Dream of the Red Mansion (One of the greatest Chinese novels. It

was written by the impoverished scion of a wealthy and powerful early Qing Dynasty, Cao Xueqin 曹雪芹, and depicts the degenerate life of an upper-class household as he must have remembered from his youth. It is peopled with 30 well-delineated major characters and more than 400 individualized lesser characters, ranging through the whole social scale from the imperial family down to the common peasants.)

镜花缘 Jing Hua Yuan. Flowers in a Mirror (A Qing Dynasty novel by Li Ruzhen 李汝珍. It depicts the sees and hears abroad and the story of 100 talented women.)

初刻拍案惊奇 Chu Ke Pai An Jing Qi. Showing a Surprise by Pounding a Table (a collection of short stories edited by Ling Mengchu 凌濛初 of the late Ming Dynasty)

长恨歌 Chang Hen Ge. Song of Eternal Sorrow (This is a long poem written by the Tang poet Bai Juyi 白居易. It describes the rise and downfall of the famed beauty Yang Guifei 杨贵妃.)

长生殿 Chang Sheng Dian. Chang Sheng Palace (a drama written by Hong Sheng 洪升 about the Tang Emperor Xuanzong and his favorite concubine Lady Yang)

文物研究
STUDIES OF CULTURAL RELICS

历代名画记 Li Dai Ming Hua Ji. Masterpieces of Painting Through the Ages (By Zhang Yanyuan 张彦远 of the Tang Dynasty. This book in 10 volumes records more than 370 masters and their works from the legendary times to Huichang period of Tang Dynasty.)

宣和画谱 Xuan He Hua Pu. A Collection of Paintings in Xuanhe Period (Compiled by the imperial court in Xuanhe period of the Song Dynasty, this is a book in 20 volumes divided into 10 categories including 6396 scrolls of famous ancient Chinese paintings by 231 masters from Jin to Tang Dynasties.)

宣和书谱　Xuan He Shu Pu. A Collection of Calligraphy in Xuanhe Period (In 20 volumes divided into eight categories, this book includes an account of calligraphy collected in the imperial court of Xuanhe period.)

法书要录　Fa Shu Yao Lu. Abstracts of Treatises on Calligraphy (Compiled by Zhang Yanyuan 张彦远 of the Tang Dynasty, the book has 10 volumes including 42 treatises by calligraphers from Eastern Han to Xuanhe period of the Tang Dynasty. It is China's earliest existing compilation of treatises on calligraphy.)

石渠宝笈　Shi Qu Bao Ji. Shi Qu Collection of Paintings and Calligraphy (Compiled by Zhang Zhao 张照, Liang Shizheng 梁诗正 and others of the Qing Dynasty, this book in 44 volumes includes the paintings and calligraphy of past ages in the Qing court.)

装潢志　Zhuang Huang Zhi. Painting-and-Calligraphy-Mounting (An ancient Chinese book relating to the techniques for the mounting of painting and calligraphy. It was written in the early Qing Dynasty by Zhou Jiazhou 周嘉胄.)

宣和博古图　Xuan He Bo Gu Tu. An Illustrated Book of Antiques in Xuanhe Period (Compiled by Wang Fu 王黼 or Wang Chu 王楚 this book has 30 volumes divided into 20 categories including 839 pieces of ancient bronzes collected in Xuanhe Hall of the imperial court.)

西清古鉴　Xi Qing Gu Jian. Xi Qing Collection of Ancient Bronzes (It was compiled in 1751 in the Office of Hanlin Secretaries by Liang Shizheng 梁诗正 and others of the Qing Dynasty. In 40 volumes this book includes 1529 bronzes from Shang, Zhou to Tang Dynasties.)

西清续鉴　Xi Qing Xu Jian. Sequel to the Xi Qing Collection of Ancient Bronzes (written by Wang Jie 王杰 and others of the Qing Dynasty)

金石录　Jin Shi Lu. Notes on Ancient Metal and Stone Inscriptions; Notes from a Study of Inscriptions on Ancient Bronzes and Stone Tablets (Compiled by Zhao Mingcheng 赵明诚 of the Song Dynasty, this is a book

relating to the epigraphy. In its 30 volumes the first 10 are the contents of bronze inscriptions and the rubbings from stone tablets; the last 20 are 502 comments on the inscriptions on bronzes and tablets. It occupies an important place in China's history of epigraphy.)

历代钟鼎彝器款识法帖 Li Dai Zhong Ding Yi Qi Kuan Zhi Fa Tie. Inscriptions on Bronzes of Various Dynasties (By Xue Shanggong 薛尚功 of the Song Dynasty. In 20 volumes it records 510 pieces of bronzes of various dynasties. 70-80 percent of the bronzes with inscriptions of Song Dynasty are included in this book.)

集古录 Ji Gu Lu. A Collection of Inscriptions on Ancient Bronzes and Stone Tablets (This book in 10 volumes by Ouyang Xiu 欧阳修 of the Song Dynasty includes more than 400 sections of comments on the inscriptions on ancient bronzes and stone tablets from the Zhou and Qin to the Five Dynasties. It is China's earliest existing work on epigraphy.)

考古图 Kao Gu Tu. An Illustrated Book of Antiques (Compiled in 1092 by Lü Dalin 吕大林 of the Song Dynasty, this book in 10 volumes records ancient bronzes and jadewares in the imperial and private collections with illustrations and inscriptions.)

窸斋集古录 Ke Zhai Ji Gu Lu. Ke Zhai Collection of Antiques (This book was compiled by Wu Dacheng 吴大瀓 of the Qing Dynasty. In 26 volumes it records 1144 pieces of bronzes including 19 of the Qin Dynasty, 76 of the Han Dynasty and 1 of the Jin Dynasty.)

寰宇访碑录 Huan Yu Fang Bei Lu. Carved Stones through the Ages (A detailed record of carved stones of the whole country compiled by Sun Xingyan 孙星衍 and Xing Shu 邢澍 of the Qing Dynasty. In its 12 volumes, 8000 kinds of carved stones from the Zhou, Qin to the Yuan Dynasties are included.)

陶说 Tao Shuo. On Ceramics (Written by Zhu Yan 朱琰 of the Qing Dynasty this book in 6 volumes is an important work

relating to the study of ancient Chinese porcelain.)

髹饰录 Xiu Shi Lu. Lacquering Technology; Records of Lacquer (Written by Huang Cheng 黄成 of the Ming Dynasty this book has been regarded as a classical work relating to the lacquering technology. With 18 chapters including 186 articles it recounts comprehensively the technology of lacquerwork in every aspect.)

汲冢竹书 Ji Zhong Zhu Shu. A Collection of Ancient Bamboo Books in a Grave at Ji County (A volume of bamboo books supposedly unearthed in the Wei prince's grave of the late Warring States Period. They are the earliest materials of bamboo slips for writing)

书林清话 Shu Lin Qing Hua. Notes on the World of Ancient Books (Compiled in modern times by Ye Dehui 叶德辉, this book discusses the edition catalogue of ancient books. It is an elementary edition bibliography.)

澹生堂藏书约 Dan Sheng Tang Cang Shu Yue. Danshengtang Stipulations for Collection of Books (China's earliest existing book concerning the methods and regulations for conservation of books. It was written by Qi Chengpu 祁承爜 of the Ming Dynasty.)

格古要论 Ge Gu Yao Lun. Notes on the Study of Antiques; The Essential Criteria of Antiquities (China's earliest existing book on the identification of cultural relics. Compiled in 1388 by Cao Zhao 曹昭 of the Ming Dynasty, this book has three volumes including 13 treatises.)

考工记 Kao Gong Ji. Notes on Handicraft (The author is unknown. According to the textual research this was an official book discussing the technique of handicraft in the late Spring and Autumn Period. It has been regarded as an important document for study of ancient Chinese science and technology.)

天工开物 Tian Gong Kai Wu. Nature's Engineering of Production; Exploitation of the Works of Nature (Written in 1637 by Song Yingxing 宋应星 of the Ming Dynasty, this book systematically discusses the technique and experi-

ence of ancient Chinese agriculture and handicraft industry.)

梦溪笔谈 Meng Xi Bi Tan. Dream Stream Essays (It is so called because it was written in the Dream Stream Garden. This book was compiled by Shen Kuo 沈括 in the Northern Song Dynasty. It has 26 volumes referring to natural science and social history.)

营造法式 Ying Zao Fa Shi. Architectural Methods (Compiled by Li Jie 李诫 of the Northern Song Dynasty, this book includes 36 volumes divided into 357 chapters. It has an important reference value for the study of ancient Chinese architecture.)

东京梦华录 Dong Jing Meng Hua Lu. Memories of the Eastern Capital (Compiled by Meng Yuanlao 孟元老 of the Southern Song Dynasty this book in 10 volumes depicts the city face and the local conditions and customs of Bianjing 汴京.)

本草纲目 Ben Cao Gang Mu. Compendium of Materia Medica (Edited by Li Shizhen 李时珍 of the Ming Dynasty, this book listed some 1,000 plants and 1,000 animals of medicinal value.)

二十一　科技文物
CULTURAL RELICS OF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

天文
ASTRONOMY

仪征铜圭表　Bronze sundial from Yizheng (Jiangsu Province, from an Eastern Han tomb)

托克托日晷　Sundial from Togtoh (Inner Mongolia, made in the Han Dynasty)

故宫石日晷　Stone sundial in the Palace Museum (Beijing)

千章铜漏壶　Bronze water clock with the inscription "Qianzhang" (made in 27 B. C.)

元延祐铜漏壶　Bronze water clock of the Yanyou reign, Yuan Dynasty

故宫铜壶滴漏　Bronze clepsydra (water clock) in the Palace Museum (Beijing, made in 1745)

月象演示仪　Instrument for demonstrating the phases of the moon

明代浑天仪　Armillary sphere of Ming Dynasty (made in 1437)

指南车　A chariot showing correct directions; South-pointing carriage

地动仪　Seismograph or Seismometer (invented by Zhang Heng 张衡, Eastern Han Dynasty)

简仪（简易浑天仪）　Simplified armillary sphere (invented by Guo Shoujing 郭守敬, Yuan Dynasty)

北魏元义墓星图　Star map in Yuan Yi's tomb of the Northern Wei Dynasty

占星盘（玑）　An astrolabe

敦煌星图　Star map from Dunhuang (made in Tang Dynasty)

苏州天文图　Astronomic map in Suzhou (made in Song Dynasty)

天象仪　Planetarium

古观象台　(参见 P362)

天文水表塔　Water-driven astronomical clock tower (invented by a group led by the astronomer Su Song (苏颂), nine centuries ago)

赤道转矩　Equatorial torquetum (made in the 15th century)

子午仪　Meridian circle

汉代示南勺　South-pointing ladle of the Han Dynasty

郑和航海图　Charts of Zheng He's voyages (an early 15th century work)

天球(体)仪　Celestial globe

七政仪(太阳系仪)　Orrery

地平经纬仪　Altazimuth

象限仪　Quadrant

三辰仪　Sun-moon-stars dial

天常仪　Celestial equator projector

地平公晷仪　Universal dial in horizontal style

赤道圭表合璧仪　equinoctial sundial consisting of an elongated dial and one gnomon

星象图　Map of configuration of the stars

天文望远镜　astronomical telescope

地理
GEOGRAPHY

宋代华夷图　Stone map of the Han people and minorities of the Song Dynasty

宋代禹迹图　Stone maps of the Chinese water systems in the Song Dynasty

宋代地理图　Geographic map of the Song Dynasty

明代坤舆万国全图　Great universal geographic map of the Ming Dynasty

地球仪　Terrestrial globe

交通
COMMUNICATION

战国革车　Chariot of the Warring States Period (from Huaiyang, Henan Province)

铜立车　Bronze model of a carriage with a standing driver (unearthed at Qinshihuang's Mausoleum)

东汉铜辇车　Bronze model of a vehicle of the Eastern Han Dynasty (from Xingyi, Guizhou Province)

西汉木安车　Wooden carriage with a seated driver of the Western Han Dynasty (from Wuwei, Gansu Province)

元墓陶车　Pottery model of a carriage from a tomb of the Yuan Dynasty (at Xi'an)

河姆渡船浆　Oar from Hemudu (unearthed at a site of the early New Stone Age)

汉代陶船　Pottery model of a vessel of the Han Dynasty (from a tomb at Guangzhou)

隋代双体船　Double-bodied vessel of the Sui Dynasty (unearthed at Pingdu, Shandong Province)

宋 代 沉 船　Wreck of the Song Dynasty (from Houzhu, Quanzhou, Fujian Province)

元代针碗　Compass bowl of the Yuan Dynasty

晋墓装镫陶马　Stirruped pottery horse from a tomb of the Jin Dynasty at Nanjing

火器
FIREARMS

元至顺铜铳　Bronze cannon (Zhishun reign, Yuan Dynasty)

元至正“神飞”铜铳　Bronze cannon (gun) with the inscription “Shen Fei” (Zhizheng reign, Yuan Dynasty)

阿城铜铳　Bronze cannon (unearthed at Acheng, Heilongjiang Province)

西安景龙池铜铳　Bronze gun (cannon, unearthed at Jinglong Pool, Xi'an)

明洪武铜手铳　Bronze gun of the Hongwu reign, Ming Dynasty (unearthed at Chicheng, Hebei Province)

明洪武铁炮　Iron cannons of the Hongwu reign, Ming Dynasty (discovered at Taiyuan, Shanxi Province)

明永乐"天字"铜手铳　Bronze gun with the inscription "Tianzi" of the Yongle reign, Ming Dynasty (unearthed at Zhangjiakou, Hebei Province)

明嘉靖辛丑佛朗机铜铳　Frangi brass cannons of the Xinchou year, Jiajing reign, Ming Dynasty (unearthed at Liaoyang, Liaoning Province)

永历乙未铜炮　Bronze cannon of the Yiwei year, Yongli reign, Southern Ming

"神威大将军"铁膛铜炮　Bronze-bodied and iron-bored cannon with inscription "Shen Wei Da Jiang Jun" Qing Dynasty)

"神威无敌大将军"铜炮　Bronze cannon with the inscription "Shen Wei Wu Di Da Jiang Jun" (Kangxi reign, Qing Dynasty)

"武成永固大将军"铜炮　Bronze cannon with the inscription "Wu Cheng Yong Gu Da Jiang Jun" (Kangxi reign, Qing Dynasty)

度量衡
WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

错金云纹铁尺　Iron ruler inlaid with cloud pattern in gold (from a Han tomb at Mancheng, Hebei Province)

新莽铜丈　Bronze Zhang (length measure) of the Xinmang period (unearthed at Dingxi, Gansu Province)

唐"度作"铜尺　Bronze ruler with the inscription "Du Zuo" of the Tang Dynasty; a ruler handed down from the Tang Dynasty

明景表尺　Scale on a sundial of the Ming Dynasty collected in the Zijinshan Observatory in Nanjing

量器　Capacity measures

陈纯铜釜　Bronze Fu (capacity measure) made by Chen Chun (unearthed at Jiaoxian, Shandong Province, this is a ca-

pacity measure of the Warring States Period)

商鞅铜方升 Square bronze Sheng (capacity measure) made by Shang Yang, a very important treasure in the history of Chinese weights and measures

始皇诏方升 Square bronze Sheng (capacity measure) with a decree by Qinshihuang

"上林共府"铜升 Bronze Sheng (capacity measure) with the inscription "Shang Lin Gong Fu" (Western Han Dynasty)

新莽铜嘉量 Bronze Jialiang (standard capacity measure) of the Xinmang Period

始建国铜方斗 Square bronze Dou of the Shijianguo reign, Xinmang Period

光和大司农铜斛 Bronze Hu made by the Dasinong official of the Guanghe reign, Eastern Han Dynasty

衡器 Weighting apparatuses

楚郢子铜权衡 Scale with a set of bronze weights made by Yuzi of the Chu State, (Warring States Period)

王铜衡杆 Bronze arms of steelyards with the inscription "Wang" (Warring States Period)

高奴铜权 Bronze weight cast at Gaonu (Qin State of the Warring States Period)

婴家竹衡杆 Bamboo beam of a scale of the Ying family (Western Han Dynasty)

武平铁权 Iron weight of the Wuping reign, Northern Qi of the Northern Dynasties

嘉祐铜则 Bronze Ze (weight) of the Jiayou reign, Northern Song Dynasty

二十二　宗教
RELIGION

佛教
BUDDHISM

教派　Sects

大乘佛教　Mahayana, the "Great Vehicle" of salvation, the form of Buddhism prevalent in China, Central Asia and Japan. It is so called by its followers in contradistinction to, and disparagement of, the Hinayana, the "Little Vehicle."

小乘佛教　Hinayana, the "Little Vehicle" of salvation, the original form of Buddhism prevalent in Sri Lanka, Burma and other Southeast Asian countries. The Hinayanists themselves refer to their system as the Theravada, the "Teaching of the Elders."

北传佛教　Northern Buddhism (Buddhism prevalent in China, Korea, Japan and Vietnam, which belongs to the Great Vehicle.)

南传佛教　Southern Buddhism (Buddhism prevalent in Sri Lanka, Burma, Thailand, Cambodia and Laos, which belongs to the Little Vehicle.)

天台宗　Tian-Tai School (a school of Buddhism in China)

华严宗　Hua-Yan School (Avatamsaka School, a school of Buddhism in China)

唯实宗（法相宗）　Wei-Shi School also known as Fa Xiang School (a school of Buddhism in China)

成实宗（成实学派）　Cheng-Shi School (Satyasiddhi Sastra School, a school of Buddhism in China)

禅宗　Chan School（Meditative or Intuitional Sect, traditionally established in China by Bodhidharma）

佛心宗（禅宗）　Fo-Xin School（Buddha-mind School）

净土宗　Jing-Tu School（Sukhavati Sect or Pure Land Sect, whose chief tenet is salvation by faith in Amitabha）

莲花宗　Lian Sect; Lotus Sect（alternative name for the Pure Land Sect）

密宗　Tantrism; Esoteric Sect（a school of Buddhism in China）

瑜伽宗　Yogacara; the Yoga Sect（a school of Buddhism in India）

中观宗　Madhyamika（a school of Buddhism in India）

藏传佛教（喇嘛教）　Tibetan Buddhism（commonly known as Lamaism, a sect of Buddhism prevalent in Tibetan and Mongolian areas of China）

黄教　Yellow Sect of Lamaism

红教　Red Sect of Lamaism

白教　White Sect of Lamaism

藏密　Tantrism in Tibetan Buddhism

宁玛派　Rnying-ma-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

萨迦派　Sa-Skya-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

格鲁派　Dge-lugs-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

噶当派　Bka-gdams-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

噶举派　Bka-gyud-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

神佛称号　Titles of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas

佛祖　Buddhist patriarch

释迦牟尼　Sakyamuni or Shakyamuni（the sage of the Sakyas, the founder of Buddhism, the most common title of Siddhanta Gautama）

佛陀　Buddha — a title for Sakyamuni or a person who has attained enlightenment

如来　Tathāgata（one of the designations of Sakyamuni）

三世佛　Trikala Buddhas（Buddhas of the Past, the Present and the Future）

毗卢舍那佛（大日如来）　Vairocana; First Dhyani Buddha, recognized by some sects as the spiritual or essential body

of the Buddha Truth, all-pervasive like the light of the sun, as the Chinese name suggests

阿刍婆（不动如来） Aksobhya; Second Dhyani Buddha; "the Imperturbable"

宝生佛 Ratnasambhava; Third Dhyani Buddha; "the Source of Treasures (Holy Things)"

阿弥陀佛、无量光佛 Amitabha; Fourth Dhyani Buddha; the Buddha of "Immeasurable Splendor" (His cult is widespread in Mahayana Buddhism.)

不空成就佛 Amoghasiddhi; Fifth Dhyani Buddha; "the Infallibly Wise".

南无阿弥陀佛 Namomitabhaya Buddha

弥勒佛 Maitreya Buddha

无量寿佛 Amitayus Buddha (Buddha of Boundless Life)

五方佛 the Five-Dhyani-Buddha

燃灯佛（锭光佛） Dipamkara Buddha (the Light-making Buddha)

不动佛 Acala Buddha

莲花生 Padmasambhava

旃檀佛（释迦牟尼佛造像的一种特有形式） Sandalwood Buddha (a specific manifestation of Sakyamuni's Statue)

药师佛（药师琉璃光佛） Baisajya-guru-vaidurya-prabhasa (Buddha of Medicine)

炽盛光佛 Buddha of Brilliant Light

摩尼光佛 Maniprabha Buddha

多宝佛 Prabhutaratna Buddha (Buddha "Abundant Treasures")

报身佛 Sambhoga-kaya Buddha

舍利佛 Sariputra Buddha

禅定佛 Buddha in Meditation

毗婆尸佛 Vipashyin Buddha

尸弃佛 Shikhin Buddha

毗舍浮佛 Vishvabhu Buddha

拘留孙佛 Krakucchanda Buddha

时伦王佛 Kalachakre Buddha

上乐王佛 Shamvara Buddha

迦叶佛　Kashyapa Buddha
龙尊王佛　Nageshvararaja
贤德佛　Bhdrashri
宗喀巴佛　Tsongkha-pa Buddha
尊胜佛母　Ushnishavijaya（the Honored Goddess）
般若佛母　Prajnaparamiba
四臂般若佛母　Four-armed Prajnaparamiba
四臂金刚佛母　Four-armed Diamond Goddess
救度佛母　Tara
白救度佛母　White Tara
大白伞盖佛母　gdugs-dkar（the white umbrellaed Goddess）
绿救度佛母　Green Tara
威德吉祥天母　Shri Devi
吉祥天母　Palden Lhamo
妙音佛母　Sarasvati
金刚亥母　Vajravarahi
孔雀佛母　Mahamayuri
作明佛母　Enlightening Goddess
智行佛母　Jnanakara
空行佛母　Vajrayogini
十臂积光佛母　Ten-armed Marici
狮面佛母　Simhavaktra
阴体狮面佛母　Simhavaktra of Mother Tantra
阴体智行佛母　the Fairy Mother of Wisdom
菩萨（菩提萨埵）　Bodhisattva
文殊菩萨　Manjushri Bodhisattva of Wisdom
普贤菩萨　Samantabhadra；Bodhisattva of Universal Benevolence
地藏菩萨　Ksitigarbha；Guardian of the Earth
观音菩萨　Avalokitesvara；Guanyin，"Goddess of Mercy"
十一面观音菩萨　Eleven-faced Avalokitesvara
千手千眼观音菩萨　Sahasrabhuja-sahasranetra-avalokitesvara；Thousand-arm and Thousand-eye Avalokitesvara
千手千钵观音菩萨　Avalokitesvara with a thousand arms and a thousand alms-bowls
四臂观音菩萨　Four-armed Avalokitesvara
莲花手观音菩萨　Padmapani；A manifestation of Avalokitesvara；

Guanyin holding the lotus flowers

维摩诘　Vimalakirti

善巴拉菩萨王（地藏化身）　King of Shambhala (an incarnation of Ksitigarbha)

莲花舞自在观音菩萨　Padmanarteshvara Avalokitesvara

佛海观音菩萨　Jinasagara Avalokitesvara

阳体佛海观音菩萨　Jinasagara Avalokitesvara of Father Tantra

权衡三界观音菩萨　Trilokayavijiya Avalokitesvara

黑色观音菩萨　Black Avalokitesvara

哈罗哈罗观音菩萨　Halahala Avalokitesvara

哈里哈里罗世自在观音菩萨　Halahala Lokeshvara Avalokitesvara

虎皮裙观音菩萨　Avalokitesvara with a Skirt in Tiger Skin

狮吼观音菩萨　Simhanada Avalokitesvara

不空绢索观音菩萨　Avalokitesvara Amoghapsha

持世菩萨　Vasudhārā

红色微怒手持金刚菩萨　Red Wrathful Vajrapani Bodhisattva

调伏部多手持金刚菩萨　Bhutadamara Vajrapani Bodhisattva

邬扎那亚手持金刚菩萨　Utsarya Vajrapani Bodhisattva

三勇武手持金刚菩萨　Raudra Vajrapani Bodhisattva

金刚空行手持金刚菩萨　Vajradakha Vajrapani Bodhisattva

善趣手持金刚菩萨　Jagadbhadra Vajrapani Bodhisattva

狮皮手持金刚菩萨　Vajrapani Bodhisattva with Lion Skin

金刚　Vajra; Guardian spirit of Buddhist monastery

金刚手　Vajrapani; Bearer of the Thunderbolt; Great Protector

上乐金刚　Samvara; Shamvara

密集金刚　Guhyasamaja

大威德金刚　Yamantaka

喜金刚　Hevajra

时轮金刚　Kalachakra

马头金刚　Hayagriva

黄威罗瓦金刚　Yellow Vajrabhairava

吉善金刚　Shrinatha

持金刚（金刚持）　Vajradhara

金刚萨埵（金刚勇识菩萨）　Vajrasattva

能胜三界金刚　Trailokyavijiya
摧碎金刚　Vajravidarana
黄布禄金刚　Yellow Jambhala
白布禄金刚　White Jambhala
金刚空行　Vajradaka
大轮手持金刚　Mahachakra Vajrapani
大黑天（护法神之一）　Mahakala
四臂永保护法　Four-armed Mahakala
六臂永保护法　Six-armed Mahakala
白勇保护法　White Mahakala
红勇保护法　Red Mahakala
绿勇保护法　Green Mahakala
四大天王　The Four Devarajas（Heavenly Guardians）
南方增长天王　Virudhaka；Southern Lokapala
北方多闻天王　Vaisravana；Northern Lokapala
东方持国天王　Dhrtarastra；Eastern Lokapala
西方广目天王　Virupaksha；Western Lokapala
财宝天王　Jambhala
威胜天王　Prabhavajina
罗汉　Arhat（enlighten saintly man；worthy one）
伐那婆斯尊者　Arhat Vanavasin
宾度罗跋罗坠尊者　Arhat Pindola Bharadhvaja
达摩多罗尊者　Arhat Dharmatala
半托迦尊者　Arhat Panthaka
注荼半托迦尊者　Arhat Chudpanthaka
阿氏多尊者　Arhat Ajita
巴古拉尊者　Arhat Bakula
因竭托尊者　Arhat Angaja
迦里迦尊者　Arhat Kalika
伐着罗佛多尊者　Arhat Vajriputre
跋陀罗尊者　Arhat Bhadra
迦诺迦伐蹉尊者　Arhat Kanakavatsa
迦诺迦跋黎坠者尊者　Arhat Kanakabharadhvaja
那迦犀尊者　Arhat Nagasena
戒博迦尊者　Arhat Gopaka
阿秘特尊者　Arhat Abheda

护法空行　Tutelary Deity

本尊　Yidam; principal Tutelary

金刚神（门神）　Dvarapala (guardian deity)

天神　deva, devata; a god

天女　apsaras; a goddess; a female deva

飞天　flying deva; apsaras

天龙八部　eight classes of brave divine beings (devas, nagas, yaksas, gandharvas, asuras, garudas, kinnaras and mahoragas)

释迦牟尼源流　The Religious Origin of Sakyamuni

达赖喇嘛源流—格桑嘉措　The Religious Origin of the Dalai Lamas — Kalsang Gyatso

达赖喇嘛源流—松赞干布　The Religious Origin of the Dalai Lamas — Songtsan Gambo

达赖喇嘛源流—桑吉贡巴　The Religious Origin of the Dalai Lamas — Sanggyes Gompa

达赖喇嘛（丹增嘉措）　The Dalai Lama (Tenzin Gyatso)

班禅喇嘛源流—香格里拉王　The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — King of Shanggrila

班禅喇嘛源流—提婆　The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Deva

班禅喇嘛源流—阿跋迦罗　The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Abhayakara

班禅喇嘛源流—桂译师　The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Great Translator Gos Lotsawa

班禅喇嘛源流—洛桑却吉坚赞　The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Losang Choskyi Gyaltsan

第十一世班禅额尔德尼（坚赞诺布）　The Eleventh Panchen Erdeni (Gyantsen Norpo)

教义、戒律　Doctrine, Discipline

佛法（佛教教义）　Buddha dharma; the Buddhist Doctrines; the Law of Buddha

四谛（释迦牟尼的四条基本教义）　Catursatya (Four Axioms)

八正道（通往涅槃的八种正确途径）　Astangika-marga

戒法　the precepts of Buddhist discipline; commandments and

rules

佛宗　the principles of Buddhist law

戒　sila; rule

华严宗教义　the doctrine of the Hua-yan School

通戒　General Commandments

大戒　Upasampanna（Complete Commandments）

五戒（戒杀，戒偷，戒淫，戒妄言，戒酒肉）　pancasila; Five Precepts — no killing; no stealing; no lust; no lying; no tasting intoxicants and meat

八戒　Eight Commandments

十戒　Siksananda; Ten Commandments

十重戒　Ten Unpardonable Sins

《五部律》（小乘佛教戒律）　Rules of Five Hinayana Sects

摄善法戒　Rules on virtuous behavior

摄众生戒　Rules on winning new converts

摄律仪戒　Rules for spiritual cultivation

五逆罪　Pancanantarya（five deadly sins）

法印（法体、法的标准）　Dharmamudra（Seal of Buddha Truth）

佛经　Buddhist Scripture

内典（本教的典籍）　Buddhist literature

伏藏　Buddhist literature unearthed in Tibet

大藏经（三藏）　the Great Scripture（Tripitaka）

三藏（佛教经典总称）　Tripitaka

经藏（素坦缆藏）　Sutrapitaka; scripture

律藏（毗奈耶藏）　Vinaya-pitaka; canon

论藏（阿毗达磨藏）　Abhidharma-pitaka; annotation

北宋官本大藏经（983 年）　Tripitaka, Northern-Song-Dynasty Authorized Edition

开宝藏（即北宋官本大藏经）　Tripitaka, Kaibao Edition

宋藏　Tripitaka, Song-Dynasty Edition

金藏（1173 年）　Tripitaka, Kin-Dynasty Edition

赵城藏（即金藏）　Tripitaka, Zhaocheng Edition

元藏　Tripitaka, Yuan-Dynasty Edition

普宁寺版藏经（即元藏）　Tripitaka, Pu'ning Monastery Edition

洪武南藏（1398 年） Tripitaka, Southern Hongwu Edition
永乐南藏（1417 年） Tripitaka, Southern Yongle Edition
永乐北藏（1440 年） Tripitaka, Northern Yongle Edition
嘉兴藏 Tripitaka , Jiaxing Edition
万历藏（即嘉兴藏） Tripitaka, Wanli Edition
径山藏（即嘉兴藏） Tripitaka, Jingshan Edition
楞严寺藏（即嘉兴藏） Tripitaka, Lengyan Monastery Edition
龙藏（1735-1738 年） Tripitaka, Qianlong Edition
碛沙藏（1322 年） Tripitaka, Qisha Edition
蜀版藏经 Tripitaka, Sichuan Edition
频伽藏（1913 年）（上海频伽精舍出版） Tripitaka, Kalavinka Edition
大般若波罗密多经（大般若经） Mahaprajna-paramita-sutra; Great Sutra of the Perfection of Wisdom
大品般若（大品经） fuller Chinese edition of Maha-prajnaparmita-Sutra
小品般若 summarized Chinese edition of Maha-prajnaparamita-Sutra
大般涅槃经（涅槃经） Mahapari-nirvana-sutra
甘珠尔（藏文大藏经，直接记载佛语） Bak-gyur; the Gangyur of Tripitaka in Tibetan
丹珠尔（藏文大藏经，对佛语的解释） Bstang'gyur; the Tanjur of Tripitaka in Tibetan
金刚经 （金刚波罗密多经） Vajracchedika-prajnaparamita-sutra (Diamond Sutra)
华严经 Buddha-avatamsaka-mahavai-pulya sutra (Garland Sutra)
妙法莲花经（法华经） Saddharma-pundarika-sutra (Lotus Sutra)
般若波罗密多心经（心经） Prajnaparamita-hrdaya-sutra (Heart Sutra)
三转法轮经 Dharmacaka-sutra (Sutra of the Wheel of the Law)
宝积经（大宝积经） Maha-rafna-kuta-sutra (Great Gem-Heap Sutra)
大菩萨藏经 Mahayanapitaka-sutra
大日经 Mahavairocana-sutra

无量寿经（大无量寿经）（大经） Amitayus sutra（Sutra of Buddha of Boundless Life）

阿弥陀经（小无量寿经）（小经） Amitabha sutra（Sutra of Buddha of Boundless Light）

维摩经（维摩诘经） Vimalakirtinirdesa-sutra

梵网经（菩萨戒本） Brahmajala-sutra（Sutra of the Brahmanet）

佛本行集经 Abhiniskramana sutra（Life of Sakyamuni）

六祖坛经（坛经）（中国禅宗经籍） Analects of the Sixth Chan Patriarch Huineng

大乘玄论 Exposition of the Mahayana Doctrine

大乘义章 Mahayana Encyclopedia

释氏要览 Encyclopedic Dictionary of Buddhism

中论广释 Extensive Interpretation of Madyamika-sastra

大唐内典录（内典录） Catalogue of Buddhist Scriptures of the Great Tang Empire

房山云居寺石经 Buddhist stone inscriptions at Yunju Monastery, Fangshan

正典经籍 Canonized scripture

神职人员 Buddhist Clergy

法号 Buddhist monastic name；clerical name

鼻祖（祖师） patriarch；founder

三藏法师（玄奘） Master of Tripitaka（Xuan Zhuang）

三藏法师（精通三藏的法师） Tripitaka-carya（Master of Tripitaka）

法师 dharmacarya（Master of the Law；Buddhist master）

论师（精通律藏的僧人） abhi-dharmacarya（Master of Buddhist Discourses）

经师 sutracarya（Master of the Sutra）

禅师 Chan master, a honorific title for a Buddhist monk

尊者（阿梨耶） arya（the Reverend）

高僧 eminent monk

僧人 bonze；Buddhist monk

比丘 bhiksu；Buddhist monk

比丘尼 bhiksuni；Buddhist nun

方丈（住持） Buddhist abbot；the head monk of a temple
知客僧 usher of a temple
行脚僧（云游僧） roaming monk；wandering monk
苦行僧 ascetic monk
托钵僧 faqir；mendicant monk
头陀 mendicant Buddhist monk
沙弥 sramanera；novice
居士 upasaka；layman；lay Buddhist
女居士 upasika；laywoman
佛教徒 Buddhist
佛门弟子 follower of Buddhism；Buddhist
达赖喇嘛 the Dalai Lama
班禅喇嘛 the Panchen Lama
灵童 soul boy；sacred baby
寻访 identify
认定 confirm
坐床 enthrone（install）
第十一世班禅额尔德尼（坚赞诺布） （参见 P331）
国师 Imperial preceptor
八思巴国师 Buddhist Patriarch Phags-pa
三世章嘉国师 the Third Imperial Preceptor Changkya
法王 Dharma-raja（King of the Law）
大宝法王 Maharatna Dharma-raja
大乘法王 Mahayana Dharma-raja
大慈法王 Dharma-raja of Great Mercy
活佛 Living Buddha
转世活佛 reincarnation of Living Buddha；transmigration of Living Buddha
大喇嘛 Grand Lama
喇嘛 Lama
喇嘛教徒 Lamaist
格西（藏传佛教学衔） dge-bshes
传戒和尚 instructor of commandments and rules
参头和尚（教授参学者礼仪的僧职） instructor of ceremonies

布袋和尚　Budai Heshang (Big-Bag Mendicant)

佛寺（堂）　Buddhist Temples (Chapels)

寺庙　temple; monastery

尼庵　Buddhist convent; nunnery

古刹　antiquity monastery; ancient temple

梵刹　brahmaksetra (place of purity, namely monastery)

佛堂　Buddhist chapel; hall for worshiping Buddha

佛龛　a niche for a statue of Buddha; shrine

龛室　baldachin, baldaquin

圆拱龛　arched niche

阙形龛　gate-tower-shaped niche

圣骨龛　feretory

舍利塔　dagoba; pagoda for Buddhist relics;
stupa for relics (or ashes) of Buddha or Saints

宝塔　Buddhist pagoda

浮屠　stupa; pagoda

七级浮屠　seven-storied pagoda

藏经阁　vihara

藏经楼　Tripitaka pavilion; Library of Buddhist scriptures

藏经洞　vault for keeping Buddhist scriptures

金陵刻经处　Jingling Buddhist Scriptures Publishing House

法源寺（北京）　Fayuan Monastery (Temple of Source of Buddhist Teaching) in Beijing

潭柘寺（北京）　Pool and Oak Temple in Beijing

碧云寺（北京）　Biyun Monastery in Beijing

雍和宫（北京，藏传佛教寺院）　Yonghe Monastery; Temple of Harmony and Peace in Beijing

白马寺（河南）　Baima Monastery (White Horse Temple) in Henan Province

少林寺（河南）　Shaolin Monastery in Henan Province

南禅寺（山西）　Nanchan Monastery in Shanxi Province

佛光寺（山西）　Foguang Monastery in Shanxi Province

华严寺（大同）　Huayan Monastery in Datong, Shanxi Province

静安寺（上海）　Jing'an Monastery in Shanghai

寒山寺（苏州）　Hanshan Monastery in Suzhou, Jiangsu Pro-

vince

栖霞寺（南京） Qixia Temple in Nanjing, Jiangsu Province

灵隐寺（杭州） Lingyin Temple in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province

天童寺（宁波） Tiantong Temple in Ningbo, Zhejiang Province

白玉寺（四川） Baiyu Monastery in Sichuan Province

竹箐寺（四川，藏传佛教寺院） Rdzogschen Monastery in Sichuan Province

青龙寺（西安） Qinglong (Blue Dragon) Temple in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province

布达拉宫（拉萨） Potala Palace in Lhasa, Tibet

扎什伦布寺（日喀则） Tashilhumpo (Tashi Lhunpo) Monastery in Rigaze, Tibet

大昭寺（西藏） Gtsug-lag-Khang(Zuglakang) Monastery in Tibet

小昭寺（西藏） Klukang Monastery in Tibet

塔尔寺（青海） Taer (Gumbum) Monastery in Qinghai Province

文物与法器 Cultural Relics and Ritual Implements

佛像 image of Buddha

佛造像 statue of Buddha

唐卡 Thangka; Tangka

佛经 Buddhist sutras

佛牙 sacred tooth relic of Buddha

摩尼珠 mani pearl

佛珠（念珠） mala; rosary; beads

圣骨 holy ashes

供案 altar

香炉 incense burner; censer

香筒 incense holder

烛台 （参见 P128）

木鱼 wooden fish (wooden clapper), which a Buddhist monk or nun beats while chanting

磬 inverted bell (a Buddhist percussion instrument)

引磬（小手磬） hand bell

宝瓶　amrta-kalasa；nectar vessel carried by certain Bodhisattvas

藏草瓶　vase for holy herbs

净水瓶　water bottle（for the use of monks）

五叶宝冠　five-petal crown；five-leave-shaped crown

法冠　crown worn in ritual

八宝（佛前供器）　Babao，the Eight Auspicious symbols represent the offerings that are presented to Sakyamuni Buddha

法轮　（参见 P339）

法螺　the white conch shell

宝伞　the precious parasol

白盖　the banner of victory；the canopy

莲花　（参见 P158）

宝罐　the water bottle

金鱼　the two golden fishes

盘肠　the knotted cord

七珍（藏传佛教）　the Seven Buddhist Treasures

金轮宝　gold wheel

神珠宝　divine pearls

玉女宝　jewels of women

主藏臣宝　able ministers of the treasury

白象宝　white elephants

绀马宝　dark swift horse

将军宝　loyal generals

海螺（法螺）　conch shell

左（右）旋白螺　white conch shell spiraling to the left（right）

雕花梵文螺　conch shell with Sanskrit characters

雕七佛白螺　white conch shell carved with seven Buddhas

铃杵　bell with a vajra handle

玲珑钵　iron alms-bowl in gold tracery

嘎巴拉碗　Kapala bowl

殊胜奔巴　silver bumpa-pot

嘎巴拉念珠　rosary of human-bone beads

天杖　heavenly staff，also known as skeleton staff or staff for subduing demons

鼗鼓　skull-drum，as a kind of Tibetan tambourine，is used in

the rituals for exorcising ghosts and evil spirits

金刚橛 vajra (thunderbolt), used as a weapon against the powers of darkness

钺刀 moon-shaped knife, also known as vajra-ax

降魔金刚斧 demon-queller ax

降魔金刚锤 demon-queller hammer

号 trumpet (one of the principal ritual implements of Tibetan Buddhism)

大号 long copper trumpet (a musical instrument for Buddhist activities)

玛尼轮 manichorkor (a ritual implement used by the Tibetan Buddhists in prayer)

法轮 wheel of Dharma (one of the common sacrificial utensils)

坛城 mandala (the mandala in Sanskrit means "rostrum" or "rostrum ground")

须弥山坛城 mandala of Sumeru

佛舍利盒 Sarira box (box for Buddhist relics)

哈达 khatags

转经筒 prayer wheel

幢(佛像前的珠顶绸饰立柱) dhvaja (banner)

佛教术语 Buddhist Terminology

佛学 Buddhist philosophy; Buddhistic study; Buddhology

藏学 Tibetology

佛法 power of Buddha

佛法无边 The greatness of Buddhism is immeasurable.

求法 learn Buddhist doctrines

传法 transmission of Buddhist doctrines

佛道 the way of Buddha leading to Buddhahood (or enlightenment)

成道 enlightenment

悟道成佛 attain enlightenment to Buddhahood

佛诞节(释迦牟尼成道纪念日) Buddha's Enlightenment Day

佛果 the attainment of enlightenment as a Buddha

佛会 the celebration of Buddhist festival

佛家 a Buddhist; a Buddhist follower

佛门　Buddhism

三宝（佛、法、僧）　Triratna; Three Treasures (Buddha; Dharma; Sangha)

念佛三昧　Samadhi (concentrating on Buddha)

皈依佛门　be converted to Buddhism; follow the teachings of Buddha

空门　door to nirvana; Buddhism

圆寂（入灭）　parinirvana (pass away; die)

涅槃　Nirvana

涅槃四德　Four transcendental realities of nirvana

解脱　enlightenment; deliverance; to release from worldly cares

四皈依　Four-Point formula of refuge

大千世界　the boundless universe

舍利子　sarira (relic)

灵骨　holy ashes

要求受戒　application for monkhood

受戒　receive ordination

剃度　tonsure

削发为僧　take the tonsure

出家　pravrajana (adoption of monastic life)

禅　dhgaya; deep meditation

法身　dharmakaya (embodiment of Truth and the Law); spiritual

法体　conserve

天葬（场）　sky burial (site); celestial burial (site)

轮回　samsara (transmigration)

转世　reincarnation

金瓶掣签　to draw lots; lot-drawing from a gold urn

打坐（趺坐、跏趺坐）　sit cross-legged; sit in cross-legged posture

半跏坐　sit with one leg pendant and the other crossing it and resting upon its knee

交脚坐　to sit cross-ankled

莲花坐　"lotus posture"; to sit cross-legged

莲花座　padmasana; the "lotus throne" upon which the Buddha sits

金刚座　vajrasana; Buddha's seat or throne, particularly in portrayals of the Enlightenment; the "Diamond throne"

狮子座　simhasans；the "lion throne"，a term used for Buddha's seat，whether there are lions in the design or not

轮相　the wheel sign on the foot-sole of Buddha or on the top of a pagoda

佛顶　usnisa；the fleshy protuberance on the crown of the Buddha's head

白毫（玉毫、光毫）　urna；the luminous tuft of hair between the eye-brows of the Buddha

菩提树（佛树）　the Bodhi tree（linden tree）

背光　nimbus

宝盖　canopy above image

天盖　Buddha's canopy or umbrella；
a nimbus of rays of light；halo

本生　Jataka story（about Buddha's earlier incarnations）

天宫　Palace of Devas

西天　Western paradise

西方净土　pure land of the West

极乐世界　the land of Ultimate Bliss

立佛　standing Buddha

坐佛　seated Buddha

卧佛　reclining Buddha；figure of Buddha in a recumbent position depicting the scene of his death

说法　preaching the Law

主尊说法　Buddha expounding the Law

诸佛法印　seal of Buddha-truth

坐禅　sitting in abstract meditation

修行　to undergo rigorous ascetic discipline

善男信女　Buddhist laymen and women

宝冠　crown；coronet；diadem；the headdress of a Bodhisattva

禅衣　monastic robe（habit）

袈裟　kasaya；the robe of a Buddhist monk

垂衣　draperies

百纳衣　robe of patches

法衣（僧衣）　monastic habit

璎珞　jewelled necklaces and strings of ornaments on Buddhist images

钵　patra；a monk's alms-bowl
洗手钵　cistern
拂子（拂尘）　fly whisk；duster
锡杖　khakkhara；a monk's staff
禅杖　wakening staff
蒲团（跪拜用）　hassock
供品　offering
衣钵　a Buddhist monk's mantle and alms-bowl which he hands down to his favorite disciple；legacy
红尘　mundane world
凡尘　the material world
苦海　a sea of suffering
因果　karma；preordained fate
报应　retribution；judgement
度牒（戒牒）　certificate of ordination
法门　dharmaparyaya（dharma door）
僧兵　armed monastic order
佛（法）事　Buddhist services
法会　assembly for worshiping（or preaching）
拉萨祈祷大法会（俗称传召大法会）　the Monlam or Grand Summons Ceremony in Lhasa
道场　service
做佛事　hold a Buddhist service
潜心佛事　devote oneself to Buddhist activities
供奉佛像　worship image of Buddha
绕佛（敬佛的礼仪）　walking round the Buddha
拜佛　prostrate oneself before the image of Buddha；worship Buddha
跪拜（磕头）　worship on bended knees；kowtow；perform the kowtow
拜倒　fall down on one's knees
匍匐　prostrate；grovel
顶礼　salutation by prostration
顶礼膜拜　prostrate oneself in worship
磕长头　prostrate oneself in prayer
上供　offer up a sacrifice；lay offerings on the altar

上香（烧香）　burn joss sticks before the image of Buddha; burn joss sticks in worship

跪着祈祷　be kneeling in prayer

合十　anjale (salutation by putting palms together); clasp hands

念佛　chant the name of Buddha; pray to Buddha

诵经　recite or chant sutra

超度　release souls from suffering; deliverance from hell

驱邪　exorcise, exorcize

驱魔仪式　exorcistic ceremony

放焰口　alms service of Buddhist

许愿　votive

斋戒　fast; abstinence

斋期　fasting-day

斋日　day of the Eight Commandments

斋月　month with long periods of Eight Commandment days

开斋　break fast

道教
TAOISM

教派　Sects

道教　Taoism, a religion among the Han people, formed about 1,800 years ago

全真道　Quanzhen Tao, Taoist sect formed by Wang Chongyang in 1167 with White Cloud Taoist Temple in Beijing as center. Members forsake home and family, do not marry and are vegetarians by belief.

全真道北宗　Quanzhen Taoism (Northern tradition)

全真道南宗　Quanzhen Taoism (Southern tradition)

正一道（五斗米道、天师道）　Zhengyi Tao, also known as Wu Dou Mi Tao (Taoist sect of Five-Bushel Rice), formed by Zhang Daoling with Dragon-and-Tiger Temple in Jiangxi as centre. Members do not forsake home or family; they marry and are lay followers of Taoist faith.

天师道　Way of Celestial Masters （Taoist sect of Five Bushels of Rice）

北天师道　Way of Celestial Masters （Northern）

南天师道　Way of Celestial Masters （Southern）

太平道　Great Peace，Taoism of

大道教　True Great Way；Great Way

符箓派　Talismanic Sects

上清派　Shang-Qing School

茅山派　Mao-Shan School

楼观派　Lou-Guan School

灵宝派　Ling-Bao School

道教神仙　Taoist Immortals

玉皇大帝　the Jade Emperor （the supreme deity of Taoism）

天后　Queen of Heaven，a female counterpart of the Jade Emperor

西王母　Queen Mother of the West；
Royal Lady of the West

东王公　Royal Lord of the East，consort to Queen Mother of the West

仙人　immortal；celestial being

八仙　（参见 P160）

钟离权（汉钟离）　Zhongli Quan （Han Zhongli），who carries a fan with which he revives the soul of the dead

何仙姑　He Xiangu，a graceful girl carrying a ladle or a long-stalked lotus blossom

张果老　Zhang Guolao，a bearded figure carrying a tubular drum of bamboo with two rods to beat it

吕洞宾　Lü Dongbin，a dignified elderly figure with a sword in hand or slung over his back

韩湘子　Han Xiangzi，the philosopher Han Xiang，a youthful figure carrying or playing a flute

曹国舅　Cao Guojiu，the Imperial Brother-in-Law，an elderly bearded figure carrying a pair of castanets

李铁拐　Li Tieguai （Iron Crytch Li），an emaciated，deformed figure，leaning on a crutch and carrying a gourd

蓝采和　Lan Caihe，usually represented as a girl carrying a bas-

ket of flowers

神　god; deity; divinity

寿星　God of Longevity, or Old Man Longevity. He carries a peach and a rustic staff, and is usually accompanied by a deer or a crane

福星　God of Happiness. He usually carries a Ruyi-sceptre

禄星　God of Rank and Affluence. He usually carries a child.

梓潼帝君　God of Official Career

紫微北极大帝　Zi Wei, Emperor of the Northern Constellations

文昌帝君　God of Literature, patron of scholars

关圣帝君　Lord Guan, God of War, a military hero of the third century

财神　God of Wealth

青龙　Qinglong, or Green Dragon, God of Eastern Lunar Mansions

朱雀　Zhuque, or Scarlet Bird, God of Southern Lunar Mansions

白虎　Baihu, or White Tiger, God of Western Lunar Mansions

玄武　Xuanwu, or Sombre Warrior, God of Northern Lunar Mansions

元始天尊　God of the Prime Origin

灵宝天尊　God of Sacred Jewel

天官（赐福之神）　Tian Kuan, God of Blessing

地官（赦罪之神）　Di Kuan, God of Forgiveness

水官（解厄之神）　Shui Guan, God of Protection

仙官（有官职的神）　immortal in divine office

散仙（无官职的神）　immortal out of divine office

六丁六甲　six duty goddesses and six duty gods

城隍　patron god of the city; town god

土地神　local god of the land; village god

门神　door gods

灶王　kitchen god

真人　perfect man

盘古真人　Pan Gu, Perfect Man

丹阳真人　Dan Yang, Perfect Man

长春真人　Chang Chun, Perfect Man

洞灵真人　Dong Ling, Perfect Man

广宁真人　Guang Ning, Perfect Man

祖师（鼻祖）　patriarch

重阳祖师　Patriarch Chong Yang

五圣　Five Mischievous Deities

北（南）五祖　Five Patriarches of the Northern (Southern) Tradition

天师　celestial master; the title of the head of the Taoist; Taoist master

张道陵　Zhang Daoling (or Zhang Ling), the founder of Taoism of Five-Bushel Rice in the Eastern Han Dynasty (2nd century)

张天师　Zhang Tianshi (Heavenly Master Zhang), a honorific title for Zhang Daoling

太上老君　Tai Shang Lao Jun (Supreme Master), a honorific title for Laocius

道德天尊（老子）　Supreme Lord Lao Zi; God of the Way of Power, Worshipped by Taoists as Father of their religion

太上混元皇帝　Supreme Heavenly Emperor Hunyuan, a honorific title for Lao Zi

太上玄元皇帝　Supreme Heavenly Emperor Xuanyuan, a honorific title for Lao Zi

教义、戒律　Doctrine, Discipline

戒律　rules and commandments

三品戒　Commandments for Three Grades of Taoists

九守　Observation of Nine Principles

七伤（应禁绝的七种行为）　Seven harmful behaviors

五戒　Five Commandments for Novices and Lay Believers

道藏　Taoist Canon

道藏（道教经书的总称）　the Taoist Canon; the Collected Taoist Scriptures

开元道藏　Taoist Canon, Kaiyuan Edition (748 A. D.)

天宫道藏　Taoist Canon, Tiangong Edition (1012)

万寿道藏　Taoist Canon, Wanshou Edition (12th century)

玄都道藏　Taoist Canon, Xuandu Edition (1190)

正统道藏　Taoist Canon，Zhengtong Edition（1445）
道藏辑要　Compilation of Important Books in the Taoist Canon
道枢　Concise Encyclopedia of Taoism
道典论　An Encyclopedic Dictionary of Taoism
道门科范大全集　Complete Collection of Taoist Rituals
灵宝领教济度金书　Book of Taoist Ceremonies and Rites
太上老君开天经　Taoist Genesis
玉皇经　Book of the Jade Emperor
皇天上清金阙帝君灵书紫文上经　Book of the Jade Emperor's Divine Edict
道德经（道德真经）　Book of the Way of Power
南华真经　Book of Perfect Man Nan Hua
西山群仙会真记　Teachings of the Immortals of the Western Mountains
洞玄金玉集　Treasures in Taoist Doctrine
太上三元法　Confessional for Three Major Festivals
道教义枢　Essentials of Taoist Doctrine
五斗经　Book of the Five Constellations
无上秘要　General Information on the Supreme Truth of Taoism
诸真玄奥集成　Collection of Scriptures of Southern Taoist School
重阳立教十五论　Fifteen Treatises on Taoist principles by Wang Chongyang
太上感应篇　Supreme Master on Heavenly Reward and Retribution
推背图　Diagrams for Divination
集仙传　Collection of Biographies of Immortals
道法会元　Collection of Taoist Liturgy，Signs and Techniques
玉牒金书（珍贵的道经）　Richly-decorated Scripture
洞　Dong（Primary Scriptures）

道教术语　Taoist Terminology

三元　①astronomical triplicity：the sun，the moon，the star ②cosmic triplicity：heaven，earth，water ③triplicity in medical philosophy：essence of life，vital energy，vitality
三宝（道、经、师）　Taoist Triratna：Tao，scriptures，mas-

ters

三才（天、地、人） heaven; earth; man

云篆 Taoist characters

符字（丹书） talismanic figure

受符 shou-fu, transmission of the art of talismanic figures

坐忘 full oblivion

入静 contemplation in seclusion

止念 freedom from all

受戒 （参见 P340）

斋戒 fasting and ablution

道场 grand service

斋醮（设坛祭祷的仪式） ceremonial prayer

忏法 confessional

持诵 loud reading

炼度（超度亡魂的法事） prayer for the dead

祭炼 sacrifice to the dead

道术 Taoist magic or sorcery

法器 ritual implement

辟谷（断谷、休粮） abstention from food

盘古 the legendary creator and first ruler of the universe

太虚 the great void; the universe; interstellar space

瑶池 Jasper Lake (abode of immortals, associated with mythical Queen Mother of West)

玉阙 palace of Taoist immortals in heaven

蓬莱仙境 Penglai fairyland

蓬莱（三神山之一） Mt. Penglai, a fabled abode of immortals (one of Three Sacred Islands)

瀛洲（三神山之一） Mt. Yingzhou, one of Three Sacred Islands

方丈（三神山之一） Mt. Fangzhang, one of Three Sacred Islands

玉清境（三清境之一） Realm of Precious Purity

太清境（三清境之一） Realm of Absolute Purity

上清境（三清境之一） Realm of Lofty Purity

天条 the laws of god in heaven

天书 a book from heaven; Taoist writings

道家　Taoist school；Taoists

道士　Taoist priest；Taoist clergyman

道人　a respectful form of address for a Taoist priest

道姑　Taoist nun；a woman Taoist

道号　monastic name of a person

住持　abbot

经师　cantor

五行　the Five Primary Elements — metal，wood，water，fire and earth

道观　Taoist monastery（or Temple）

道院（较小）　monastic house

法坛（经坛、斋坛）　Taoist tabernacles

土地堂　a tiny temple housing the village god

二十三　博物馆
MUSEUM

博物馆学
MUSEOLOGY

理论博物馆学　theoretical museology
历史博物馆学　historical museology
博物馆技术学　museography
博物馆管理学　science of museum management
博物馆气候学　museum climatology
博物馆方法学　museum methodology
博物馆建筑学　museum architecture
博物馆信息学　information technology of museum
普通博物馆学　general museology
专门博物馆学　special museology
博物馆环境管理　administration of museum environment
博物馆管理机制　management mechanism of museum
博物馆自动化管理系统　automatic management system of museum
博物馆资源　resources of museum
博物馆类型　types of museum
艺术博物馆　art museum
历史博物馆　history museum
科技博物馆　museum of science and technology
综合博物馆　integrated museum
人类学博物馆　museum of anthropology
人种学博物馆　museum of ethnology
人种志博物馆　ethnographical museum
自然史博物馆　museum of natural history

生态博物馆　eco-museum
考古博物馆　museum of archaeology
民俗博物馆　museum of folklore
军事博物馆　military museum
农业博物馆　agricultural museum
地质博物馆　geological museum
遗址博物馆　site museum
露天博物馆　open-air museum
流动博物馆　mobile museum
无墙博物馆　museum without wall
博物馆陈列　museum display（exhibition）
博物馆宣教　museum propaganda and education
博物馆藏品研究　study of museum collections
博物馆学教育　museological education
博物馆馆长　museum director（or curator）
博物馆专业人员　museum professionals; professional functionaries for museum
博物馆志愿人员　museum volunteers
博物馆观众　museum visitors
经常去博物馆的公众　museum-going public

藏品保管
PRESERVATION OF COLLECTIONS

藏品征集　acquisition of collections
藏品收购　purchase of collections
直（间）接征集　direct（indirect）acquisition
征集道德　ethics of acquisitions
搜集方针　collection policy
搜集任务　collecting missions
藏品储备　reservation of collections
藏品库房　storage for collections
藏品保存环境　conservation environment of collections
藏品入库　be put in storage; be stored
保护道德　ethics of preservation
分类　classification

登记　registration
编目　cataloging；to catalogue
目录卡　catalogue card
排架　shelving；to shelve
统计　statistics
档案　archives
藏品管理　management of collections
保护（养）　conservation；protection
保管　preservation
鉴定　appraisal；identification
定级　grading；to grade
一、二、三…级　grade A，B，C，…
质地分析　texture analysis
年代测定　date（or age）determination
复制　reproduction
复制的档案材料　archive material in facsimile
认可的复制品　approved replicas
出库检查　delivery inspection
调拨　allocate and transfer；allot
交换　exchange
注销　cancel
清点　check
影像资料　photographic data
干制标本　specimens in drying
浸制标本　specimens in solution
压制标本　specimens in laying
化石标本　fossil specimens
土壤标本　soil specimens
矿岩标本　rock and mineral specimens
动物标本　animal specimens
植物标本　plant specimens
藏品修复　restoration of collections
修复厂　studio for the restoration of works of art
科学（工艺）实验室　scientific（or technological）laboratory
藏品保护技术　preservation techniques for collections
适宜藏品的小气候　micro-climate for collections

藏品保管设备　equipments for preservation of collections
检验设备　monitoring equipment
空气污染　air pollution
空气调节（器）　air conditioning (conditioner)
空气过滤器　air filter
相（绝）对湿度　relative (absolute) humidity
相（绝）对温度　relative (absolute) temperature
加热器　heating apparatus
加湿器　humidifier
除湿剂　dehumidizer
干燥器　dehumidifier
铜病　bronze disease
失去光泽　tarnishing
杀虫剂　insecticides
驱虫剂　insectifuge
热辐射　thermal radiation
红外线辐射　infra-red radiation
紫外线过滤器　ultra-violet filter
紫外线检验器　ultra-violet meter
防潮湿　moisture-proofing
防辐射　radiation protection
防腐蚀　anti-corrosion; corrosion control
防虫蛀　control of insect-eating
防震　precautions against earthquakes
防尘　dust-proofing
防霉菌　mold prevention
风化剥离　weathering and stripping
控制环境污染　control of atmospheric pollution
自动化空调系统　automatic air-conditioning system

陈列展览
DISPLAY AND EXHIBITION

总体设计　general design
内容设计　content design
艺术设计　artistic design

设计图　design drawing
分类陈列　classification display；classified display
综合陈列　integration display；integrated display
生态陈列　ecological display
原状陈列　presentation of articles in their original state；exhibition in the original forms；presentation in the original forms
复原陈列　restored exhibition（display）
摹拟陈列　simulated display；diorama
演示陈列　demonstration display；exhibition through demonstration
室内陈列　indoor display
露天陈列　outdoor（or open-air）display
基本陈列　basic display
临时陈列　temporary display（exhibition）
永久陈列　permanent display（exhibition）
流动陈列　mobile display（exhibition）
展览设备　equipments for exhibition
展览橱柜　showcases
台座　pedestals
屏风（假墙）　screen（artificial wall）
支架　support；stand
镜框　picture frame
展品　exhibits；articles for display
辅助展品　auxiliary articles for display（exhibition）
沙盘　sand table
模型　mold
图表　chart（diagram）
景观　setting view；actual settings
布置展品　arrange exhibits
采光　natural lighting；daylighting
照明　illumination；lighting
照明装置　lighting installation
照度　intensity of illumination；illuminance
光敏度　light-sensitivity
照度计　light meter

勒克司（照明单位） lux

照明水平 illumination level

文字说明（中、外文） written explanation; expository writing (in Chinese and foreign languages)

参观路线 visitors' itinerary

指路牌 guide board (post)

陈列示意图 plan of the exhibition

预展 preview; private view

内部展览 restricted show

签到簿 attendance book

留言簿 visitors' book

请签到 please put your signature in the attendance book

请提意见 please write your impressions in the visitors' book

欢迎批评 to invite visitors' constructive criticisms; visitors' constructive criticisms are invited

欢迎参观 welcome

请勿拍照 no photography

请勿吸烟 no smoking

请勿触动展品 please keep (or leave) the exhibits intact

请勿抚摸展品 please do not touch the exhibits

室内请肃静 please be quiet in the exhibition hall

宣传教育
PUBLICITY AND EDUCATION

协助学校教育 to assist the school education

进行成人教育 adult education

普及科学文化知识 to spread cultural and scientific knowledge

弘扬民族文化 to promote and develop the national culture

宣传爱国主义 to publicize patriotism

增强审美观念 to strengthen aesthetic sense

多功能文化中心 multi-functional center of culture

直观教育 audio-visual education

专题报告（讲座） report (lecture) on a special topic

讲解 interpretation; explanation

讲解员 guides; commentators; interpreters

解说词　commentary from the museum guide; commentary; written caption

说明书　instruction book; guide book; booklet of directions

讲解艺术　art of interpretation

因人施讲　give an interpretation (or explanation) to visitors in accordance with their capacity

参观指南　a guide to a museum

电化教育　education with electric audio-visual aids

出版宣传品　publication of propaganda materials

宣传计划　popularization programs

传播性质　nature of communication

信息传播　communication of information

通讯报导　news report

广告牌　billboard

招贴画　posters

传单　leaflets

明信片　postcards

幻灯片　lantern slides

磁带录像　video tape recording

录音导游　audio-visual tour

宣传橱窗　showcase for publicity

记者招待会　press conference

开放管理
ADMINISTRATION OF OPENING AFFAIRS

售票处　booking office; ticket office

售票时间　ticket office (or window) open

参观时间　visiting hours; hours of operation

预售　reservation; advance booking

预售票　advance ticket

停止售票　ticket office closed

停止入场　no admission

停止参观　we are about to close; stop visiting

凭票入场　admission by ticket only

免费入场　free admission

入场券　admission ticket

副券　sub-ticket

赠券　complimentary ticket; free ticket

优待券　privileged ticket

此票发售当日有效　the ticket is available on the day of issue only

赠券停用　complimentary ticket is not valid

鱼贯而入，请勿拥挤　please do not push; enter in file (or order)

通知（告）　notice; public notice

一米以下儿童免费参观　children under one meter tall admitted free; children under a meter in height free of charge

团体 20 人以上凭介绍信半价　50% discount for groups of twenty or more people with a letter of recognition from their organization or institute

军警学生半价　half price for service men and students

残废军人凭证免费　disabled soldiers admitted free with their identification card

精神病患者和醉酒者不得入内　mental patients or intoxicated persons not admitted

禁止携带武器和违禁品　no weapons, inflammable materials or explosives

请勿在墙上涂写　please do not mark or draw on the walls; no scribbling on walls

请勿张帖　no posting; stick no bills

请勿攀折花木　please refrain from picking the flowers and breaking the branches

请勿践踏草地　please keep off the grass

请勿随地吐痰　no spitting

请勿攀登　no scaling (or climbing)

请把垃圾扔进圾圾箱内　please deposit garbage or paper in trash containers; throw rubbish into dustbins

危险，请勿接近　danger! keep out!

问讯台　inquiry desk; information desk

广播室　broadcasting studio

照相室　photo-studio

立等可取　while-U-wait

当日可取　same day service
休息室　lounging room; sitting room
接待室　reception room
餐饮部　catering department
快餐部　buffet service; snack counter (bar)
小吃部　refreshment room
小卖部　small shop (selling cigarettes, confectionery, etc.); souvenirs and refreshments
纪念品出售处　souvenir counter
外宾服务部　foreign visitors' service (department)
欢迎惠顾　your patronage (browsing) is welcome
书亭　book kiosk; bookstall; bookstand
急救室　first-aid room; room for emergency treatment
厕所　restrooms; toilets
男厕所　men's; gentlemen
女厕所　women's; ladies
正（旁）门　main (side) entrance
出（入）口　exit (entrance); way out (in)
停车处（场）　parking lot (area)
禁止停车　no parking here
停车　stop here
禁止通行　no thoroughfare; no through way
禁止左（右）转　no left (right) turn
禁止回转　no U-turn
禁按喇叭　no honking
此路不通　dead end; road closed; blocked
绕道行使　detour
观众止步　no visitors; visitors not admitted; employees only
谢绝参观　inspection declined
非公莫入　admittance for business purposes only
非请莫入　authorized personnel only
存（取）包处　depositing (withdrawing) parcels
行李存放处　cloakroom; check room
失物招领处　lost and found office
星期六、日照常开放　exhibition as usual on Saturdays and Sundays

春节期间照常开放　exhibition as usual during the Spring Festival
内部整修暂停开放　closed during repairs (or restorations)
重新开放　reopen to the public

博物馆机构
MUSEUM ORGANIZATIONS

国际博物馆协会　International Council of Museums (ICOM)
国际博协各委员会　ICOM Committees
国际考古与历史博物馆委员会　International Committee for Museums of Archaeology and History (ICMAH)
世界（国际）博物馆之友联合会　The World Federation of Friends of Museums (WFFM)
国际博物馆文物保护协会　Institut International pour la Conservation des Objects de Musées (IIC)
史密森学会　Smithsonian Institution (including 14 subordinate museums and 1 national Zoological Garden)
国际博协博物馆职业道德准则　International Council of Museums Norms for Employees of Museums
国际博协中国委员会　ICOM Chinese National Committee
中国博物馆学会　Chinese Society of Museums
中国自然科学博物馆协会　Chinese Association of Natural Science Museums

二十四　全国重点文物保护单位选
SELECTED MAJOR HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL MONUMENTS UNDER STATE PROTECTION

古建筑及历史纪念建筑物
ANCIENT AND HISTORICAL-MEMORIAL BUILDINGS

故宫（紫禁城）　Gu Gong（Zi Jin Cheng）. Imperial Palace（Forbidden City）.（Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing）

太庙　Tai Miao. Imperial Ancestral Temple（Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing）

社稷坛　Sheji Tan. Imperial Divine Temple; Altar to the Gods of Grain and Land（Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing）

天坛　Tian Tan. Temple of Heaven（Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing）

皇史宬　HuangshiCheng. Imperial Archives（Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing）

北海、团城　Beihai, Tuancheng. Beihai Park and Round City（Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing）

颐和园　Yi He Yuan. Summer Palace（Qing Dynasty, in Beijing）

避暑山庄　Bishu Shanzhuang. Imperial Summer Resort（Qing Dynasty, in Chengde city, Hebei Province）

沈阳故宫　Shenyang Gugong. Shenyang Imperial Palace（Early Qing Dynasty, in Shenyang city, Liaoning Province）

万里长城—八达岭　Wanli Changcheng — Badaling. Great Wall — Badaling（Ming Dynasty, in Yanqing County, Bei-

jing)

万里长城—山海关　Wanli Changcheng — Shanhai Guan. Great Wall — Shanhai Guan (Ming Dynasty, in Shanhai Guan, Hebei Province)

万里长城—嘉峪关　Wanli Changcheng — Jiayu Guan. Great Wall — Jiayu Guan (Ming Dynasty, in Jiayu Guan City, Gansu Province)

南京城墙　Nanjing Chengqiang. Nanjing City Walls (Early Ming Dynasty, in Nanjing, Jiangsu Province)

平遥城墙　Pingyao Chengqiang. Pingyao City Walls (Ming Dynasty, in Pingyao County, Shanxi Province)

蓬莱水城及蓬莱阁　Penglai Shui Cheng Ji Penglai Ge. Penglai Waterside City and Penglai Pavilion (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Penglai County, Shandong Province)

布达拉宫　Budala Gong. Potala Palace (Ming Dynasty, in Lhasa, Tibet)

曲阜孔庙及孔府　Qufu Kong Miao Ji Kong Fu. Confucian Temple and Kongs' Residence in Qufu (Jin to Qing Dynasties, in Shandong Province)

武侯祠　Wuhou Ci. Zhuge Liang Memorial Hall (Qing Dynasty, in Chengdu, Sichuan Province)

杜甫草堂　Dufu Caotang. Du Fu Memorial Hall (Qing Dynasty, in Chengdu, Sichuan Province)

国子监　Guozijian. Imperial College (Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing)

天一阁　Tianyige. Tianyi Pavilion (Ming Dynasty, in Ningbo, Zhejiang Province)

白鹿洞书院　Bailudong Shuyuan. Bailudong College (Song Dynasty, in Lushan, Jiangxi Province)

岳麓书院　Yuelu Shuyuan. Yuelu College (Song Dynasty, in Changsha, Hunan Province)

岳阳楼　Yueyang Lou. Yueyang Pavilion (Song Dynasty, in Yueyang city, Hunan Province)

丁村民宅　Dingcun Minzhai. Dingcun Common People's House (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Xiangfen County, Shanxi Province)

恭王府及花园　Gongwang Fu Ji Huayuan. Prince Gongwang's Residence and Garden (Qing Dynasty, in Beijing)

豫园　Yu Yuan. Yuyuan Garden (Ming Dynasty, in Shanghai)

寄畅园　Jichang Yuan. Jichang Garden (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Wuxi city, Jiangsu Province)

拙政园　Zhuozheng Yuan. Zhuozheng Yuan Garden (Humble Administrator's Garden, Ming Dynasty, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province)

留园　Liuyuan. Liuyuan Garden (Lingering Garden, Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province)

网师园　Wangshi Yuan. Wangshi Garden (Qing Dynasty, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province)

罗布林卡　Luobulinka. Norbu Lingka (Qing Dynasty, in Lhasa, Tibet)

都江堰　Dujiangyan. Dujiangyan Dams (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Dujiangyan City, Sichuan Province)

古观象台　Gu Guanxiang Tai. Ancient Observatory (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing 1437—1446)

观星台　Guanxing Tai. Stellar Observatory (Yuan Dynasty, in Dengfeng, Henan Province)

安济桥　Anji Qiao. Anji Bridge (Sui Dynasty, in Zhaoxian County, Hebei Province)

安平桥　Anping Qiao. Anping Bridge (Southern Song Dynasty, in Jinjiang County, Fujian Province)

孝堂山郭氏墓石祠　Xiaotangshan Guoshi Mu Shici. Stone Memorial Hall at Guo's Cemetery on Xiaotang Mountain (Eastern Han Dynasty, in Changqing County, Shandong Province)

褒斜道石门及其摩崖石刻　Baoxiedao Shimen Jiqi Moya Shike. Rock Gate and Cliffside Inscriptions on Baoxiedao Road (Han Dynasty, in Hanzhong City, Shaanxi Province)

佛光寺　Foguang Si. Foguang Temple (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Wutai County, Shanxi Province)

风穴寺及塔林　Fengxue Si Ji Talin. Fengxue Temple and Its Pagodas (Northern Wei, Sui and Tang Dynasties, in Ruzhou City, Henan Province)

灵岩寺　Lingyan Si. Lingyan Temple (Eastern Jin, Northern Wei, Tang and Song Dynasties, in Changqing County, Shandong Province)

晋祠　Jinci. Jin Memorial Hall (Song Dynasty, in Taiyuan, Shanxi Province)

玉皇庙　Yuhuang Miao. Taoist Jade Emperor Temple (Song to Qing Dynasties, in Jincheng, Shanxi Province)

大庙飞来殿　Damiao Feilai Dian. Feilai Hall of the Great Temple (Song, Yuan and Ming Dynasties, in Emeishan City, Sichuan Province)

玉泉寺及铁塔　Yuquansi Ji Tieta. Yuquan Temple and Its Iron Pagoda (Sui, Tang and Song Dynasties, in Dangyang County, Hubei Province)

独乐寺　Dule Si. Dule Temple (Liao Dynasty, in Jixian County of Tianjin)

白马寺　Baima Si. White Horse Temple (Eastern Han to Qing Dynasties, in Luoyang City, Henan Province)

大昭寺　Dazhao Si. Zuglakang (Jokhang) Monastery (mid-7th century, in Lhasa, Tibet)

哲蚌寺　Zhebeng Si. Drepung Monastery (Ming Dynasty, in Lhasa, Tibet)

扎什伦布寺　Zhashilunbu Si. Zhaxilhunbu Monastery (Ming Dynasty, in Xigaze, Tibet)

塔尔寺　Ta'er Si. Ta'er Temple (Ming to Qing Dynasties, in Huangzhong County, Qinghai)

拉卜楞寺　Labuleng Si. Lhabrang Monastery (Qing Dynasty, in Xiahe County, Gansu Province)

雍和宫　Yonghe Gong. Lamaist Temple (Qing Dynasty, in Beijing)

普宁寺　Puning Si. Puning Temple (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)

安远庙　Anyuan Miao. Anyuan Temple (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)

普陀宗乘之庙　Putuozongsheng Zhi Miao. Temple of the Potaraka Doctrine (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)

须弥福寿之庙　Xumi Fushou Zhi Miao. Temple of Sumeru Happiness and Longevity (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)

永乐宫　Yongle Gong. Yonglegong Taoist Temple (Yuan Dynasty, in Ruicheng County, Shanxi Province)

武当山金殿　Wudangshan Jindian. Gilt Bronze Hall on Mt. Wudang (Ming Dynasty, in Danjiangkou City, Hubei Province)

解州关帝庙　Xiezhou Guandi Miao. Guandi Temple at Xiezhou (Sui to Qing Dynasties, in Xiezhou Town of Yuncheng City, Shanxi Province)

牛街礼拜寺　Niujie Libai Si. Niujie Street Mosque (Yuan and Ming Dynasties, in Beijing)

大雁塔　Dayan Ta. Great Wild Goose Pagoda (Tang Dynasty, in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)

小雁塔　Xiaoyan Ta. Small Wild Goose Pagoda (Tang Dynasty, in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)

房山云居寺塔及石经　Fangshan Yunjusi Ta Ji Shijing. Yunju Temple Pagoda and Stone Sutras at Fangshan (Sui, Tang, Liao and Jin Dynasties, in Fangshan District of Beijing)

棲霞寺舍利塔　Qixiasi Sheli Ta. Qixia Temple Sarira-stupa (Sui Dynasty, in Nanjing City, Jiangsu Province)

万部华严经塔　Wanbu Huayanjing Ta. Pagoda for Keeping Ten-thousand Copies of the Buddha-avatamsaka-sutra (Liao Dynasty, in Huhehot, Inner Mongolia)

六和塔　Liuhe Ta. Six Harmonies Pagoda (Southern Song Dynasty, in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province)

释迦文佛塔　Shijiawen Fota. Sakya Script Pagoda (Song Dynasty, in Putian County, Fujian Province)

一百零八塔　Yibai Lingba Ta. One-hundred-and-eight Pagodas (Yuan, Ming, Qing Dynasties, in Qingtongxia City, Ningxia)

真觉寺金刚宝座（五塔寺塔）　Zhenjuesi Jingang Baozuo (Wutasi Ta). Diamond Throne in the Zhenjue Temple (Pagodas of the Five-pagoda Temple, Ming Dynasty, in Beijing)

广德寺多宝塔　Guangdesi Duobao Ta. Abundant Treasure Pagoda of the Guangde Temple (Ming Dynasty, in Xiangyang, Hubei Province)

金刚座舍利宝塔　Jingangzuo Sheli Baota. Sarira-stupas on Diamond Throne (Qing Dynasty, in Huhehot of Inner Mongolia)

赵州陀罗尼经幢　Zhaozhou Tuoluoni Jingchuang. Dharani Sutra Pillars in Zhaozhou (Song Dynasty, in Zhaoxian County, Hebei Province)

石窟寺（石窟）
BUDDHIST CAVE TEMPLES (GROTTOS)

孔望山摩崖造像　Kongwangshan Moya Zaoxiang. Kongwangshan Cliffside Images (or Sculptures) (Eastern Han Dynasty, in Lianyungang City, Jiangsu Province)

克孜尔千佛洞　Kezi'er Qianfo Dong. Kizil Thousand-Buddha Caves (a. 4th-8th century A. D., in Beicheng, Xinjiang)

莫高窟　（参见 P381）

榆林窟　Yulin Ku. Yulin Grottoes (Tang to Yuan Dynasties, in Anxi County, Gansu Province)

炳灵寺石窟　Binglingsi Shiku. Binglingsi Grottoes (Northern Wei to Ming Dynasties, in Yongjing County, Gansu Province)

麦积山石窟　Maijishan Shiku. Maijishan Grottoes (a. 5th century to Ming Dynasty, in Tianshui City, Gansu Province)

云冈石窟　Yungang Shiku. Yungang Grottoes (Northern Wei Dynasty, in Datong City, Shanxi Province)

龙门石窟　Longmen Shiku. Longmen Grottoes (Northern Wei to Tang Dynasties, in Luoyang City, Henan Province)

巩县石窟寺　Gongxian Shiku Si. Gongxian Cave Temple (Northern Wei to Song Dynasties, in Gongxian County, Henan Province)

北石窟寺　Beishiku Si. Northern Cave Temple (Northern Wei to

Song Dynasties, in Xifeng City, Gansu Province)

南石窟寺 Nanshiku Si. Southern Cave Temple (Northern Wei to Tang Dynasties, in Jingchuan County, Gansu Province)

万佛堂石窟 Wanfotang Shiku. Wanfotang Grottoes (Northern Wei Dynasty, in Yixian County, Liaoning Province)

须弥山石窟 Xumishan Shiku. Sumeru Mount Grottoes (Northern Dynasties to Tang Dynasty, in Guyuan County, Ningxia)

响堂山石窟 Xiangtangshan Shiku. Xiangtangshan Grottoes (the late Northern Dynasties to Ming Dynasty, in Handan City, Hebei Province)

千佛崖摩崖造像 Qianfoya Moya Zaoxiang. Thousand-Buddha Cliffside Images (or Sculptures)
(Southern and Northern Dynasties to Ming Dynasty, in Guangyuan City, Sichuan Province)

南龛摩崖造像 Nankan Moya Zaoxiang. Southern Niches Cliffside Images (Sui to Song Dynasties, in Bazhong County, Sichuan Province)

千佛崖造像 Qianfoya Zaoxiang. Thousand-Buddha Cliffside Images (Tang to Ming Dynasties, in Ji'nan City, Shandong Province)

大佛寺石窟 Dafosi Shiku. Great Buddhist Temple Grottoes (Northern Wei to Qing Dynasties, in Binxian County, Shaanxi Province)

乐山大佛 Leshan Dafo. Leshan Cliffside Buddha (Tang Dynasty, in Leshan City, Sichuan Province)

北山摩崖造像 Beishan Moya Zaoxiang. Beishan Cliffside Images (Tang to Southern Song Dynasties, in Dazu County, Sichuan Province)

石钟山石窟 Shizhongshan Shiku. Shizhongshan Grottoes (Nanzhao and Dali Period, in Jianchuan County, Yunnan Province)

飞来峰造像 Feilaifeng Zaoxiang. Feilaifeng Cliffside Sculptures (Five Dynasties to Ming Dynasty, in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province)

宝顶山摩崖造像 Baodingshan Moya Zaoxiang. Baodingshan

Cliffside Images (Southerm Song Dynasty, in Dazu County, Sichuan Province)

通天岩石窟 Tongtianyan Shiku. Tongtianyan Grottoes (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Ganzhou, Jiangxi Province)

石刻及其他
STONE INSCRIPTIONS AND OTHERS

将军崖岩画 Jiangjunya Yanhua. Jiangjunya Petroglyphs (the middle and late Neolithic Age, in Lianyungang, Jiangsu Province)

花山岩画 Huashan Yanhua. Huashan Pictographs (the Warring States Period to Eastern Han Dynasty, in Ningming County, Guangxi)

云峰山、天柱山摩崖石刻 Yunfengshan Tianzhushan Moya Shike. Yunfengshan and Tianzhushan Cliffside Inscriptions (Northern Dynasties, in Laizhou City and Pingdu County, Shandong Province)

白鹤梁题刻 Baiheliang Tike. Baiheliang Inscriptions and Carvings (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Fuling County, Sichuan Province)

浯溪摩崖石刻 Wuxi Moya Shike. Wuxi Cliffside Inscriptions (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Qiyang County, Hunan Province)

怡亭铭摩崖石刻 Yitingming Moya Shike. Cliffside Inscription at the Yiting Pavilion (Tang Dynasty, in Ezhou City, Hubei Province)

九日山摩崖石刻 Jiurishan Moya Shike. Jiurishan Cliffside Inscriptions (Song Dynasty, in Nan'an County, Fujian Province)

西安碑林 Xi'an Beilin. Forest of Steles in Xi'an (Han Dynasty to modern times)

段氏与三十七部会盟碑 Duanshi Yu Sanshiqi Bu Huimeng Bei. Tablet Recording the Union of Duan with 37 Tribes (Song Dynasty, in Qujing City, Yunnan Province)

重修护国寺感应塔碑 Chongxiu Huguosi Ganyingta Bei. Tablet

Marking the Rebuilding of the Ganying Pagoda, Huguo Temple (Western Xia Period, in Wuwei City, Gansu Province)

苏州文庙内宋代石刻 Suzhou Wenmiao Nei Songdai Shike. Stone Diagrams of the Song Dynasty in the Confucian Temple, in Suzhou, Jiangsu Province

大金得胜陀颂碑 Dajin Deshengtuo Songbei. Great Jin Memorial Stele at Deshengtuo (Kin Dynasty, in Fuyu City, Jilin Province)

南京南朝陵墓石刻 Nanjing Nanchao Lingmu Shike. Stone Sculptures at Mausoleums of the Southern Dynasties at Nanjing

老君岩造像 Laojunyan Zaoxiang. Rock Image of Lao Jun (Song Dynasty, in Quanzhou City, Fujian Province)

松江唐经幢 Songjiang Tang Jingchuang. Sutra Pillar of the Tang Dynasty in Songjiang county, Shanghai

常德铁幢 Changde Tiechuang. Iron Sutra Pillar in Changde (Song Dynasty, in Changde City, Hunan Province)

地藏寺经幢 Dizangsi Jingchuang. Sutra Pillar of the Ksitigarbha Temple (Song Dynasty, in Kunming City, Yunnan Province)

溪州铜柱 Xizhou Tongzhu. Bronze Column at Xizhou (Five Dynasties in Yongshun County, Hunan Province)

沧州铁狮子 Cangzhou Tieshizi. Cangzhou Iron Lion (Latter Zhou, Five Dynasties, in Hebei Province)

保圣寺罗汉塑像 Baoshengsi Luohan Suxiang. Statues of Arhats in the Baosheng Temple (Song Dynasty, in Wuxian County, Jiangsu Province)

峨嵋山圣寿万年寺铜铁佛像 Emeishan Shengshouwanniansi Tongtie Foxiang. Bronze and Iron Buddhist Sculptures in the Shengshouwannian Temple, Emei Mountain (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Sichuan Province)

古遗址
ANCIENT SITES

腊玛古猿化石地点 Lama Guyuan Huashi Didian. Locality of

Ramapithecus Fossils (late Miocene Epoch, in Lufeng County, Yunnan Province)

元谋猿人遗址 Yuanmou Yuanren Yizhi. Site of Yuanmou Man (early Paleolithic Age, in Yunnan Province)

兰田猿人遗址 Lantian Yuanren Yizhi. Site of Lantian Man (early Paleolithic Age, in Lantian county, Shaanxi Province)

周口店遗址 Zhoukoudian Yizhi. Zhoukoudian Site (Paleolithic Age, in Zhoukoudian near Beijing)

丁村遗址 Dingcun Yizhi. Dingcun Site (Paleolithic Age, in Xiangfen County, Shanxi Province)

水洞沟遗址 Shuidonggou Yizhi. Shuidonggou Site (late Paleolithic Age, in Lingwu County, Ningxia)

大地湾遗址 Dadiwan Yizhi. Dadiwan Site (Neolithic Age, in Qin'an County, Gansu Province)

仰韶村遗址 Yangshaocun Yizhi. Yangshaocun Site (Neolithic Age, in Minchi County, Henan Province)

半坡遗址 Banpo Yizhi. Banpo Site (Neolithic Age, in the suburbs of Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)

马家窑遗址 Majiayao Yizhi. Majiayao Site (Neolithic Age to Bronze Age, in Lintao County, Gansu Province)

马厂塬遗址 Machangyuan Yizhi. Machangyuan Site (late Neolithic Age, in Minhe County, Qinghai Province)

大汶口遗址 Dawenkou Yizhi. Dawenkou Site (Neolithic Age, in Tai'an City, Shandong Province)

河姆度遗址 Hemudu Yizhi. Hemudu Site (Neolithic Age, in Yuyao City, Zhejiang Province)

屈家岭遗址 Qujialing Yizhi. Qujialing Site (late Neolithic Age, in Jingshan County, Hubei Province)

二里头遗址 Erlitou Yizhi. Erlitou Site (early Bronze Age, in Yanshi County, Henan Provonce)

郑州商代遗址 Zhengzhou Shangdai Yizhi. Shang Site at Zhengzhou (in Henan Province)

殷墟 Yinxu. Yin Ruins (in Anyang City, Henan Province)

周原遗址 Zhouyuan Yizhi. Zhouyuan Site (early Zhou Dynasty, between Qishan and Fufeng Counties in Shaanxi Pro-

vince)

丰镐遗址　Fenggao Yizhi. Site of capital cities of Fengjing and Gaojing (Western Zhou Dynasty, in Chang'an County, Shaanxi Province)

琉璃河遗址　Liulihe Yizhi. Liulihe Site (Shang and Zhou Dynasties, in Fangshan District, Beijing)

临淄齐国故城　Linzi Qiguo Gucheng. Site of the Qi State Capital at Linzi (Western Zhou to the Qi State of Warring States Period, in Shandong Province)

曲阜鲁国故城　Qufu Luguo Gucheng. Site of the Lu State Capital at Qufu (Zhou to Han Dynasties, in Shandong Province)

侯马晋国遗址　Houma Jinguo Yizhi. Site of the Jin State at Houma (Spring and Autumn Period, in Shanxi Province)

楚纪南故城　Chu Jinan Gucheng. Site of the Chu State Capital at Jinancheng (Eastern Zhou Dynasty, in Jiangling County, Hubei Province)

秦雍城遗址　Qin Yongcheng Yizhi. Site of the Qin State Capital at Yongcheng City (Spring and Autumn Period to Warring States Period, in Fengxiang County, Shaanxi Province)

郑韩故城遗址　Zheng-Han Gucheng Yizhi. Site of the Zheng and Han States Capital (Eastern Zhou Dynasty, in Xinzheng County, Henan Province)

燕下都遗址　Yanxiadu Yizhi. Site of the Yan State Lower Capital (Warring States Period, in Yixian County, Hebei Province)

阿房宫遗址　Epang Gong Yizhi. Site of the Efang (Epang) Palace (Qin Dynasty, in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)

中山古城遗址　Zhongshan Gucheng Yizhi. Site of the Zhongshan State Capital (Warring States Period, in Pingshan County, Hebei Province)

汉魏洛阳故城遗址　Han-Wei Luoyang Gucheng Yizhi. Site of the Han-Wei Period Capital Luoyang (in Henan Province)

大明宫遗址　Daming Gong Yizhi. Site of the Daminggong Palace

(Tang Dynasty, in Xi'an City, Shaanxi Province)

北宋东京城遗址 Beisong Dongjing Cheng Yizhi. Site of Dongjing City, the Capital of the Northern Song Dynasty (in Kaifeng City, Henan Province)

辽上京遗址 Liao Shangjing Yizhi. Site of the Upper Capital of the Liao Dynasty (in Balin Left Banner, Inner Mongolia)

元上都遗址 Yuan Shangdu Yizhi. Site of the Yuan Dynasty Upper Capital (in Plain Blue Banner, Inner Mongolia)

明中都皇故城及皇陵石刻 Ming Zhongdu Huanggucheng Ji Huangling Shike. Site of the Imperial City and Stone Sculptures at the Imperial Tombs in the Middle Capital of the Ming Dynasty (in Fengyang County, Anhui Province)

高昌故城 Gaochang Gucheng. Site of the Gaochang (Khoco) State Capital (460-640, in Turpan, Xinjiang)

古格王国遗址 Gugewangguo Yizhi. Site of the Guge Kingdom (10th-16th centuries, in Zada County, Tibet)

玉门关及长城烽燧遗址 Yumen Guan Ji Changcheng Fengsui Yizhi. Beacon Sites at the Yumen Pass and along the Great Wall (Han Dynasty, in Dunhuang City, Gansu Province)

圆明园遗址 Yuanmingyuan Yizhi. Site of the Yuanmingyuan Palace (Qing Dynasty, in Beijing)

上林湖越窑遗址 Shanglinhu Yue Yao Yizhi. Site of the Yue Yao on Shanglin Lake (Eastern Han to Song Dynasties, in Cixi County, Zhejiang Province)

什邡堂邛窑遗址 Shifangtang Qiong Yao Yizhi. Site of the Qiong Yao at Shifangtang (Sui to Song Dynasties in Qionglai County, Sichuan Province)

长沙铜官窑遗址 Changsha Tongguan Yao Yizhi. Site of the Tongguan Yao at Changsha (Tang and Five Dynasties, in Hunan Province)

涧磁村定窑遗址 Jiancicun Ding Yao Yizhi. Site of the Ding Yao at Jianci Village (Tang to Yuan Dynasties, in Quyang County, Hubei Province)

黄堡镇耀州窑遗址　Huangbaozhen Yaozhou Yao Yizhi. Site of the Yaozhou Yao at Huangbao Township (Tang and Song Dynasties, in Yaoxian County, Shaanxi Province)

钧台钧窑遗址　Juntai Jun Yao Yizhi. Site of the Jun Yao at Juntai (Song Dynasty, in Yuxian County, Henan Province)

大窑龙泉窑遗址　Dayao Longquan Yao Yizhi. Site of the Longquan Yao at Dayao (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Longquan County, Zhejiang Province)

屈斗宫德化窑遗址　Qudougong Dehua Yao Yizhi. Site of the Dehua Yao at Qudougong (Song to Qing Dynasties, in Dehua County, Fujian Province)

湖田窑址　Hutian Yao Zhi. Kiln Site at Hutian (Song and Yuan Dynasties, in Jingde zhen, Jiangxi Province)

古墓葬
ANCIENT TOMBS

黄帝陵　Huangdi Ling. Memorial Mausoleum of Legendary Emperor Huangdi (in Huangling County, Shaanxi Province)

田齐王陵　Tianqiwang Ling. Mausoleums of Kings of the Tian Qi State (Warring States Period, in Zibo City, Shandong Province)

秦始皇陵　Qinshihuang Ling. Mausoleum of Qinshihuang (in Lintong County, Shaanxi Province)

长陵　Chang Ling. Changling Mausoleum of Emperor Gaozu and Empress Lü Zhi of the Han Dynasty (in Xianyang City, Shaanxi Province)

茂陵　Mao Ling. Maoling Mausoleum of Emperor Wudi of the Han Dynasty (in Xingping County, Shaanxi Province)

杜陵　Du Ling. Duling Mausoleum of Emperor Xuandi of the Western Han Dynasty (in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)

昭陵　Zhao Ling. Zhaoling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizong of the Tang Dynasty (in Liquan County, Shaanxi Province)

乾陵　Qian Ling. Qianling Mausoleum of Emperor Gaozong and

Empress Wu Zetian of the Tang Dynasty (in Qianxian County, Shaanxi Province)

藏王墓 Zangwang Mu. Tombs of the Tibetan Kings (6th century in Qonggyai County 琼结县, Tibet)

王建墓 Wang Jian Mu. Tomb of Wang Jian, Ruler of the Former State of Shu (Five Dynasties, in Chengdu, Sichuan Province)

宋陵 Song Ling. Mausoleums of the Song Dynasty (Imperial Mausoleums of the Northern Song Dynasty, in Gongxian County, Henan Province)

西夏陵 Xixia Ling. Mausoleums of the Western Xia (Tangut) State (in Yinchuan City, Ningxia)

成吉思汗陵 Chengjisihan Ling. Memorial Mausoleum of Genghis Khan (or Jenghiz Khan) (in Yijinholuo Banner, Inner Mongolia)

明孝陵 Ming Xiao Ling. Xiaoling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizu and Empress Ma of the Ming Dynasty (in Nanjing, Jiangsu Province)

明十三陵 Ming Shisan Ling. Imperial Mausoleums of the Ming Dynasty (in Changping District, Beijing)

永陵 Yong Ling. Yongling Mausoleum of the Qing Emperor Taizu's (Nurhachi) Ancestors (in Xinbin County, Liaoning Province)

福陵 Fu Ling. Fuling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizu (Nurhachi) and Empress Yehenala of the Qing Dynasty (in Shenyang City, Liaoning Province)

清昭陵 Qing Zhao Ling. Zhaoling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizong (Huangtaiji) and Empress Boerjijite of the Qing Dynasty (north of old Shenyang City, Liaoning Province)

清东陵 Qing Dong Ling. East Imperial Tombs of the Qing Dynasty (in Zunhua County, Hebei Province)

清西陵 Qing Xi Ling. West Imperial Tombs of the Qing Dynasty (in Yixian County, Hebei Province)

中山靖王墓 Zhongshan Jingwang Mu. Tomb of Zhongshan Prince Jingwang (Tomb of Liu Sheng and his wife Dou

Wan of the Western Han Dynasty, in Mancheng County, Hebei Province)

顺陵　Shun Ling. Shunling Mausoleum of Wu Zetian's Mother (Tang Dynasty, in Xianyang City, Shaanxi Province)

孔林　Konglin. Cemetery of Confucius and His Descendants (Eastern Zhou Dynasty, in Qufu, Shandong Province)

麻浩崖墓　Mahao Yamu. Cave Tombs on the Mahao River (Eastern Han to Southern and Northern Dynasties)

辽阳壁画墓群　Liaoyang Bihua Muqun. Painted Tombs at Liaoyang (Eastern Han to Jin Dynasties, in Liaoning Province)

僰人悬棺葬　Boren Xuanguan Zang. Hanging-coffin Burials of the Bo People (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Hongxian County, Sichuan Province)

霍去病墓　Huo Qubing Mu. Tomb of Huo Qubing (Western Han Dynasty, in Xingping County, Shaanxi Province)

司马迁墓和祠　Sima Qian Mu He Ci. Memorial Tomb and Temple of Sima Qian (Western Han Dynasty, in Zhichuan Township, Hancheng City, Shaanxi Province)

张衡墓　Zhang Heng Mu. Tomb of Zhang Heng (Eastern Han Dynasty, in Nanyang County, Henan Province)

司马光墓　Sima Guang Mu. Tomb of Sima Guang (Song Dynasty, in Xiaxian County, Shanxi Province)

岳飞墓　Yue Fei Mu. Tomb of Yue Fei (Southern Song Dynasty, in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province)

徐光启墓　Xu Guangqi Mu. Tomb of Xu Guangqi (Ming Dynasty, in Shanghai)

李时珍墓　Li Shizhen Mu. Tomb of Li Shizhen (Ming Dynasty, in Jinchun County, Hubei Province)

李自成墓　Li Zicheng Mu. Tomb of Li Zicheng (late Ming Dynasty, in Tongshan County, Hubei Province)

郑成功墓　Zheng Chenggong Mu. Tomb of Zheng Chenggong (early Qing Dynasty, in Nan'an County, Fujian Province)

阿巴和加麻札　Abahejia Mazha. Abahejias' Cemetery (late 17th century, in Kashi, Xinjiang)

伊斯兰教圣墓 Yisilanjiao Shengmu. Tomb of Islamic Saints (Tang Dynasty, in Quanzhou, Fujian Province)

近、现代遗址及纪念建筑物
MODERN SITES AND MEMORIAL BUILDINGS

林则徐销烟池与虎门炮台旧址 Lin Zexu Xiaoyanchi Yu Humen Paotai Jiuzhi. Sites of the Pool of Lin Zexu Destroying Opium and the Humen Batteries (in Dongguan City and Fanyu County of Guangdong Province, 1939)

三元里平英团遗址 Sanyuanli Pingying Tuan Yizhi. Site of the "Quell the British" Corps at Sanyuanli (in Guangzhou, 1841)

太平天国起义遗址 Taiping Tianguo Qiyi Yizhi. Site of Uprising of the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom (in Jintian Village of Guiping County, Guangxi, 1851)

大沽口炮台遗址 Dagukou Paotai Yizhi. Site of Dagukou Batteries (in Dagukou of Tianjin, 1900)

甲午战争纪念地 Jiawu Zhanzheng Ji'niandi. Memorial Places of Sino-Japanese War of 1894-1895 (in Liugongdao of Weihai City, Shandong Province)

义和团吕祖堂坛口遗址 Yihetuan Luzutang Tankou Yizhi. Altar Site of the Yihetuan Movement in Lu's Ancestral Temple (in Tianjin, 1900)

江孜宗山抗英遗址 Jiangzi Zongshan Kangying Yizhi. Site of Resistance to British Aggression at Zongshan, Jiangzi (in Gyangze, Tibet, 1914)

黄花岗七十二烈士墓 Huanghua'gang Qishi'er Lieshi Mu. Tomb of 72 Revolutionary Martyrs at Huanghua'gang (in Guangzhou, 1911)

武昌起义军政府旧址 Wuchang Qiyi Junzhengfu Jiuzhi. Site of the Military Government of the Wuchang Uprising (in Wuhan, 1911)

北京大学红楼 Beijing Daxue Honglou. Red Building of Peking University (center of May 4 Movement in 1919)

中国社会主义青年团中央机关旧址 Zhongguo Shehuizhuyi

Qingniantuan Zhongyang Jiguan Jiuzhi. Site of the Central Organ, Chinese Socialist Youth League (in Shanghai, 1920-1921)

中国共产党第一次全国代表大会会址 Zhongguo Gongchandang Diyici Quanguo Daibiao Dahui Huizhi. Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party (in Shanghai, 1921)

安源路矿工人俱乐部旧址 Anyuan Lukuang Gongren Julebu Jiuzhi. Site of the Anyuan Railway and Mine Workers' Club (in Pingxiang City, Jiangxi Province, 1923)

国民党"一大"旧址 Guomindang "Yi-Da" Jiuzhi. Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese National Party (in Guangzhou, 1924)

黄埔军校旧址 Huangpu Junxiao Jiuzhi. Site of the Huangpu Military Academy (in Guangzhou, 1924)

中华全国总工会旧址 Zhonghua Quanguo Zonggonghui Jiuzhi. Site of the Chinese National Federation of Trade Unions (in Guangzhou, 1925)

广州农民运动讲习所旧址 Guangzhou Nongmin Yundong Jiangxisuo Jiuzhi. Site of the National Institute of Peasant Movements (in Guangzhou, 1926)

"八一"起义指挥部旧址 "Ba-Yi" Qiyi Zhihuibu Jiuzhi. Site of the August 1 Uprising Headquarters (in Nanchang, Jiangxi Province, 1927)

"八七"会议会址 "Ba-Qi" Huiyi Huizhi. Site of the August 7 Conference (in Wuhan, Hubei Province, 1927)

秋收起义文家市会师旧址 Qiushou Qiyi Wenjiashi Huishi Jiuzhi. Site of the Autumn Harvest Uprising Revolutionary Armies Joining Forces at Wenjiashi (in Liuyang County, Hunan Province, 1927)

海丰红宫红场旧址 Haifeng Honggong Hongchang Jiuzhi. Red Square and Red Palace at Haifeng (in Guangdong Province, 1927)

广州公社旧址 Guangzhou Gongshe Jiuzhi. Site of Guangzhou Commune (1927)

井冈山革命遗址 Jinggangshan Geming Yizhi. Jinggang

Mountains Revolutionary Sites (in Ninggang, Jiangxi Province, 1927-1929)

平江起义旧址　Pingjiang Qiyi Jiuzhi. Site of Pingjiang Uprising (in Pingjiang County, Hunan Province, 1928)

古田会议会址　Gutian Huiyi Huizhi. Site of Gutian Conference (in Shanghang County, Fujian Province, 1929)

湘鄂西革命根据地旧址　Xiang-Exi Geming Genjudi Jiuzhi. Sites of the Western Hunan and Hubei Revolutionary Bases (in Honghu City and Jianli County, Hubei Province, 1930-1932)

瑞金革命遗址　Ruijin Geming Yizhi. Ruijin Revolutionary Sites (in Jiangxi Province, 1931-1934)

鄂豫皖革命根据地旧址　E-Yu-Wan Geming Genjudi Jiuzhi. Sites of the Hubei-Henan-Anhui Revolutionary Bases (in Xinxian County, Henan Province, 1931-1932)

红四方面军总指挥部旧址　Hongsi-Fangmian-Jun Zongzhihuibu Jiuzhi. Headquarters of the 4th Front Army, Chinese Workers' and Peasants' Red Army (in Tongjiang County, Sichuan Province, 1932)

遵义会议会址　Zunyi Huiyi Huizhi. Site of Zunyi Conference (in Guizhou Province, 1935)

泸定桥　Luding Qiao. Luding Bridge (in Garze, Sichuan Province, 1935)

瓦窑堡革命旧址　Wayaobao Geming Jiuzhi. Wayaobao Revolutionary Sites (in Zichang County, Shaanxi Province, 1935-1936)

西安事变旧址　Xi'an Shibian Jiuzhi. Sites of Xi'an Incident (in Xi'an City and Lintong County, Shaanxi Province, 1936)

延安革命遗址　Yan'an Geming Yizhi. Yan'an Revolutionary Sites (in Shaanxi Province, 1937-1947)

芦沟桥　Lugou Qiao. Lugou Bridge or Marco Polo Bridge (in Fengtai District, Beijing, 1937)

平型关战役遗址　Pingxingguan Zhanyi Yizhi. Pingxingguan Battle Site (in Lingqiu County, Shanxi Province, 1937)

八路军总司令部旧址　Balujun Zongsilingbu Jiuzhi. Eighth

Route Army Headquarters (in Wuxiang County, Shanxi Province, 1939-1942)

新四军军部旧址 Xinsijun Junbu Jiuzhi. New Fourth Army Headquarters (in Jingxian County, Anhui Province, 1938-1941)

中共中央中原局旧址 Zhonggong Zhongyang Zhongyuanju Jiuzhi. Site of Central Plains Bureau, Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party (in Queshan County, Henan Province, 1939)

冉庄地道战遗址 Ranzhuang Didaozhan Yizhi. Site of the Tunnel Warfare at Ranzhuang (in Qingyuan County, Hebei Province, during the War of Resistance Against Japan and the War of Liberation)

西柏坡中共中央旧址 Xibaipo Zhonggong Zhongyang Jiuzhi. Site of the Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party at Xibaipo (in Pingshan County, Hebei Province, 1948. 5-1949. 3)

天安门 Tian'an Men. Gate of Heavenly Peace (in Beijing, where the founding of PRC was proclaimed in 1949)

雨花台烈士陵园 Yuhuatai Lieshi Lingyuan. Yuhuatai Cemetery of Revolutionary Martyrs (in Nanjing, established after liberation)

平顶山惨案遗址 Pingdingshan Can'an Yizhi. Site of the Pingdingshan Massacre (in Fushun City, Liaoning Province, 1932)

旅顺监狱旧址 Lushun Jianyu Jiuzhi. Site of the Lushun Prison (in Dalian, Liaoning Province, 1902-1945)

上饶集中营旧址 Shangrao Jizhongying Jiuzhi. Site of the Shangrao Concentration Camp (in Jiangxi Province, established in 1941)

中美合作所集中营旧址 Zhong-Mei Hezuosuo Jizhongying Jiuzhi. Site of the Concentration Camp "Sino-American Cooperation Organization" (in Chongqing, established in 1943)

人民英雄纪念碑 Renmin Yingxiong Jinianbei. Monument to the People's Heroes (in Beijing, established in 1958)

孙中山故居　Sun Zhongshan Guju. The Former Residence of Sun Yat-sen (in Cuiheng Village, Zhongshan City, Guangdong Province, b. 1866)

韶山冲毛泽东故居　Shaoshanchong Mao Zedong Guju. Home of Mao Zedong at Shaoshanchong (in Xiangtan City, Hunan Province, b. 1893)

周恩来故居　Zhou Enlai Guju. Home of Zhou Enlai (in Huai'an City, Jiangsu Province, b. 1898)

朱德故居　Zhu De Guju. Home of Zhu De (in Yilong County, Sichuan Province, b. 1886)

刘少奇故居　Liu Shaoqi Guju. Home of Liu Shaoqi (in Ningxiang County, Hunan Province, b. 1898)

北京宋庆龄故居　Beijing Song Qingling Guju. Home of Song Qingling (in Beijing, b. 1893)

郭沫若故居　Guo Moruo Guju. Home of Guo Moruo (in Beijing, b. 1892)

茅盾故居　Mao Dun Guju. Home of Mao Dun (in Tongxian County, Zhejiang Province, b. 1896)

中山陵　Zhongshan Ling. Sun Yat-sen Mausoleum (in Nanjing, established in 1926-1929)

林则徐墓　Lin Zexu Mu. Tomb of Lin Zexu (in Fuzhou, Fujian Province)

冯玉祥墓　Feng Yuxiang Mu. Tomb of Feng Yuxiang (in Tai'an City, Shandong Province, established in 1952)

陈嘉庚墓　Chen Jiageng Mu. Tomb of Chen Jiageng (in Xiamen City, Fujian Province, established in 1961)

鲁迅墓　Lu Xun Mu. Tomb of Lu Xun (in Shanghai, established in 1956)

聂耳墓　Nie Er Mu. Tomb of Nie Er (in Kunming City, Yunnan Province, established in 1937)

宋庆龄墓　Song Qingling Mu. Tomb of Song Qingling (in Song's graveyard, Wanguo Cemetery, Lingyuan Road, Changning District, Shanghai)

二十五　世界遗产在中国
WORLD HERITAGE IN CHINA

我国自1985年签署《世界遗产公约》以来，到2005年7月已有31处遗产获得联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会批准列入《世界遗产名录》　By July of 2005, 31 places of cultural and natural heritage in China had been placed on the list of World Heritage with approval from the World Heritage Committee UNESCO since China signed the Convention for Preservation of World Cultural and Natural Heritage in 1985. They are as follows:

自然遗产
NATURAL HERITAGE

九寨沟　(Jiuzhaigou)　in Jiuzhaigou County, Sichuan Aba Zang and Qing Autonomous Zhou, listed in 1992

黄龙　(Huanglong)　in Songpan County, Sichuan Aba Zang and Qing Autonomous Zhou, listed in 1992

武陵源　(Wulingyuan)　in Zhangjiajie City, Hunan Province, listed in 1992

文化和自然双重遗产
CULTURAL AND NATURAL DUAL HERITAGE

泰山　(Taishan)　Mount Tai, in Tai'an City, Shandong Province, listed in 1987

黄山　(Huangshan)　Mount Huang, in the southern part of Anhui Province, listed in 1990

峨眉山—乐山大佛　(Emeishan-Leshan Dafo)　cliffside Buddha in Leshan, Emeishan City, Sichuan Province, list-

ed in 1996

武夷山 (Wuyishan) Mount Wuyi, in the southern suburb of Wuyishan City, Fujian Province, listed in 1999

文化景观遗产
CULTURAL LANDSCAPE HERITAGE

庐山 (Lushan) Mount Lu, in the northern part of Jiangxi Province, listed in 1996

文化遗产
CULTURAL HERITAGE

长城 (Changcheng) the Great Wall, in the northern part of China, from Shanhaiguan Pass in Hebei Province to Jiayuguan Pass in Gansu Province, listed in 1987

周口店"北京人"遗址 (Zhoukoudian "Beijingren" Yizhi) the site of "Peking Man" on the Dragon Bone Hill at Zhoukoudian, Fangshan District, Beijing, listed in 1987

北京故宫 (Beijing Gugong) The Imperial Palace in Beijing, at the center of Beijing, listed in 1987

秦始皇陵及兵马俑坑 (Qin Shihuang Ling Ji Bingma Yong Keng) Qin Shihuang's Mausoleum and Its Terra-Cotta Warriors and Horses Pit, at the northern foot of Lishan Mountain in Lintong County, Xi'an City, Shaanxi Province, listed in 1987

莫高窟 (Mogao Ku) Mogao Grottoes, at the eastern foot of Wusha Mountain about 25 km from Dunhuang City, Gansu Province, listed in 1987

孔庙、孔府、孔林 (Kongmiao, Kongfu, Konglin) Confucian Temple, Kong's Residence and Cemetery of Confucius and His Descendants, in Qufu City, Shandong Province, listed in 1994

承德避暑山庄及周围庙宇 (Chengde Bishu Shanzhuang Ji Zhouwei Miaoyu) Imperial Summer Resort and Its Sur-

rounding Temples, in Chengde City, Hebei Province, listed in 1994

布达拉宫、大昭寺、罗布林卡 (Budalagong, Dazhaosi, Luobulinka) Potala Palace, listed in 1994; Zuglakang (Jokhang) Monastery, listed in 2000; Norbu Lingka, listed in 2001; all in Lhasa city, the Tibet Autonomous Region.

武当山古建筑群 (Wudangshan Gujianzhu Qun) Ancient architectural complex on Mt. Wudang, in Danjiangkou City, Hubei Province, listed in 1994

丽江古城 (Lijiang Gucheng) Lijiang City Walls, in Lijiang Naxi Autonomous County, Yunnan Province, listed in 1997

平遥古城 (Pingyao Gucheng) Pingyao City Walls in Pingyao County, Shanxi Province, listed in 1997

颐和园 listed in 1998 (参见 P360)

天坛 (Tiantan) The Temple of Heaven, in Chongwen District, Beijing, listed in 1998

大足石刻 (Dazu Shike) Dazu Cliffside Sculptures, in Dazu County, Chongqing City, Sichuan Province, listed in 1999

明清皇家陵寝 (Ming Qing Huangjia Lingqin) Imperial Mausoleums of the Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Zhongxiang City, Hubei Province, and in Zunhua City and Yixian County of Hebei Province; all of them were listed in 2000

苏州古典园林 (Suzhou Gudian Yuanlin) Suzhou Classic Gardens, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province. Among them Zhuozheng Yuan Garden, Liu Yuan Garden, Wangshi Yuan Garden and Huanxiu Shanzhuang Garden were listed in 1997; Canglang Ting Garden, Yipu Garden, Ouyuan Garden, Shizilin Garden and Tuisi Yuan Garden were listed in 2000

都江堰 (Dujiangyan) Dujiangyan Dams, in Dujiangyan City, Sichuan Province, listed in 2000

皖南古村落 (Wannan Gu Cunluo) Wannan Ancient Villages,

in Yi County of Huangshan City, Anhui Province, listed in 2000

龙门石窟　listed in 2000　(参见 P365)

云冈石窟　listed in 2001　(参见 P365)

高句丽王城、王陵及贵族墓葬　(Gaogouli Wangcheng, Wangling Ji Guizu Muzang)　Royal cities, royal mausoleums and noble Tombs of Gaogouli kingdom (including 3 cities, 12 mausoleums, 26 tombs, a monument to King Haotai, and No. 1 secondary tomb of general grave), distributed mainly over Ji'an city of Jilin Province and Huanren County of Liaoning Province, listed in July 2004

沈阳故宫、盛京三陵　(Shenyang Gugong, Shengjing Sanling) The Imperial Palace in Shenyang and The Three Imperial Mausoleums in Shengjing (now Shenyang), Liaoning Province, listed in July 2004 respectively as enlarged items of the imperial palaces and the imperial mausoleums of the Ming and Qing dynasties

澳门历史城区　(Aomen Lishi Chengqu) Historical Center of Macao (Including more than 20 ancient Chinese and western buildings, it is the largest, the most age-old. most complete, and most centralized existing historical centre within the boundaries of China, listed in July of 2005)

二十六　中国历史年表
A CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF CHINESE DYNASTIES

夏	Xia	21st-16th century B. C.
商（殷）	Shang（Yin）	16th-11th century B. C.
西周	Western Zhou	11th century-770 B. C.
东周	Eastern Zhou	770-221 B. C.
春秋	Spring & Autumn Period	770-476 B. C.
战国	Warring States Period	475-221 B. C.
秦	Qin	221-207 B. C.
西汉	Western Han	206 B. C. -24 A. D.
东汉	Eastern Han	25-220
三国	Three Kingdoms	220-280
魏	Wei	220-265
蜀	Shu	221-263
吴	Wu	222-280
西晋	Western Jin	265-316
东晋	Eastern Jin	317-420
南北朝	Southern and Northern Dynasties	420-589
南朝	Southern Dynasties	420-589
宋	Song	420-479
齐	Qi	479-502
梁	Liang	502-557
陈	Chen	557-589
北朝	Northern Dynasties	386-581
北魏	Northern Wei	386-534
东魏	Eastern Wei	534-550

西魏	Western Wei	535-557
北齐	Northern Qi	550-577
北周	Northern Zhou	557-581
隋	Sui	581-618
唐	Tang	618-907
五代十国	Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms	907-979
五代	Five Dynasties (in North China)	907-960
后梁	Later Liang	907-923
后唐	Later Tang	923-936
后晋	Later Jin	936-946
后汉	Later Han	947-950
后周	Later Zhou	951-960
十国	Ten Kingdoms (in South China)	902-979
前蜀	Former Shu	907-925
后蜀	Later Shu	934-965
南平(荆南)	Nanping (Jingnan)	924-963
楚	Chu	927-951
吴	Wu	902-937
南唐(齐)	Southern Tang (Qi)	937-975
吴越	Wu Yue	907-978
闽	Min	907-945
南汉(越)	Southern Han (Yue)	917-971
北汉	Northern Han	951-979
北宋	Northern Song	960-1127
南宋	Southern Song	1127-1279
辽	Liao Dynasty	916-1125
西夏	Western Xia	1038-1227
金	Jin Dynasty	1115-1234
元	Yuan	1271-1368

明朝	Ming Dynasty	1368-1644
洪武 （太祖朱元璋）	Hong Wu (Taizu, Zhu Yuanzhang)	1368-1398
建文 （惠帝朱允炆）	Jian Wen (Huidi, Zhu Yunwen)	1399-1402
永乐 （成祖朱棣）	Yong Le (Chengzu, Zhu Di)	1403-1424
洪熙 （仁宗朱高炽）	Hong Xi (Renzong, Zhu Gaozhi)	1425-1425
宣德 （宣宗朱瞻基）	Xuan De (Xuanzong, Zhu Zhanji)	1426-1435
正统 （英宗朱祁镇）	Zheng Tong (Yingzong, Zhu Qizhen)	1436-1449
景泰 （代宗朱祁钰）	Jing Tai (Daizong, Zhu Qiyu)	1450-1456
天顺 （英宗朱祁镇）	Tian Shun (Yingzong, Zhu Qizhen)	1457-1464
成化 （宪宗朱见深）	Cheng Hua (Xianzong, Zhu Jianshen)	1465-1487
弘治 （孝宗朱祐樘）	Hong Zhi (Xiaozong, Zhu Youtang)	1488-1505
正德 （武宗朱厚照）	Zheng De (Wuzong, Zhu Houzhao)	1506-1521
嘉靖 （世宗朱厚熜）	Jia Jing (Shizong, Zhu Houcong)	1522-1566
隆庆 （穆宗朱载垕）	Long Qing (Muzong, Zhu Zaihou)	1567-1572
万历 （神宗朱翊钧）	Wan Li (Shenzong, Zhu Yijun)	1573-1620
泰昌 （光宗朱常洛）	Tai Chang (Guangzong, Zhu Changluo)	1620-1620
天启 （熹宗朱由校）	Tian Qi (Xizong, Zhu Youxiao)	1621-1627

崇祯 （思宗朱由检）	Chong Zhen (Sizong, Zhu Youjian)	1628-1644
清朝	Qing Dynasty	1644-1911
顺治 （世祖爱新觉罗福临）	Shun Zhi (Shizu, Aixinjueluo Fulin)	1644-1661
康熙 （圣祖爱新觉罗玄烨）	Kang Xi (Shengzu, Aixinjueluo Xuanye)	1662-1722
雍正 （世宗爱新觉罗胤禛）	Yong Zheng (Shizong, Aixinjueluo Yinzhen)	1723-1735
乾隆 （高宗爱新觉罗弘历）	Qian Long (Gaozong, Aixinjueluo Hongli)	1736-1795
嘉庆 （仁宗爱新觉罗颙琰）	Jia Qing (Renzong, Aixinjueluo Yongyan)	1796-1820
道光 （宣宗爱新觉罗旻宁）	Dao Guang (Xuanzong, Aixinjueluo Wenning)	1821-1850
咸丰 （文宗爱新觉罗奕詝）	Xian Feng (Wenzong, Aixinjueluo Yizhu)	1851-1861
同治 （穆宗爱新觉罗载淳）	Tong Zhi (Muzong, Aixinjueluo Zaichun)	1862-1874
光绪 （德宗爱新觉罗载湉）	Guang Xu (Dezong, Aixinjueluo Zaitian)	1875-1908
宣统 （爱新觉罗溥仪）	Xuan Tong (Aixinjueluo Pu Yi)	1909-1911
中华民国	Republic of China	1912-1949
中华人民共和国	People's Republic of China	1949-

附录（1）
APPENDIX

天干地支
THE HEAVENLY STEMS AND EARTHLY BRANCHES

天干 The ten Heavenly Stems

1. 甲 （Jia） the first of the ten Heavenly Stems
2. 乙 （Yi） the second of the ten Heavenly Stems
3. 丙 （Bing） the third of the ten Heavenly Stems
4. 丁 （Ding） the fourth of the ten Heavenly Stems
5. 戊 （Wu） the fifth of the ten Heavenly Stems
6. 己 （Ji） the sixth of the ten Heavenly Stems
7. 庚 （Geng） the seventh of the ten Heavenly Stems
8. 辛 （Xin） the eighth of the ten Heavenly Stems
9. 壬 （Ren） the ninth of the ten Heavenly Stems
10. 癸 （Gui） the last of the ten Heavenly Stems

地支 The twelve Earthly Branches

1. 子（鼠）	（Zi，rat）	11-1	A. M.	三更
2. 丑（牛）	（Chou，ox）	1-3	A. M.	四更
3. 寅（虎）	（Yin，tiger）	3-5	A. M.	五更
4. 卯（兔）	（Mao，hare）	5-7	A. M.	
5. 辰（龙）	（Chen，dragon）	7-9	A. M.	
6. 巳（蛇）	（Si，snake）	9-11	A. M.	上午
7. 午（马）	（Wu，horse）	11-1	P. M.	正午
8. 未（羊）	（Wei，sheep）	1-3	P. M.	下午
9. 申（猴）	（Shen，monkey）	3-5	P. M.	
10. 酉（鸡）	（You，cock）	5-7	P. M.	
11. 戌（狗）	（Xu，dog）	7-9	P. M.	初更

12. 亥（猪）（Hai，pig） 9-11 P. M. 二更

Notes：时辰（Shichen）

One of the 12 two-hour periods into which the day was formerly divided（each being given the name of one of the 12 Earthly Branches 地支）

更（Geng）

One of the 5 two-hour periods into which the night was formerly divided（each being given the name of one of the 5 Earthly Branches，that is：Xu 戌时，初更 Hai 亥时，二更 Zi 子时，三更 Chou 丑时，四更 Yin 寅时，五更）

附录（2）
APPENDIX

四季月名
THE NAMES OF THE LUNAR MONTHS OF FOUR SEASONS

孟月　（Meng Yue）The first month of a season：

孟春　（Meng Chun）the first month of spring（i. e.　the first moon 正月）

孟夏　（Meng Xia）the first month of summer（i. e.　the fourth moon 四月）

孟秋　（Meng Qiu）the first month of autumn（i. e.　the seventh moon 七月）

孟冬　（Meng Dong）the first month of winter（i. e.　the tenth moon 十月）

仲月　（Zhong Yue）The second month of a season：

仲春　（Zhong Chun）the second month of spring（i. e.　the second moon 二月）

仲夏　（Zhong Xia）the second month of summer（i. e.　the fifth moon 五月）

仲秋　（Zhong Qiu）the second month of autumn（i. e.　the eighth moon 八月）

仲冬　（Zhong Dong）the second month of winter（i. e.　the eleventh moon 十一月）

季月　（Ji Yue）The last month of a season：

季春　（Ji Chun）the last month of spring（i. e.　the third moon 三月）

季夏　（Ji Xia）the last month of summer（i. e.　the sixth moon 六月）

季秋　（Ji Qiu）the last month of autumn（i. e. the ninth moon 九月）

季冬　（Ji Dong）the last month of winter（i. e. the twelfth moon 十二月）

附录（3）
APPENDIX

二十四节气
THE TWENTY-FOUR SOLAR TERMS

立春 （Lichun） The Beginning of Spring — the 1st of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Feb. 3, 4, or 5）

雨水 （Yushui） Rain Water — the 2nd of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Feb. 18, 19, or 20）

惊蛰 （Jingzhe） The Waking of Insects — the 3rd of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Mar. 3, 6, or 7）

春分 （Chunfen） The Spring Equinox — the 4th of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Mar. 20 or 21）

清明 （Qingming） Pure Brightness — the 5th of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Apr. 4, 5, or 6; also known as a festival for worshiping at ancestral graves）

谷雨 （Guyu） Grain Rain — the 6th of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Apr. 19, 20, or 21）

立夏 （Lixia） The Beginning of Summer — the 7th of the 24 solar terms （beginning from May. 5, 6, or 7）

小满 （Xiaoman） Lesser Fullness of Grain — the 8th of the 24 solar terms （beginning from May. 20, 21, or 22, when the winter wheat is filling out its ears）

芒种 （Mangzhong） Grain in Beard — the 9th of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Jun. 5, 6, or 7. which marks the end of the grain-growing season）

夏至 （Xiazhi） The Summer Solstice — the 10th of the 24 solar terms （beginning from Jun. 21 or 22, the longest day of the year）

小暑 (Xiaoshu) Lesser Heat — the 11th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Jul. 6, 7, or 8)

大暑 (Dashu) Greater Heat — the 12th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Jul. 22, 23, or 24)

立秋 (Liqiu) The Beginning of Autumn — the 13th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Aug. 7, 8, or 9)

处署 (Chushu) The End of Heat — the 14th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Aug. 22, 23, or 24, when summer is really over)

白露 (Bailu) White Dew — the 15th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Sept. 7, 8, or 9)

秋分 (Qiufen) The Autumn Equinox — the 16th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Sept. 22, 23, or 24)

寒露 (Hanlu) Cold Dew — the 17th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Oct. 8 or 9, which sees the first leaves falling from the trees)

霜降 (Shuangjiang) Frost's Descent — the 18th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Oct. 23 or 24)

立冬 (Lidong) The Beginning of Winter — the 19th of the 24 solar terms (Beginning from Nov. 7 or 8)

小雪 (Xiaoxue) Lesser Snow — the 20th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Nov. 22 or 23)

大雪 (Daxue) Greater Snow — the 21st of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Dec. 6, 7, or 8)

冬至 (Dongzhi) The Winter Solstice — the 22nd of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Dec. 21, 22, or 23)

小寒 (Xiaohan) Lesser Cold — the 23rd of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Jan. 5, 6, or 7)

大寒 (Dahan) Greater Cold — the last of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Jan. 20 or 21, after which the weather grows slowly warmer)

Notes: 节气 (Jieqi)

The 24 seasonal periods into which the solar year is divided, each consisting of 15 days; the day marking the beginning of the first solar term.

附录（4）
APPENDIX

二十八宿
(THE 28 XIU) LUNAR MANSIONS

The twenty-eight constellations into which the celestial sphere was divided in ancient Chinese astronomy. Seven of these constellations were allotted to each of the four quadrants of the vault of Heaven.

苍龙 (Canglong) the Green Dragon
a collective name for the eastern quadrant, comprising *Jiao* 角, *Kang* 亢, *Di* 氐, *Fang* 房, *Xin* 心, *Wei* 尾, *and Ji* 箕

玄武 (Xuanwu) the Black Warrior; the Black Tortoise
a collective name for the northern quadrant, comprising *Dou* 斗, *Niu* 牛, *Nü* 女, *Xu* 虚, *Wei* 危, *Shi* 室, *and Bi* 壁

白虎 (Baihu) the White Tiger
a collective name for the western quadrant, comprising *Kui* 奎, *Lou* 娄, *Wei* 胃, *Mao* 昴, *Bi* 毕, *Zi* 觜, *and Shen* 参

朱雀 (Zhuque) the Scarlet Bird
a collective name for the southern quadrant, comprising *Jing* 井, *Gui* 鬼, *Liu* 柳, *Xing* 星, *Zhang* 张, *Yi* 翼, *and Zhen* 轸

附录（5）
APPENDIX

吉祥语
AUSPICIOUS PHRASES

一帆风顺　(Yi Fan Feng Shun)
May you have favorable winds in your sails; to proceed smoothly without a hitch; smooth sailing

一团和气　(Yi Tuan He Qi)
full of goodwill toward one another; harmonious; goodnatured; keep on the right side of everyone

二龙戏珠　(Er Long Xi Zhu)
two dragons playing with a pearl

双喜　(Shuang Xi)
double happiness

双喜临门　(Shuang Xi Lin Men)
to have simultaneously two happy events in a family; a double blessing has descended upon the house

三多（多福、多寿、多男子）　(San Duo)
three abundances — blessing, longevity and male off-spring

三星（福、禄、寿）　(San Xing)
the three stars — lucky, official rank and salary, longevity

岁寒三友（松、竹、梅）　(Sui Han San You)
the three friends in the cold of the year — the pine, the bamboo, and the plum blossom, all of which do not wither in winter

三阳开泰　(San Yang Kai Tai)

a surge of good luck; the auspicious beginning of a new year; (usually symbolized by three sheep or goats)

四季平安 (Si Ji Ping An)
safe and sound all the year around

五福（寿、福、康宁、修好德、考终命） (Wu Fu)
the five blessings — longevity, wealth, health, love of virtue, and natural death

五谷丰登 (Wu Gu Feng Deng)
an abundant harvest of grains of all sorts; bumper harvest of all grains

五世其昌 (Wu Shi Qi Chang)
May you be blessed with many children and grand children.

五子登科 (Wu Zi Deng Ke)
Succeed in the civil examinations and become high officials.

五福捧寿 (Wu Fu Peng Shou)
good wish for longevity (usually symbolized by five bats holding a peach or the character "Shou")

六合同春 (Liu He Tong Chun)
Spring is everywhere (usually symbolized by deer and crane)

乔迁之禧 (Qiao Qian Zhi Xi)
best wishes for your new home; congratulations on your new home

竹林七贤 (Zhu Lin Qi Xian)
the Seven Wise Men of the Bamboo Grove, known as a group of seven men of letters in the 3rd century A. D. They were: Ji Kang 嵇康 Ruan Ji 阮籍 Shan Tao 山涛 Xiang Xiu 向秀 Liu Ling 刘伶 Ruan Xian 阮贤 and Wang Rong 王戎

竹报平安 (Zhu Bao Ping An)
to report in a letter home that everything is well

七夕（牛郎会织女） (Qi Xi)
the seventh night of the Seventh lunar month when the

legendary Herd-boy and the Weaving-girl meet each other for their once-a-year tryst over a bridge formed by sympathetic magpies over the Milky Way

嫦娥奔月 （Chang E Ben Yue）

Chinese legend Chang E who ascended the moon after secretly eating her husband's elixir of life.

八卦 （Ba Gua）

the Eight Diagrams （or Trigrams）. consisting of an arrangement of all solid, all broken, or a combination of solid and broken lines in eight groups of three lines, such as: 乾 Qian （☰）, 坤 Kun （☷）, 震 Zhen （☳）, 艮 Gen （☶）, 兑 Dui （☱）, 巽 Xun （☴）, 坎 Kan （☵）, 离 Li （☲）

八吉祥（八宝） （Ba Ji Xiang）

the eight auspicious emblems, also called the eight treasures （Ba Bao）. They are 法螺 （Fa Luo） conch, 法轮 （Fa Lun） wheel of the law, 宝伞 （Bao San） umbrella, 白盖 （Bai Gai） canopy, 莲花 （Lian Hua） lotus, 宝瓶 （Bao Ping） bottle, 金鱼 （Jin Yu） goldfish, and 盘肠 （Pan Chang） knotted cord

八仙 （Ba Xian）

the Eight Immortals of Taoism —（汉钟离） Han Zhongli, （张果老） Zhang Guolao, （吕洞宾） Lü Dongbin, （李铁拐） Li Tieguai, （韩湘子） Han Xiangzi, （曹国舅） Cao Guojiu, （蓝采和） Lan Caihe and （何仙姑） He Xiangu

八仙过海各显神通 （Ba Xian Guo Hai, Ge Xian Shen Tong）

the Eight Immortals crossing the sea, each of them showing his or her special prowess

长命富贵 （Chang Ming Fu Gui）

May you live long and be successful!

富贵有余 （Fu Gui You Yu）

have enough and to spare

吉祥如意 （Ji Xiang Ru Yi）

good luck and satisfaction of one's every wish

吉星高照　(Ji Xing Gao Zhao)

the lucky star shines brightly; be blessed by a lucky star

吉人天相　(Ji Ren Tian Xiang)

Heaven helps a good man; Heaven stands by the good man.

天长地久　(Tian Chang Di Jiu)

as old as heaven and earth; a very long time

万寿无疆　(Wan Shou Wu Jiang)

long life; longevity; May you attain (or enjoy) boundless longevity!

群仙祝寿　(Qun Xian Zhu Shou)

Immortals (Arhats) celebrating somebody's birthday

海屋添筹　(Hai Wu Tian Chu)

a conventional phrase for wishing an aged person a happy birthday

松柏长青　(Song Bai Chang Qing)

(a congratulatory expression on someone's birthday) May you live long and remain strong like the evergreen pine and cypress!

松鹤遐龄　(Song He Xia Ling)

pine and crane symbolizing longevity

喜上眉梢　(Xi Shang Mei Shao)

be radiant with joy; look very happy

喜鹊登梅　(Xi Que Deng Mei)

the magpie on the plum tree (announcing good news)

百鸟朝凤　(Bai Niao Chao Feng)

all birds paying homage to the phoenix — peace under a wise ruler

百鸟朝阳　(Bai Niao Chao Yang)

a hundred birds worshiping the sun

百美图　(Bai Mei Tu)

a picture showing large numbers of beautiful women

百子图　(Bai Zi Tu)

a picture showing numerous children either drawn or embroidered (given as a wish that the recipient will

have numerous offspring)

花好月圆　(Hua Hao Yue Yuan)
blooming flowers and full moon (usually used as a congratulatory message for somebody's marriage)

龙凤呈祥　(Long Feng Cheng Xiang)
prosperity brought by the dragon and the phoenix — in extremely good fortune

龙凤相配　(Long Feng Xiang Pei)
union of a dragon and a phoenix (a congratulatory phrase on the occasion of wedding)

琴瑟和鸣　(Qin Se He Ming)
marital harmony; conjugal bliss

天作之合　(Tian Zuo Zhi He)
a match by Heaven; a match blessed by God (used in congratulatory messages or greetings to a couple on their wedding)

麒麟送子　(Qi Lin Song Zi)
the unicorn bestowing a child

天伦之乐　(Tian Lun Zhi Le)
family happiness; family love and joy

万事亨通　(Wan Shi Heng Tong)
everything goes well

万事大吉　(Wan Shi Da Ji)
everything is just fine; everything's O. K.

桃符换旧　(Tao Fu Huan Jiu)
the time when old scrolls (or couplets) are replaced by new ones — the Lunar New Year's Day

万象更新　(Wan Xiang Geng Xin)
all things take on a new aspect; everything looks new and fresh.

万古长青　(Wan Gu Chang Qing)
to remain fresh forever; to be everlasting

太平盛世　(Tai Ping Shang Shi)
a reign of peace, order and prosperity

海清河晏　(Hai Qing He Yan)
time of peace and calm

海市蜃楼　(Hai Shi Shen Lou)

a mirage; illusion

狮子滚绣球　(Shi Zi Gun Xiu Qiu)

the lion sporting with an embroidered (or ornamental) ball

鲤鱼跳龙门　(Li Yu Tiao Long Men)

carp leaping over the Dragon Gate — to succeed in the civil service examination in former times

金瓯无缺　(Jin Ou Wu Que)

The golden goblet is intact — The integrity of the national territory is unaffected.

金童玉女　(Jin Tong Yu Nu)

young boys and girls attending upon an immortal

金玉满堂　(Jin Yu Man Tang)

to have one's house filled with riches

步步高升　(Bu Bu Gao Sheng)

to get promotions step by step

春风得意　(Chun Feng De Yi)

to attain a high official rank; to ride on the crest of success

福如东海　(Fu Ru Dong Hai)

happiness as immense as the eastern sea

寿比南山　(Shou Bi Nan Shan)

(a greeting for a person on his birthday) May your life be as lofty as the Southern Mountain Ranges.

福寿双全　(Fu Shou Shuang Quan)

to enjoy both happiness and longevity

眉鹤万年　(Mei He Wan Nian)

bushy eyebrows and crane symbolizing longevity (usually decorated with plum blossom, clouds and crane)

蟠桃献瑞　(Pan Tao Xian Rui)

to present somebody with a legendary peach (which gives eternal life) symbolizing propitious omen (usually decorated with peach and crane)

瑞雪兆丰年　(Rui Xue Zhao Feng Nian)

a timely snow promises a good harvest

附录（6）
APPENDIX

吉祥图案
AUSPICIOUS PATTERNS

1. 中国字　Chinese characters used as ornamental designs

   寿　Shou　（It stands for longevity.）

   万　Wan　（meaning "ten thousand"）

   喜　Xi　（meaning "joy"）

   吉　Ji　（meaning "luck"）

   双喜　Shuangxi　（"double happiness" means happiness and also longevity）

   万字　Swastika　（A Sanskrit term was held to mean "ten thousand" and also longevity.）

2. 八仙标志　The attributes of the Eight Immortals

   钟离权扇　the fan carried by Zhongli Quan

   吕洞宾剑　the sword of Lu Dongbin

   李铁拐葫芦拐杖　the double gourd and crutch of Li Tieguai

   曹国舅响板　the castanets of Cao Guo Jiu

   兰采和花篮　the basket of flowers of Lan Caihe

   张果老竹筒竹杆　the bamboo tube and rods of Zhang Guo Lao

   韩湘子长笛　the flute of Han Xiang Zi

   何仙姑莲蓬　the lotus pod of He Xian Gu

3. 八吉祥　The eight Buddhist emblems of good fortune

   白盖　the canopy（It is a symbol of a monarch, who shelters all living things.）

   法螺　the conch shell（It symbolizes the call to worship.）

   宝瓶　the sacred vase（It is a rebus for peace, because it is also pronounced "ping."）

宝伞　the royal umbrella（It is a symbol of the incorruptible official.）

法轮　the wheel of the law（the ever-turning cycle of the transmigration of souls）

盘长　the endless knot（It represents the everlasting love of Buddha and is a symbol of long life.）

莲花　the lotus flower（It is a symbol of purity.）

金鱼　a pair of gold fish（They are symbols of abundance.）

4. 珍宝　Treasures used as ornaments，the symbols of wealth and fortune

方金饰　a pair of rectangular gold ornaments

圆金饰　a pair of circular gold ornaments

珍珠　a pearl or jewel

卷轴　a pair of scrolls

石磬　a musical stone

犀角　a pair of rhinoceros horns

珊瑚　coral

锭　an ingot

灵芝　the Lingzhi fungus（symbol of longevity）

如意　the Ruyi Sceptre（meaning "as you wish"）

万字（事）如意　the Ruyi Sceptre with Swastika（May you have everything you wish.）

如意头　the head of Ruyi Sceptre（It conveys "good wishes for a long life as all you desire"）

如意云　the cloud in the shape of Ruyi Sceptre（a symbol of peace and good fortune）

5. 动植物界　The zoological and botanical worlds（harmony with nature）

仙鹤　the crane（a symbol of longevity）

孔雀　the peacock（a symbol of splendor）

鸳鸯　mandarin ducks（a symbol of marital happiness）

蝴蝶　butterfly（a rebus for "Die," meaning 70 or 80 years of age，also a symbol of happiness in marriage）

蝙蝠　bat（a rebus for "Fu," happiness，when a bat is depicted with peaches，it means "may you live long and be happy"；when a bat is depicted with a Swastika，it

means "may you have the greatest joy.")

桃子 peaches (a symbol of longevity and immortality)

佛手 Buddha's Hand Citron (The components of this name, "Fu" meaning "Buddha," and "Shou" meaning "hand," also play on the words for happiness "Fu" and long life "Shou.")

石榴 pomegranate (a symbol of abundant male offspring)

三多（果） The Three Abundances, The Three Fruits (The Peach, Buddha's Hand Citron and Pomegranate represent long life, happiness and male offspring.)

梅花 prunus (The prunus represents winter and the first month of the year, and is a symbol of perseverance and purity.)

牡丹 peony (The peony represents spring and the sixth month of the year, and is a symbol of wealth and advancement in life.)

莲花 lotus (The lotus represents summer and the seventh month of the year, and is a symbol of purity and nobility.)

菊花 chrysanthemum (The chrysanthemum represents autumn and the tenth month, and is also symbolic of a noble personality.)

兰花 orchid (The orchid represents the eleventh month of the year, and also symbolizes a noble personality as well as sincere friendship.)

水仙花 narcissus (The narcissus represents the twelfth month of the year, and symbolizes good fortune and prosperity.)



寿

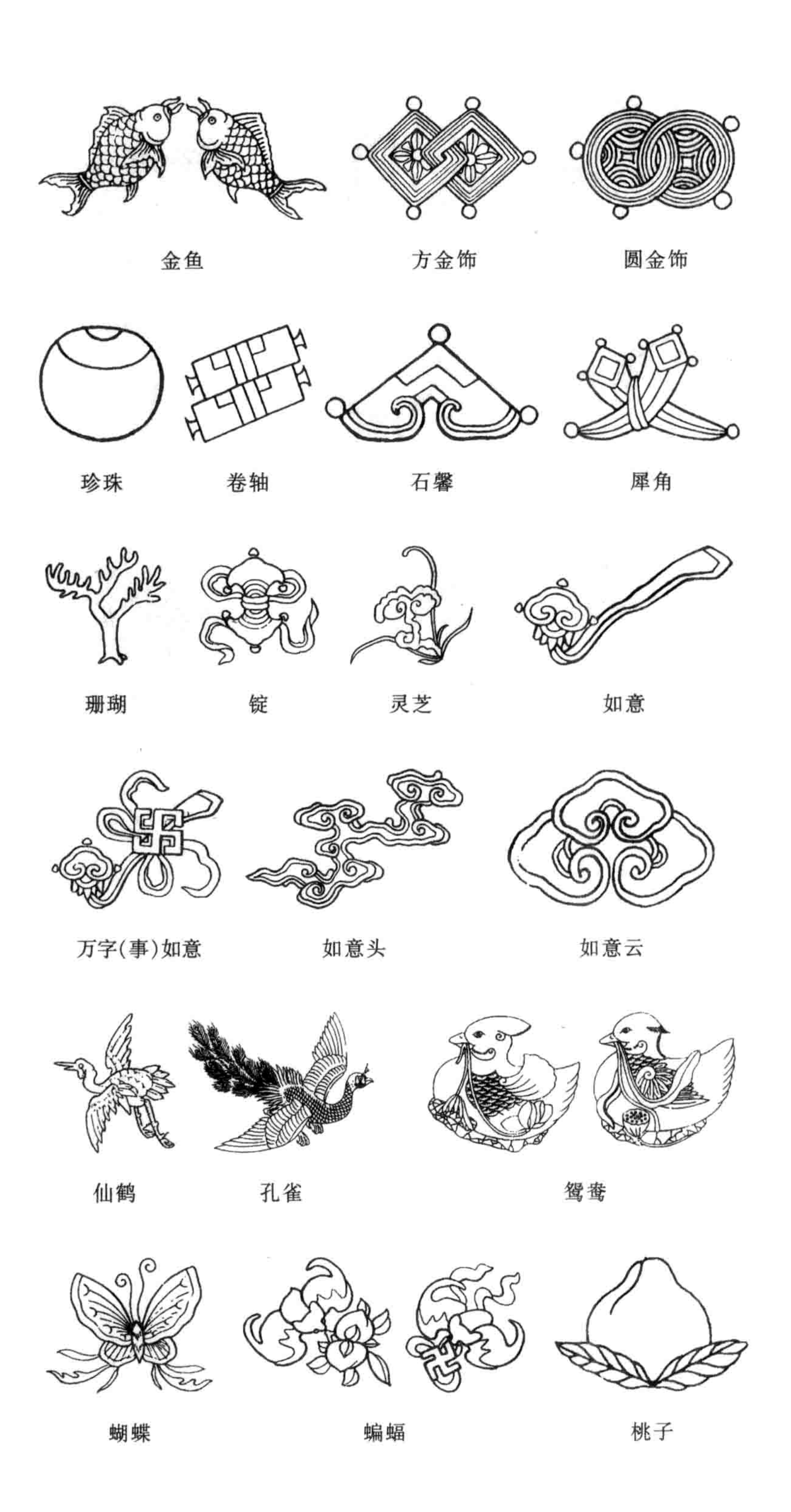


万



喜


吉
双喜
万字
钟离权扇
吕洞宾剑
李铁拐葫芦拐杖
曹国舅响板
兰采和花篮
张果老竹筒竹杆
韩湘子长笛
何仙姑莲蓬
白盖
法螺
宝瓶
宝伞
法轮
盘长
莲花


金鱼
方金饰
圆金饰
珍珠
卷轴
石馨
犀角
珊瑚
锭
灵芝
如意
万字(事)如意
如意头
如意云
仙鹤
孔雀
鸳鸯
蝴蝶
蝙蝠
桃子


佛手
石榴
三多（果）
梅花
牡丹
莲花
菊花
兰花
水仙花

主要参考书目
BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. 《中国大百科全书　文物博物馆》，中国大百科全书出版社，1993 年。

2. 《故宫博物院藏文物珍品大系》（包括金属胎珐琅器卷，竹木牙角雕刻卷，明清家具卷，鼻烟壶卷，藏传佛教造像卷，唐卡卷，元明清漆器卷，清宫服饰卷，玺印卷），商务印书馆（香港）有限公司，上海科学技术出版社，2001 ~2005 年。

3. 故宫博物院编，《故宫博物院藏明代绘画》，香港中文大学文物馆，1988 年。

4. 台北故宫博物院编，《故宫漆器特展目录》，1981 年。

5. 朱家溍，《清代造办处漆器制作考》，载《故宫博物院院刊》1987 年第 3 期。

6. 《清代家具艺术》，台北历史博物馆印行，1985 年。

7. 《黄花梨家具之美》，台北南天书局有限公司出版。

8. 《故宫珐琅器选萃》，台北故宫博物院印行，1979 年。

9. 朱家溍，《清代画珐琅器制作考》，载《故宫博物院院刊》1982 年第 3 期。

10. 夏更起、张荣主编，《故宫鼻烟壶选萃》，紫禁城出版社，1995 年。

11. 《故宫鼻烟壶》，台北故宫博物院编辑，1991 年。

12. 《故宫玺印选萃》，台北故宫博物院印行，1976 年。

13. 《清代服饰》，台北历史博物馆编辑，1988 年。

14. 《清代服饰展览图录》，台北故宫博物院编辑，1986 年。

15. 杜友良主编，《简明汉英—英汉世界宗教词典》，中国对外翻译出版公司，1994 年。

16. 故宫博物院编，《清宫藏传佛教文物》，紫禁城出版社，两木出版社，1992 年。

17. 《颐和园》（*Yi He Yuan*）

18. 《远东汉英大辞典》，新华出版社，远东图书公司，

1995 年。

19. 北京外国语大学英语系《汉英词典》组编，《汉英词典》（修订版），外语教学与研究出版社，1995 年。

20. 中国社会科学院近代史研究所翻译室编，《近代来华外国人名辞典》，中国社会科学出版社，1981 年。

21. *A Glossary of Chinese Art and Archaeology*, by S. Howard Hansford, The China Society, London, 1954.

22. *A Dictionary of Official Titles in Imperial China*, by Charles C. Hucker, Stanford University Press, Stanford, California, 1985.

23. *Ch'ing Administrative Terms*, Published by Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1961.

24. *Chinese Traditional Architecture*, by Stein, Nancy Shatsman, New York, 1984.

25. *The Palace Museum, Beijing Treasures of the Forbidden City*, by Wan-Go Weng and The Palace Museum, Beijing, published by Harry N. Abrams, Inc. New York, 1982.

26. *Some Technical Terms of Chinese Painting*, published by Worvery Press, Baltimore, 1935.

27. 2000 *Years of Chinese Lacquer*, by Oriental Ceramics Society of Hong Kong and Art Gallery, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, 1933.

28. *Oriental Lacquer Art*, by Lee Yu-Kuan, New York-Tokyo Weatherhill, 1972.

29. *Chinese Lacquer*, by Sir Harry Garner, Faber and Faber Limited London, 1979.

30. *The Dr. S. Y. Yip Collection of Classic Chinese Furniture*, introduction by Shing Yiu Yip, Hong Kong, 1991.

31. *Chinese Snuff Bottle*, by Lilla S. Perry, published by the Charles E. Tuttle Company of Rutland, Vermont and Tokyo, Japan, 1960.

32. *Chinese Seals*, by T. C. Lai, University of Washington Press, Seattle and London, 1976.

33. *Chinese Bamboo Carving*, Hong Kong Museum of Art, 1978.

34. *Bamboo Carvings of China*, by Wang Shixiang, Wan-Go Weng, New York.

索　　引
INDEX

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

V

W

X

Y

Z

编后记
POSTSCRIPT

书后附索引以正文各条目（不包括各级标题）首字的汉语拼音声母排序。重复出现的条目是由于其所属内容的需要，如英文释文重复则将其中一则处理为参见另一则。

此外，本书得到北京师范大学外语系李长兰教授的审阅，美国耶鲁大学学生 Jeri Xu（徐家玲）同学担任了主要的校对工作。在此一并表示诚挚的谢意！

冯印淙
二〇〇五年八月